



综合英语(二)上册

组编/全国高等教育自学考试指导委员会
主编/徐克容

全国高等教育自学考试指定教材
英语专业(基础科段)

外语教学与研究出版社

Lesson One

Text

Twelve Things I Wish They Taught at School

Carl Sagan

俗话说：“活到老，学到老。”人的一生就是不断学习、不断丰富和充实自己的过程。青少年阶段，尤其是中学阶段，无疑是学习的最佳时期。中学教育的重点应放在什么地方？美国著名科学家和科普作家萨根批评中学只抓各个学科具体内容的做法，他认为中学要注重对青少年的宏观教育，使他们建立起唯物的世界观和宇宙观，使他们能够正确对待自己，关心周围的世界——人类生存的环境和自己的地球同胞。

1 I attended junior and senior high school, public institutions in New York and New Jersey, just after the Second World War. It seems a long time ago. The facilities and the skills of the teachers were probably well above average for the United States at that time. Since then, I've learned a great deal. One of the most important things I've learned is how much there is to learn, and how much I don't yet know. Sometimes I think how grateful I would be today if I had learned more back then about what really matters. In some respects that education was terribly narrow; the only thing I ever heard in school about Napoleon was that the United States made the Louisiana Purchase from him. (On a planet where some 95% of the

inhabitants are not Americans, the only history that was thought worth teaching was American history.) In spelling, grammar, the fundamentals of math, and other vital subjects, my teachers did a pretty good job. But there's so much else I wish they'd taught us.

2 Perhaps all the deficiencies have since been rectified. It seems to me there are many things (often more a matter of attitude and perception than the simple memorization of facts) that the schools should teach — things that truly would be useful in later life, useful in making a stronger country and a better world, but useful also in making people happier. Human beings enjoy learning. That's one of the few things that we do better than the other species on our planet. Every student should regularly experience the "Aha!" — when something you never understood, or something you never knew was a mystery, becomes clear.

3 So here's my list:

Pick a difficult thing and learn it well.

4 The Greek philosopher Socrates said this was one of the greatest of human joys, and it is. While you learn a little bit about many subjects, make sure you learn a great deal about one or two. It hardly matters what the subject is, as long as it deeply interests you, and you place it in its broader human context. After you teach yourself one subject, you become much more confident about your ability to teach yourself another. You gradually find you've acquired a key skill. The world is changing so rapidly that you must continue to teach yourself throughout your life. But don't get trapped by the first subject that interests you, or the first thing you find yourself good at. The world is full of wonders, and some of them we don't discover until we're all grown up. Most of them, sadly, we never discover.

Don't be afraid to ask "stupid" questions.

5 Many apparently naive inquiries like why grass is green, or why the Sun is round, or why we need 55,000 nuclear weapons in the world — are really deep questions. The answers can be a gateway to real insights. It's also important to know, as well as you can, what it is that you don't know, and asking questions is the way. To ask "stupid" questions requires courage on the part of the asker and knowledge and patience on the part of the answerer. And don't confine your learning to schoolwork. Discuss ideas in depth with friends. It's much braver to ask questions even when there's a prospect of ridicule than to suppress your questions and become deadened to the world around you.

Listen carefully.

6 Many conversations are a kind of competition that rarely leads to discovery on either side. When people are talking, don't spend the time thinking about what you're going to say next. Instead, try to understand what they're saying, what experience is behind their remarks, what you can learn from or about them. Older people have grown up in a world very different from yours, one you may not know very well. They, and people from other parts of the country and from other nations, have important perspectives that can enrich your life.

Everybody makes mistakes.

7 Everybody's understanding is incomplete. Be open to correction, and learn to correct your own mistakes. The only embarrassment is in not learning from your mistakes.

Know your planet.

8 It's the only one we have. Learn how it works. We're changing

the atmosphere, the surface, the waters of the Earth, often for some short-term advantage when the long-term implications are unknown. The citizens of any country should have at least something to say about the direction in which we're going. If we don't understand the issues, we abandon the future.

Science and technology.

9 You can't know your planet unless you know something about science and technology. School science courses, I remember, concentrated on the unimportant parts of science, leaving the major insights almost untouched. The great discoveries in modern science are also great discoveries of the human spirit. For example, Copernicus showed that — far from being the center of the universe, about which the Sun, the Moon, the planets, and the stars revolved in clockwise homage — the Earth is just one of many small worlds. This is a deflation of our pretensions, to be sure, but it is also the opening up to our view of a vast and awesome universe. Every high school graduate should have some idea of the insights of Copernicus, Newton, Darwin, Freud, and Einstein. (Einstein's special theory of relativity, far from being obscure and exceptionally difficult, can be understood in its basics with no more than first-year algebra, and the notion of a rowboat in a river going upstream and downstream.)

Don't spend your life watching TV.

10 You know what I'm talking about.

Culture.

11 Gain some exposure to the great works of literature, art and music. If such a work is hundreds or thousands of years old and is still admired, there is probably something to it. Like all deep

experiences, it may take a little work on your part to discover what all the fuss is about. But once you make the effort, your life has changed; you've acquired a source of enjoyment and excitement for the rest of your days. In a world as tightly connected as ours is, don't restrict your attention to American or Western culture. Learn how and what people elsewhere think. Learn something of their history, their religion, their viewpoints.

Compassion.

12 Many people believe that we live in an extraordinarily selfish time. But there is a hollowness, a loneliness that comes from living only for yourself. Humans are capable of great mutual compassion, love, and tenderness. These feelings, however, need encouragement to grow.

13 Look at the delight a one- or two-year-old takes in learning, and you see how powerful is the human will to learn. Our passion to understand the universe and our compassion for others jointly provide the chief hope for the human race.

Word List

attend /ə'tend/ <i>vt.</i>	上(学)
junior high school	(美)初级中学
senior high school	(美)高级中学
facility /fə'sɪlətɪ/ <i>n.</i>	(常用复数)设备,设施
grateful /'ɡreɪtful/ <i>adj.</i>	感激的,表示感激的
matter /'mætə(r)/ <i>v.</i>	要紧,有关系
terribly /'terəblɪ/ <i>adv.</i>	(口)非常,很
narrow /'nærəʊ/ <i>adj.</i>	(程度、范围等)有局限的

purchase /'pɜ:tʃɪs/ <i>n.</i>	购买
spelling /'speliŋ/ <i>n.</i>	拼写
fundamental /'fʌndə'menti/ <i>n.</i>	(常用复数)基础;基本原理
pretty /'prɪti/ <i>adv.</i>	相当,很
planet /'plæni/ <i>n.</i>	行星
regularly /'regjʊləli/ <i>adv.</i>	经常
experience /ɪk'spiəriəns/ <i>v.</i>	经历,体验
aha /ɑ:'hɑ:/ <i>int.</i>	啊哈(表示惊奇或得意)
pick /pɪk/ <i>v.</i>	挑选,选择
Greek /gri:k/ <i>adj.</i>	希腊的
philosopher /fr'ləsəfə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	哲学家
interest /'intrəst/ <i>v.</i>	使……感兴趣
key /ki:/ <i>adj.</i>	主要的,极重要的
rapidly /'ræpidli/ <i>adv.</i>	快地,迅速地
continue /kən'tɪnju:/ <i>v.</i>	继续(不断)
throughout /θru:'aʊt/ <i>prep.</i>	贯穿;遍及
trap /træp/ <i>v.</i>	使受限制;被圈在
wonder /'wʌndə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	奇迹;奇物;奇事
sadly /'sædli/ <i>adv.</i>	可惜;说来遗憾
stupid /'stju:pɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	愚蠢的,笨的
apparently /ə'pærəntli/ <i>adv.</i>	表面上地;显然地
naive /nɑ:'i:v, nɑi'-/ <i>adj.</i>	天真的;幼稚的
inquiry /ɪn'kwaɪəri/ <i>n.</i>	问题;疑问
deep /di:p/ <i>adj.</i>	深奥的
gateway /'geɪtweɪ/ <i>n.</i>	途径;方法
insight /'ɪnsaɪt/ <i>n.</i>	深刻见解
patience /'peɪjəns/ <i>n.</i>	耐心;耐性
confine /kən'faɪn/ <i>v.</i>	限制,使局限
schoolwork /'sku:lwɜ:k/ <i>n.</i>	学校作业,课堂作业
prospect /'prɒspekt/ <i>n.</i>	将要发生的事

ridicule /'rɪdɪkjʊ:l/ <i>n.</i>	嘲笑, 嘲弄
suppress /sə'pres/ <i>v.</i>	禁止披露; 隐瞒
deadened /'dedənd/ <i>adj.</i>	变得死一般的; 麻木的, 漠不关心的
remark /rɪ'mɑ:k/ <i>n.</i>	话语; 谈论
perspective /pə'spektɪv/ <i>n.</i>	(观察问题的) 视角; 观点
enrich /ɪn'rɪtʃ/ <i>v.</i>	充实; 使丰富
incomplete /ɪnkəm'plɪt/ <i>adj.</i>	不完全的, 不完整的
correction /kə'rekʃən/ <i>n.</i>	改正; 纠正
embarrassment /ɪm'bærəsmənt/ <i>n.</i>	使人为难的事; 障碍
atmosphere /'ætməsfɪə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	(包围地球的) 大气层
implication /ɪmplɪ'keɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	含意; 暗示
abandon /ə'bændən/ <i>v.</i>	放弃; 抛弃
concentrate /'kɒnsəntreɪt/ <i>v.</i>	集中; 全神贯注
untouched /ʌn'tʌtʃt/ <i>adj.</i>	未被论及的; 未提及的
homage /'hɒmɪdʒ/ <i>n.</i>	尊敬, 敬意
graduate /'grædʒʊət, -dʒu-/ <i>n.</i>	(美) 毕业生
relativity /,relə'tɪvɪti/ <i>n.</i>	相关性; 相对论
enjoyment /ɪn'dʒɔɪmənt/ <i>n.</i>	愉快, 乐趣
connect /kə'nekt/ <i>v.</i>	联系; 连接
restrict /rɪ'strɪkt/ <i>v.</i>	限定; 限制
western /'westən/ <i>adj.</i>	西方国家的; 欧美国家的
compassion /kəm'pæʃən/ <i>n.</i>	同情; 怜悯
extraordinarily /ɪk'strɔ:dənərɪli/ <i>adv.</i>	特别地; 不平常地
selfish /'selfɪʃ/ <i>adj.</i>	自私的
hollowness /'hɒləʊnɪs/ <i>n.</i>	空洞; 无趣, 寂寞
loneliness /'ləʊnlɪnɪs/ <i>n.</i>	孤独; 寂寞
mutual /'mju:tʃʊəl/ <i>adj.</i>	相互的, 彼此的

tenderness /'tendənɪs/ <i>n.</i>	温情;慈爱
encouragement /ɪn'kʌrɪdʒmənt/ <i>n.</i>	鼓励
grow /grəʊ/ <i>v.</i>	增长
jointly /'dʒɔɪntlɪ/ <i>adv.</i>	联合地,共同地

Proper Names

Carl Sagan /'kɑ:l 'sɑ:gən/	卡尔·萨根
Socrates /'sɒkrətɪz/	苏格拉底
Copernicus /kə(ʊ)'pɜ:nɪkəs/	哥白尼
New Jersey /nju: 'dʒɜ:zɪ/	新泽西州
Newton /'nju:tn/	牛顿
Darwin /'dɑ:wɪn/	达尔文
Freud /frɔɪd/	弗洛伊德
Einstein /'aɪnstəɪn/	爱因斯坦

Useful Expressions

in some respects	在某些方面
(not) matter what/how, etc.	……(没)有关系
get trapped	被困,陷于
lead to	导致
leave... untouched	没有提及过;没有动过
far from	并非,并不是
be restricted to	仅限于
be capable of	有能力
take delight in	乐于,嗜好

provide...for...

为……提供……

Word Study

learn *vt. & vi.*

1. 学习,学会

V; V + N; V + to do sth.; V + (how) to do sth.

He is teaching his little daughter to swim, and she *is learning* fast.

The Princess told Andersen to *learn a useful trade* like shoe-making.

I stayed there at that job for a few weeks and I *learned* from him *a way* to study.

David took a course somewhere down south where he could *learn to drive* a stock-car.

2. 得知,获悉

V + N; V + wh- clause; V + that clause

We finally *learned the truth* about the whole matter.

We *learned* for the first time how Tracy Bill had died.

From a worn letter found in his pocket, a nurse *learned that* his son was a Marine stationed in North Carolina.

3. 熟记,记住,背诵

V + N

The actors and actresses are busy *learning the lines* of the play.

4. Phrases:

learn about / of 得知,获悉

learn...by heart 熟记,背诵

learn one's lesson 吸取教训

learn from 向……学习

ask *vt. & vi.*

1. 询问, 打听

1) V(+ N) + about + N; V + N + N

She never *asks about* my family.

She never *asks anybody about* anything.

She *asked a question about* computer science.

The teacher *asked the new students their names*.

2) V(+ N) + wh- to do sth. ; V(+ N) + wh- clause

He *asked the professor what to do* next.

The policeman *was asking how* the fight broke out.

Agent X *asked the old man who* played the fiddle in the village.

I *asked him whether* he had received an invitation to Xiao Li's wedding.

2. 请求, 要求, 叫

V + to do sth. ; V + N + to do sth.

She *asked to join* the volleyball team.

Henry *asked his brother Colin to read out* his will.

3. 邀请

V + N + to / for + N; V + N + to do sth.

Tom *has asked his classmates to* his birthday party.

We've *asked a few friends in for* dinner.

They often *ask their colleagues to come* to tea.

4. Phrases:

ask sb. for sth. / ask sth. of sb. 向某人要求某物

ask after 问候

ask for 请求, 要求

ask a favour of sb. 请某人帮忙

teach *vt. & vi.*

1. 教, 讲授; 教书, 当教师

V; V (+ N) + N

Fourteen years later, I *am still teaching*.

She *teaches* at a technical school.

He's *teaching American Literature* this semester.

The tall boy looked at me as if to say: "All right, *teach me something*."

2. 教某人做

V + N + N; V + N + (how) to do sth.

The girl *taught the tourists a Tibetan dance*.

The man *taught his three-year-old daughter to ride* a horse.

3. 教导, 教育; 使认识

V (+ N) + N; V + N + to do sth.; V + N + that clause

He *taught his son the importance* of tolerance.

Professor Sagan *teaches young people not to be afraid* to ask "stupid" questions.

The old man *taught young people that* the human race was sure to move forward.

4. Phrases:

teach oneself sth. 自学

teach sb. a lesson 给某人一个教训

Notes on the Text

1. **About the author:** 卡尔·萨根(1934—), 美国天文学家, 科奈尔大学教授, 国家航空航天局(NASA)计划顾问, 知名科普作家, 研究地球生命起源、行星大气、行星表面等, 尤以探索地球外生

命现象闻名。他积极推动普及科学知识;1980年,在美国非商业性的公共电视台,他编导并亲自主持了大型科学电视系列节目《宇宙》(*Cosmos*)。该节目被译成十多种语言,在六十多个国家播放,观众多达5亿。与之配套的同名科普图书成为《纽约时报》连续70周的最佳畅销书,在八十多个国家发行了五百多万册。1977年,他因《伊甸园的飞龙》(*The Dragons of Eden*)而获得普利策奖。他对知识的热爱及对新事物、新问题的热忱探索给他的读者和观众极大的启发,开阔了不少人的视野。1997年7月4日,“火星探路者号”在火星平安着陆,该探测器被重新命名为“卡尔·萨根纪念站”——他对宇航事业的贡献以及他在人们心目中的崇高地位由此可见一斑。

2. **About the text:** 节选自作者1985年发表的《学校要是教给我们这12种本领就好了》(“Twelve Things I Wish They Taught at School”)。作为科学家和作家,萨根的文风严谨,思路清晰,内涵丰富,值得玩味。

3. **The facilities and the skills of the teachers were probably well above average for the United States at that time:** 学校的设施、教师的水平在当时的美国大大高于一般水准。

above / below average: 高于或低于一般标准或水平。

well *adv.*: 相当地,大大地,可观地,又如:

He is no longer young. He is *well* over fifty.

他已经过了年轻时代,都五十好几了。

It's *well* past midnight. I think it's time you went home.

早过了午夜,你该回家了。

4. **One of the most important things I've learned is how much there is to learn, and how much I don't yet know:** 我所学到的最重要的一点,就是要学的东西实在是太多,而我还没有学到的东西也太多。

注意 *is* 后面排比的用法,两个并列的表语从句均以 *how much* 开头。在 *how much there is to learn* 中 *to learn* 是定语,修饰主

语 how much; 在 how much I don't yet know 中, how much 是 don't know 的宾语。

5. **Sometimes I think how grateful I would be today if I had learned more back then about what really matters:** 有时候,我想那时要是能多学点真正重要的东西,今天我会多么地心存感激。

这里 if 引出的是一个虚拟条件句。

back then: 以往的那个时期(指作者的中学时代)。

what really matters: what is really important. 注意 matter 作为动词的用法:

We don't expect you to make no mistakes. What *matters* is whether you learn from them.

我们不指望你什么错误都不犯,重要的是你是否从中吸取教训。

6. **the only thing I ever heard in school about Napoleon was that the United States made the Louisiana Purchase from him:** 关于拿破仑,在学校里我所学到的仅仅是美国从他手里买下了路易斯安那。

the Louisiana Purchase: 路易斯安那购置。1803 年美国以 1,500 万美元从法国购得东起密西西比河、西至落基山脉、南起墨西哥湾、北至加拿大的 214.45 万平方公里的土地,使美国的领土一下子增加了一倍。当时法国由拿破仑一世统治。

作者在这里强调的是,美国学校的历史课忽视世界历史,只强调美国历史。拿破仑是历史上的重要人物,而作者当时只知道拿破仑与美国历史有关的一件事。

7. **On a planet where some 95% of the inhabitants are not Americans, the only history that was thought worth teaching was American history:** 在一个约 95% 的居民不是美国人的星球上,学校当局认为只有美国历史才值得讲授。(这里作者委婉地批评了美国教育部门的狭隘与偏见。)

where some 95 % of the inhabitants are not Americans:是定语从句,修饰 a planet。

that was thought worth teaching: 也是定语从句,修饰 the only history, 其主动语态的形式为 that school authorities thought worth teaching;关系代词 that 是 thought 的宾语,worth teaching 是宾语的补语。这里动词 think 的句型是:V + 宾语 + 宾补。

some *adv.*:(与数字连用)大约,约有,又如:

Some 80 students have taken the course.

约有八十名学生选了这门课。

During the championship, the Chinese women's football team flew back and forth from the east coast to the west coast, covering *some* 30,000 kilometres.

在整个锦标赛期间,中国女足从东海岸到西海岸飞来飞去,行程约有三万公里。

8. **Perhaps all the deficiencies have since been rectified:** 或许该教而没教的缺陷自那以后已经得以纠正。

deficiencies *n.*: the absence of things needed or required 缺乏,缺少,不足,又如:

This disease is caused by Vitamin D *deficiency*.

这种疾病是维生素 D 不足而引起的。

9. **often more a matter of attitude and perception than the simple memorization of facts:**(该教的)主要是态度问题、认识问题,而不是简单的对事实记忆的问题。(作者认为学校应该教学生如何认识和面对周围所发生的一切,包括所学的内容;而在他上中学时,他们主要是背诵、记熟公式、定律、事实等。)

matter *n.*:(讨论、考虑等的)问题,又如:

a *matter* of principle 原则问题

a *matter* of time 时间问题(迟早会发生)

a *matter* of opinion 看法问题

a *matter* of life and death 生死攸关的问题

more + 名词短语 + than + 名词短语: 与其说……不如说……, 又如:

For him, music is *more a way of life than an interest*.

对他来说, 音乐更是一种生活方式, 而不仅是一种爱好。

10. **things that truly would be useful in later life, useful in making a stronger country and a better world, but useful also in making people happier:** 那些在以后的生活中真正有用的东西, 即那些能使国家更强大、世界更美好, 也能使人们更幸福的东西。

注意作者为了强调教学的宏观目的, 连续使用了两个 *useful* 开始的短语。

11. **That's one of the few things that we do better than the other species on our planet:** 这是我们人类比这个地球上其他物种做得好些的为数有限的几件事中的一件。(此句包含作者对人类所作所为的批评, 意思是: 人有种种恶习, 优点不多, 但喜欢学习却是一大优点。)

12. **Every student should regularly experience the "Aha!" — when something you never understood, or something you never knew was a mystery, becomes clear:** 每个学生都应该经常体验一下说出“啊, 原来是这么一回事!”时的感受——也就是你以往不懂的或是不知道自己不懂的事情, 一下子变得豁然开朗时的感受。(作者的意思是, 学生要不断学习新事物, 体验学习的乐趣。)

the “Aha!”: *aha* 通常用于口语中, 表示人们在谈话时发出的一种声音, 表达满意、成功的喜悦或惊讶, 这里作名词。experience the “Aha!” 的意思是: 体验学到新东西, 找到答案时的惊喜的心情。

注意 *when* 引出的状语从句结构: *becomes clear* 是谓语(系表结构), 其余部分是由 *or* 连接的两个并列主语。注意动词 *becomes* 与其最近的主语一致。两个 *something* 后都跟一个定

语从句,第二个 something 后面的定语从句比较复杂,关系代词 which 省略。这个省略了的 which 不是 knew 的宾语,而是 was a mystery 的主语——这是口语体的用法。

13. **The Greek philosopher Socrates said this was one of the greatest of human joys, and it is:** 希腊哲学家苏格拉底曾经说过这是人类最大乐趣之一,确实也是如此。

Socrates: 苏格拉底(大约公元前 470—399), 古希腊最有影响的哲学家之一。

注意 the + 形容词最高级 + of + 名词的用法,又如:

the greatest of philosophers in ancient Greece 古希腊最伟大的哲学家

the best of my father's friends 我父亲最要好的朋友

the most intelligent of his students 他最聪明的学生

and it is: and it is still one of the greatest of human joys today.
今天这仍然是人类最大乐趣之一。(即这是个一般真理。)

14. **It hardly matters what the subject is, as long as it deeply interests you, and you place it in its broader human context:** 只要你对所选的课题感兴趣,只要你的研究不脱离课题本身更为广阔的人文环境,你的课题是什么并不重要。matter 常用于下列句型:it + 否定词 + matter(s) + wh-, 又如:

I think you got the author's name wrong. But it doesn't matter now.

你把作者的名字搞错了,不过现在已经没有关系了。

It doesn't matter how you do the job as long as you do it well.
这项工作怎么做并不重要,但要干好。

It hardly matters how you do it, as long as you do the job well and complete it on time.

只要你们把活干好,按期完成任务,怎么干并不重要。

15. **The world is full of wonders, and some of them we don't discover until we're all grown up. Most of them, sadly, we never**

discover: 这个世界充满了奇妙的事物,有些我们完全长大成人之后才会发现;很遗憾,大部分我们一辈子也发现不了。

为了强调,宾语 *some of them* 及 *most of them* 都挪到了主语和动词的前面。

all grown up: fully grown up 这里 *all* 是副词,意思是“完全地”、“充分地”。

- 16. The answers can be a gateway to real insights:** 对这些问题的回答很可能会使你对事物有深刻的理解。

gateway to: 通向……的途径;获得……的手段。

- 17. It's also important to know, as well as you can, what it is that you don't know, and asking questions is the way:** 尽可能明确你有那些事情不明白同样也很重要,提问题就是找出不懂之处的办法。

as well as you can: 尽最大的努力,作状语,修饰 *to know*。

what it is that you don't know: 你不懂的是什么,是一名词从句,作 *to know* 的宾语。在此从句中,*it* 是形式上的主语,用于强调,真正的主语是 *that you don't know*, *what* 是表语。

- 18. To ask "stupid" questions requires courage on the part of the asker and knowledge and patience on the part of the answerer:** 提“愚蠢的”问题,对于提问者来说需要勇气,对答问者来说需要知识和耐心。

on the part of sb. / on sb.'s part: 就某人而言;在某人方面,又如:

There is no need for any more explanation on my part.

我感到没有必要再解释了。

There must be some misunderstanding on their part.

他们方面肯定是误会了。

注意 *asker* 与 *answerer* 并不常用。

- 19. And don't confine your learning to schoolwork:** 不要把自己的学习局限于课堂。

confine ... to: 把……限制在……之内,又如:

They managed *to confine* the disease *to* a small area.

他们将这种病控制在小范围之内。

He is asked *to confine* his use of the telephone *to* business calls alone.

他被告知这部电话机只用于公务。

- 20. It's much braver to ask questions even when there's a prospect of ridicule than to suppress your questions and become deadened to the world around you:** 明知会引起嘲笑而提问要比把问题埋在心里、对周围的一切变得麻木不仁要勇敢得多。

deaden sb. to sth.: 使某人对……不敏感。

become deadened to sth.: 对……变得不敏感或麻木不仁。

- 21. Many conversations are a kind of competition that rarely leads to discovery on either side:** 很多情况下人们谈话时,总是争相表现自己,这类交谈对双方都无多大益处。

- 22. Instead, try to understand what they're saying, what experience is behind their remarks, what you can learn from or about them:** 而是设法搞懂他们说的是什么,什么样的经历才使他们说这些话,你从这些话中你能学到什么,你对说这些话的人又能了解到什么情况等。

这里作者又使用了排比的手法:用三个 what 引出的从句作 understand 的宾语。

- 23. The only embarrassment is in not learning from your mistakes:** 你应该感到丢人的倒是没有从错误中吸取教训(而不是犯错误或承认错误。)

此处 be in 的意思与 exist in / lie in 相同,表示存在于。

- 24. We're changing the atmosphere, the surface, the waters of the Earth, often for some short-term advantage when the long-term implications are unknown:** 我们往往为了短期的利益,在尚不了解(这些做法)长远影响的情况下,正在改变大气层、改变地

球的表面以及地球的水系。(这句话反映出作者对人类破坏地球生态平衡的状况感到忧虑。早期工业化的过程中,引起了空气、水和噪音污染。)

waters: 湖泊、河流、海洋等的大片的水。

when 这里引出的是一表示对比的从句。

25. **The citizens of any country should have at least something to say about the direction in which we're going. If we don't understand the issues, we abandon the future:** 任何一个国家的公民至少对我们人类要走向何处有发言权。如果我们不理解这些问题,我们就是放弃未来。

26. **School science courses, I remember, concentrated on the unimportant parts of science, leaving the major insights almost untouched:** 我记得学校的理科课程专讲科学的次要方面,而对科学的深层含义几乎只字不提。(作者接着指出 the major insights 指的是什么。)

leave + 宾语 + 宾补(形容词、分词等): 使……处于某种状况,又如:

He *left all the windows open* for half an hour.

他让所有的窗子都开了半小时。

The news *left everybody depressed*.

这消息使大家感到沮丧。

27. **The great discoveries in modern science are also great discoveries of the human spirit:** 现代科学的每项重大发现同时也是对人类精神的重大发现。(因此讲授科学知识、科学发现时,应该强调这些重大发现所代表的人的精神。)

28. **For example, Copernicus showed that — far from being the center of the universe, about which the Sun, the Moon, the planets, and the stars revolved in clockwise homage — the Earth is just one of many small worlds:** 例如,哥白尼证明地球根本不是什么太阳、月亮及其他行星和星球按顺时针方向绕其

转动的宇宙中心,它只不过是许多小小世界其中的一个而已。注意此句的结构。show 的宾语是 that 引出的名词从句 the Earth is just one of many small worlds; 形容词短语 far from being the center of the universe 是宾语从句的主语 the Earth 的补足语,说明主语的情况; about which... in clockwise homage 是定语从句,修饰 the center of the universe; about which = around which; which 代表 the center of the universe。在正式的文体中,特别是科技和法律文献中,引出定语从句的关系代词前可以带一介词,又如:

Freezing point is the temperature *at which* water begins to turn into ice.

冰点是(在标准大气压下)水开始凝结成冰时的温度。

Insurance and tourism are services, *in which* many nations specialize.

保险业和旅游业是服务性行业,不少国家专门从事这两种行业。

far from: 远非,根本不,又如:

The result of the match is *far from* (being) satisfactory.

比赛的结果一点也不令人满意。

It was obvious that what he said was *far from* the truth.

很明显他所说的离真实情况相距甚远。

in clockwise homage: 这是幽默的说法, homage(尊敬)一般是不能用 clockwise(顺时针方向)这样的形容词来修饰。这里作者故意把两个不相干的词捏在一起,来说明过去人们错误地认为地球是宇宙的中心,好像太阳等星球是恭恭敬敬地按顺时针方向围绕地球转动。

Copernicus: 哥白尼(1473—1543), 波兰天文学家,创立太阳是宇宙中心(即太阳系)的日心说,推翻了托勒密的地心说,使自然科学从神学中解放出来,著有《天体运行论》。

29. This is a deflation of our pretensions, to be sure, but it is also

the opening up to our view of a vast and awesome universe: 这当然煞了我们人类的自命不凡的傲气,但是同时(哥白尼的学说)也开阔了我们的眼界,使我们看到一个漫无边际的、令人敬畏的宇宙。(这里作者指出伟大的科学发现的深刻意义——改变了人们的世界观。)

open up to: 向……开放,又如:

the policy of reform and *opening up to* the outside world 改革开放的政策

- 30. Every high school graduate should have some idea of the insights of Copernicus, Newton, Darwin, Freud, and Einstein:** 每个高中毕业生都应该对哥白尼、牛顿、达尔文、弗洛伊德以及爱因斯坦的深刻的思想有所了解。

Sir Isaac Newton: 牛顿(1642—1727),英国物理学家、数学家和天文学家,提出万有引力定律、力学三大定律等,著有《自然科学的数学原理》、《光学》等。

Charles Robert Darwin: 达尔文(1809—1882),英国生物学家,进化论的创立者,进化生物学的奠基人,提出以自然选择为基础的进化学说和人类起源于类人猿的假设,著有《物种起源》、《人类的起源及其性的选择》等。

Sigmund Freud: 弗洛伊德(1856—1939),奥地利精神病学家,精神分析派心理学创始人,提出潜意识理论,主要著作有《释梦》、《精神分析引论》等。

Albert Einstein: 爱因斯坦(1879—1955),美籍德裔理论物理学家,创立狭义相对论和广义相对论,获1921年诺贝尔物理学奖。曾参加反战、反法西斯斗争,反对使用核武器。

这里作者提到的几位科学家(包括上文提到的哥白尼)都是伟大的思想家,他们提出的理论不仅指导人们在社会的不同领域进行巨大的变革,而且深刻地影响着人类的未来。

- 31. Einstein's special theory of relativity, far from being obscure and exceptionally difficult, can be understood in its basics with**

no more than first-year algebra, and the notion of a rowboat in a river going upstream and downstream: 爱因斯坦的狭义相对论并不晦涩,也不是特别难懂,只要有一年级的几何知识和在河中划艇逆流而上和顺流而下的概念,其基本原理完全可以弄懂。

far from being obscure and exceptionally difficult: 见第 28 条注释。

its basics: (相对论)基本原理。

no more than: (正式的说法,表示数、量之少,或程度之低)仅仅,又如:

She had *no more than* a banana for lunch.

午饭她只吃了个香蕉。

He went to New York with *no more than* 2 dollars in his pocket.

他兜里只有两美元,就去了纽约。

32. Gain some exposure to the great works of literature, art and music: 感受一下文学、艺术和音乐名篇的熏陶。

exposure to: 接触……,感受……的熏陶,受到……的影响,又如:

Too much *exposure* to the sun might cause skin diseases.

晒太阳太多可能会引起皮肤病。

Living in Europe for a year, he gained some *exposure to* western culture.

在欧洲住了一年,他接触到一些西方文化。

对比动词 *expose* 的用法:

Will the children ever *be exposed to* a profound idea at home?

在家里孩子们能接触到高深的思想吗?

33. If such a work is hundreds or thousands of years old and is still admired, there is probably something to it: 既然一部作品已存在了几百年或是几千年,今天仍然受到赞赏,那么大概它确实

是有些名堂。

此处 *if* 引出的从句表示说话者承认的一个事实,但主句所表示的内容更重要,又如:

If she said that, she did not mean to hurt anybody.

她是说过这话,但她的本意并不想伤害任何人。

If it is a mistake, it is not a mistake on his part.

这是个错误,但不是他的错。

there is something to / in: ……确有道理、见地、不同凡响之处等,又如:

Many folk remedies have stood the test of time, so there must be something in them.

不少偏方经过时间的考验很有效,其中肯定是有根据的。

There's something to what he's just said.

他刚才说的话很有见地。

34. **Like all deep experiences, it may take a little work on your part to discover what all the fuss is about:** 要搞清楚人们到底为什么对这些作品还如此热衷,你就得下点工夫,一切感人至深的经历莫不如此。(即:你不妨自己去读一读、看一看、听一听那些名篇、名著。)

to discover...: 句子的主语, *it* 是形式上的主语。

what all the fuss is about: 人们对那些作品为什么仍然如此之热衷。

fuss: 常有贬义,此处作者故意站在不明真相之人的立场上,用这个词代表他们可能的观点。

35. **But there is a hollowness, a loneliness that comes from living only for yourself:** 如果你仅为自己活着,那你就会感到空虚、感到孤独。

36. **Humans are capable of great mutual compassion, love, and tenderness:** 人是能够相互同情、相互热爱、相互关心的。

be capable of sth. / doing sth.: 有能力做某事;有潜力做某事;

做得出某事,又如:

He is *capable of doing* the work of three men.

他一个人能干三个人的活。

In times of crisis, man is *capable of doing* things that seem beyond his strength.

在危急的时候,人能做看上去超出自身力量的事情。

Do you think he was *capable of murdering* his own father?

你认为他做得出谋杀自己生身父亲这种事吗?

- 37. Look at the delight a one- or two-year-old takes in learning, and you see how powerful is the human will to learn:** 如果你看到一个一两岁的孩子学做一件事时的乐趣,你就会明白人类学习的意志有多么坚强了。

do sth. and you (will): 如果……,你就会……。这里 do sth. 起条件从句的作用。

one-year-old *n.*: 一岁的孩子。

take (a) delight in sth. / doing sth.: 以……为乐,又如:

The old man *takes great delight in* his granddaughter.

那位老人从孙女那里得到极大的乐趣。

He never *takes delight in* other people's failures.

他对别人的失败从不幸灾乐祸。

- 38. Our passion to understand the universe and our compassion for others jointly provide the chief hope for the human race:** 我们有渴望了解宇宙的热忱,我们有对他人的同情心,人类的希望主要寄托于此。

Work on the Text

1. Answer these questions.

- 1) When and where did the author attend junior and senior

high school?

- 2) What does he think of his high school education?
- 3) What suggestions does the author make about teaching oneself a subject?
- 4) Why are we encouraged to ask “stupid” questions?
- 5) Why is listening to conversations a good way of learning from or about other people?
- 6) Why can't people avoid mistakes? What attitude should we adopt towards our mistakes?
- 7) Why does the author urge us to learn about our planet? What worries does he have about it?
- 8) What does the author think science courses should concentrate on?
- 9) Why do you think the author insists that every high school graduate know something about the discoveries of Copernicus, Newton, Darwin, Freud and Einstein? What do you know about these great scientists?
- 10) Why does the author advise us not to spend too much time watching TV?
- 11) In what way do works of literature, art and music enrich our life? Why should we learn about the history, religions and viewpoints of the people in other countries?
- 12) Do you agree with the author that we live in an extraordinarily selfish time? Why/why not? Does the author think the human race is hopeful? Why/why not?

2. Look up the following words in an English-English dictionary before looking at the Word List. (You have to decide the part of speech of each first.)

facility (Para. 1) grateful (Para. 1) matter (Para. 1)

philosopher (Para. 4) insight (Para. 5)

3. Paraphrase.

- 1) Every student should regularly experience the "Aha!"...
(Para. 2)
- 2) The answers can be a gateway to real insights. (Para. 5)
- 3) ... become deadened to the world around you. (Para. 5)
- 4) The only embarrassment is in not learning from your mistakes. (Para. 7)
- 5) ... there is probably something to it. (Para. 11)

4. Discuss or speak on the following topics.

- 1) Which of the nine items in the list do you think is the most important? Why?
- 2) Do you think all the nine things should or could be taught at school? Do you have anything to add to the list?

5. Write a paragraph of about 130 words on the topic: The Most Important Thing I Think I Should Learn at College.

You can follow the outline:

- 1) The thing
- 2) Your reason(s)
- 3) Your conclusion

Vocabulary Exercises

- 1. Complete the following sentences with compound words formed in the same way as in the examples. Each word is to be used once only.**

Examples:

long-term 长期的

briefcase 公文包

short-term 短期的 first-rate 一流的
sweetheart 恋人;情人 best-seller 畅销书
(形容词 + 名词 → 复合形容词 / 名词)

adj.:	first	gentle	high	new	super
noun:	comer	grade	hand	man	market

- 1) My mother often does her weekly shopping at a nearby _____.
- 2) You will never know what is poverty if you have no _____ experience.
- 3) A real _____ should not be prejudiced against women.
- 4) His parents bought them a _____ TV set as a wedding present.
- 5) I'm sorry, I don't know where the nearest post office is.
I'm a _____ here myself.

2. Translate the following into English.

1) Use the verb + noun collocation.

出席会议 干得不错 体验苦难 自学英语 发现奇迹
忍住咳嗽 掌握技能 获取知识 需要勇气 丰富生活
接受修正 改正错误 不再指望 作出努力

2) Use the "useful expressions".

- (1) 新造的大桥坍塌了,一名工程师和两名地方官员为此受到刑事起诉。
- (2) 他工作了一天,午饭都没动。
- (3) 经常性的体育运动使学生身体强壮,更好地适应学习,决不是浪费时间。
- (4) 在海洋世界公园(the Sea World),海豹和海豚(the seals and dolphins)能够表演各种技巧,逗得小观众们乐不可支。

- (5) 把快乐建立在别人痛苦之上的人迟早要受到报应的。
- (6) 在某些方面,那部新字典有不少地方需要改进。
- (7) 当那辆公共汽车冲出路边翻了车时,许多小朋友被困在里面。
- (8) 在开幕式上,市政府将为一千多名来宾提供饮食。
- (9) 在中国,城市家庭只允许生一个孩子。
- (10) 只要我们能得到点休息,去哪里并不重要。

3) Use *learn, ask and teach*.

- (1) 那位男孩向警察询问去火车站怎么走。
- (2) 学习外语没有任何捷径(short cut)可走。
- (3) 获悉我最喜欢的数学老师仍然在那所学校教书我决定去看他。
- (4) 这位老工人教育他的子女做人要诚实。
- (5) 他问老板那天他是否可以早点离开办公室。
- (6) 艰难困苦使我们对我们现有的一切感到满意(grateful)。
- (7) 毕业时他要求到西藏去工作一年。
- (8) 我只不过是想关心别人,也希望受到他人的关心,我的要求并不过分。
- (9) 聪明人从自己的错误中吸取教训。
- (10) 求援是没有用的,因为已经早过了午夜。
- (11) 那位科学家教育他的学生说年轻人要面向未来。
- (12) 问及她生活的最大乐趣时,她说:“学习。”

3. Complete the following sentences.

1) Put suitable prepositions or adverbs in the blanks.

- (1) You did a very good job _____ translating the essay into Chinese.
- (2) He was silent _____ the meeting.
- (3) This book is quite difficult. It is written _____

students whose English is _____ average.

- (4) I saw something dark moving _____ my direction.
- (5) _____ many respects, he has set up an example for us to follow.
- (6) I don't think he is good _____ grammar; his composition is full _____ grammar mistakes.
- (7) _____ the surface, the question is simple, but it's really quite complicated and worth discussing _____ depth.
- (8) It requires great efforts _____ our part to complete the project on time.
- (9) Don't believe _____ him so easily. Think about what is _____ his smile.
- (10) We should not restrict our attention _____ markets _____ home. Enough efforts should be concentrated _____ developing overseas markets as well.
- (11) She read her father's last letter again and again, soon she found that she had learnt it _____ heart.
- (12) Making mistakes is not always a bad thing if you can learn _____ them.

2) Choose the right word from the brackets.

- (1) The school has excellent sporting _____. (equipment, facilities)
- (2) English is a _____ language. (difficult, hard)
- (3) They asked Tom about the next day's game, and he seems very _____. (confident, certain)
- (4) Please _____ your remarks to the subject under discussion. (limit, confine)
- (5) I ignored his rude _____ about my clothes. (remarks, statements)

4. Choose the best word for each blank.

The word “quake” means a shaking or trembling. An earthquake is a shaking or trembling of (1) _____ (a, most, this, the) part of the earth’s surface. Sometimes (2) _____ (because, if, since, when) a heavy truck or tractor passes by, we feel the earth (3) _____ (dance, go, move, run) or shake, but this is not (4) _____ (how, that, what, which) we mean (5) _____ (as, by, through, with) an earthquake. An earthquake is caused by changes (6) _____ (happening, having, occurring, taking) place inside the earth. These changes — and they are constantly going on — (7) _____ (give, offer, release, send) energy which (8) _____ (causes, helps, makes, drives) the earth’s crust shake and tremble. Scientists report that there are (9) _____ (definitely, likely, perhaps, possible) a million earthquakes each year. Most of them are (10) _____ (so, such, too, very) gentle that they can only be detected by sensitive instruments. But almost every year there is (11) _____ (at least, at most, few, only) one great earthquake, and a thousand (12) _____ (greater, larger, less, more) which do some degree of damage to buildings, bridges, and roads.

Grammar & Usage

Subject-Verb Agreement (I)

1. 主谓一致的三条原则

- 1) 语法一致,即在语法形式上取得一致。

Human beings *enjoy learning*.

Everybody's understanding is incomplete.

- 2) 意义一致,即根据意义来处理一致关系。

The people there *are* fighting for the independence of their country.

Ten dollars *was* a lot of money at that time.

- 3) 就近原则,即谓语动词的单、复数形式取决于最靠近它的词语。

There *is* a pen, two pencils and an eraser in the pencil box.

Neither the boy nor his teachers *know* the answer.

2. 集体名词作主语时与动词的一致

- 1) 当主语为 furniture, equipment, machinery 等词时,谓语动词通常用单数。

The furniture in that shop *is* all made in China.

Office equipment *is* very expensive nowadays.

A lot of new machinery *has* been installed (安装).

- 2) 集体名词如 people, cattle, police, poultry 等往往作复数用。

Some people *drive* madly in this country.

Many cattle *have* died because of the flood.

The police *have* been sent there but they have not made any arrests yet.

Poultry *are* plentiful in that mountain region.

- 3) family, government, class, committee, audience, team, public 等词被视作一个整体时,其后的动词用单数;被视为构成整体的个体时,其后的动词则为复数。

His family *is* a happy one.

His family *are* all interested in stamp-collecting.

The Democratic Government *is* in power now.

The government *is/are* considering further tax cuts.

The audience *was* very quiet when he was giving his speech.

The audience *were* shouting and laughing when he came into the hall.

Our class *is* the top class in the grade.

The class *are* busy taking notes.

3. 并列主语与动词的一致

- 1) 当“名词 + 名词”表示一种事物时,用单数动词。

Bacon and eggs *is* a very popular British breakfast.

Toast and marmalade (果酱面包) *is* my favorite breakfast.

Fish and chips (炸鱼与土豆片) *is* served every day.

- 2) 当主语是由 *and*, *both...and* 连接的并列结构时,如果主语所指的不是一种事物,动词则用复数形式。

Jack and Mary *are* in love with each other.

Both Tom and John *are* absent today.

War, famine and drought *have* claimed thousands of lives in that country.

- 3) 在由 *or* 或 *nor* 连接的并列结构中,动词单、复数形式一般与 *or* 或 *nor* 后面的名词或代词保持一致。

He or his brothers *are* to blame for this.

Either you or your friend *has* to pay the bill.

Either his father or his mother *comes* to see him every day.

When couples quarrel, (either) the wife or the husband *has* to give in.

Neither she nor you *are* mistaken.

Neither the manager nor the clerks *are* college graduates.

- 4) not only... but also 连接的结构作主语时, 动词的单、复数形式依据 but also 后的名词或代词。

Not only Fred but also his parents *love* this small pet dog.

Not only the boys but also their mother *is* very ill.

Exercises

1. Choose the right verb form.

- 1) Either the players or the coach (is, are) to blame for the defeat.
- 2) The boy's family (is, are) anxiously looking for him.
- 3) Both you and your friends (is, are) welcome here.
- 4) Neither Jack nor his parents (stays, stay) at home at week-ends.
- 5) Bread and butter (is, are) the basic food in western countries.
- 6) The football team (is, are) having dinner.
- 7) The government (is, are) planning to make war on that country.
- 8) Law and order (means, mean) different things to different people.
- 9) War and peace (is, are) a constant theme (主题) in this kind of novel.
- 10) The cattle there on the hill (belongs, belong) to my family.

2. Put in the correct form of the verb in brackets.

- 1) The family _____ (be) always quarrelling with one another.
- 2) The Chinese people _____ (be) very friendly to

foreigners.

- 3) The government _____ (do) its best to encourage export.
- 4) Love and hatred _____ (be) the theme of the novel.
- 5) Wine and coca-cola _____ (not go) together.
- 6) The city police _____ (criticize) by the public for failing to do their duty.
- 7) Not only Sam but also his sister _____ (not believe) in Jesus Christ.
- 8) Their class _____ (have) 20 girls and 22 boys.

3. Translate the following into English paying special attention to verb forms.

- 1) 玛丽和她的孩子都很喜欢汤姆大叔。
- 2) 我的爸爸或者我的妈妈会来开家长会。
- 3) 队员们正在刻苦训练。
- 4) 政府因为这项政策受到了人民的批评。
- 5) 你和你的朋友杰克都不用为这件事负责。
- 6) 家禽很容易受这种疾病的感染。(infect)

4. Complete the following sentences with the correct choice (for revision of nouns).

- 1) Much _____ been said about the problem but nothing _____ been done so far.
A. has , had B. has , has
C. had , had D. have, have
- 2) The postman was really at a loss about which Jones to send the letter to as there were five _____ in the district.
A. Jones' B. Joneses
C. Jones D. Jones's
- 3) _____ on the wall are very special as they were taken when

- I was working as a reporter during the war in Vietnam.
- A. Photos B. Several photo
C. The photos D. Some photo
- 4) She was invited to go to the ball but she did not even have _____ to go with her dress.
A. a piece of jewelry B. piece of jewelry
C. a jewelry D. one jewelry
- 5) He was cold and hungry but he couldn't make a fire as his only _____ lost.
A. box of matches were B. box of match was
C. box of matches was D. boxes of matches were
- 6) _____ common in China even in very remote areas.
A. Woman doctors are B. Woman doctor is
C. Women doctor is D. Women doctors are
- 7) His paintings are very different from _____ , and that's why they have attracted a lot of attention at the exhibition.
A. anyone else B. anyone
C. anyone else's D. anyone's
- 8) That little cat of _____ is really cute and you can't help liking it when you see it.
A. Jane's B. Jane
C. her D. her's
- 9) Mr. Smith goes to the _____ once every two months to have his hair cut.
A. barber B. barber's home
C. barber's D. barber home
- 10) I'd like to have _____ with you sometime this week about your approaching examination.
A. a word B. some word
C. some words D. one word

Quotations for the Lesson

By nature all men are alike, but by education
widely different.

Chinese proverb

The things taught in colleges and schools are not
an education, but the means of education.

Emerson, 1831

The main part of intellectual education is not the
acquisition of facts but learning how to make facts
live.

Oliver Wendell Holmes, 1886

Lesson Two

Text

Icons

提起一位获得诺贝尔奖的华人物理学家的名字,今天的青少年恐怕很多人会感到陌生,无话可说,可是谈起当红歌星、球星,他们则是津津乐道。当今国内外的明星大腕被少男少女们一个个奉为偶像。君不见,追星族们为求得偶像的签名,可以在瓢泼大雨中等待半天,为一睹偶像的风采,可以大打出手破门而入。三四十年前青年人崇拜的科学家和英雄人物已被视为昨日黄花,中外都是如此。这种价值观的变化引起了社会学家和教育家的忧虑,他们指出星们、腕儿们只不过是媒体尤其是电视炒作的产物。

Heroes and Cultural Icons

Gary Goshgarian

1 If you were asked to list ten American heroes and heroines, you would probably name some or all of the following: George Washington, Abraham Lincoln, Daniel Boone, Martin Luther King Jr., Amelia Earhart, Susan B. Anthony, Jacqueline Kennedy Onassis, Helen Keller, Elizabeth Cady Stanton, and Rosa Parks. If next you were asked to list people who are generally admired by society, who somehow seem bigger than life, you might come up with an entirely different list. You might, in fact, name people who are celebrated

for their wealth and glamour rather than their achievements and moral strength of character. And you would not be alone, because pollsters have found that people today do not choose political leaders who shape history for their "Most Admired" list, but rather movie and television celebrities, fashion models, professional athletes, and even comic book and cartoon characters. In short media icons.

2 By definition, heroes and heroines are men and women distinguished by uncommon courage, achievements, and self-sacrifice made most often for the benefit of others — they are people against whom we measure others. They are men and women recognized for shaping our nation's consciousness and development as well as the lives of those who admire them. Yet, some people say that ours is an age where true heroes and heroines are hard to come by, where the very ideal of heroism is something beyond us — an artifact of the past. Some maintain that because the Cold War is over and because America is at peace our age is essentially an unheroic one. Furthermore, the overall crime rate is down, poverty has been eased by a strong and growing economy, and advances continue to be made in medical science. Consequently, bereft of cultural heroes, we have latched onto cultural icons — media superstars such as actors, actresses, sports celebrities, television personalities, and people who are simply famous for being famous.

3 Cultural icons are harder to define, but we know them when we see them. They are people who manage to transcend celebrity, who are legendary, who somehow manage to become mythic. But what makes some figures icons and others mere celebrities? That's hard to answer. In part, their lives have the quality of a story. For instance, the beautiful young Diana Spencer who at 19 married a prince, bore a king, renounced marriage and the throne, and died at the moment she found true love. Good looks certainly help. So does a special

indefinable charisma, with the help of the media. But nothing becomes an icon more than a tragic and early death — such as Martin Luther King Jr., John F. Kennedy, and Princess Diana.

Being Somebody

Donna Woolfolk Cross

4 One hundred years ago, people became famous for what they had achieved. Men like J. P. Morgan, E. H. Harriman and Jay Gould were all notable achievers. So were Thomas Edison, Mark Twain, and Susan B. Anthony.

5 Their accomplishments are still evident in our own day. Today's celebrities, however, often do not become known for any enduring achievement. The people we most admire today are usually those who are most highly publicized by the media.

6 In 1981, a Gallup poll revealed that Nancy Reagan was the nation's "most admired woman." The year before, that distinction went to President Carter's wife, Rosalynn. In fact, the wife of the current president is always one of the nation's most admired women. Today's celebrities, as the writer Daniel Boorstin says, are "people well-known for their well-knownness."

7 To become such a celebrity, one needs luck, not accomplishment. As Boorstin says, "The hero was distinguished by his accomplishment; the celebrity by his image or trademark. The hero created himself; the celebrity is created by the media. The hero was a big man; the celebrity is a big name."

8 There is another distinction: heroes inspire respect; celebrities inspire envy. Few of us believe we could be another Jonas Salk or Eleanor Roosevelt, but we could be another TV star like Telly Savalas or Suzanne Somers. Except for the attention they get from the media, these people are exactly like us.

9 The shift from hero-worship to celebrity-worship occurred around the turn of the century. It was closely tied to the rise of new forms of media — first photography, and later moving pictures, radio and television. For the first time, Americans could see and recognize their heroes. Previously, men like Gould and Harriman, whose names everyone knew, could easily have passed through a crowd without being recognized. The reproduction of photos in newspapers turned famous people into celebrities whose dress, appearance, and personal habits were widely commented upon. Slowly, the focus of public attention began to shift away from knowing what such people *did* to knowing what they *looked like*.

10 The shift was accelerated by the arrival of moving pictures. Between 1901 and 1914, 74 percent of the magazine articles about famous people were about political leaders, inventors, professionals, and businessmen. After 1922, however, most articles were about movie stars.

11 With the arrival of television, the faces of the stars became as familiar as those we saw across the breakfast table. We came to know more about the lives of the celebrities than we did about most of the people we know personally. Less than seventy years after the appearance of the first moving pictures, the shift from hero-worship to celebrity-worship was complete.

12 Today an appearance on a television talk show is the ultimate proof of “making it” in America. Actually, the term “talk show” is misleading. Celebrities do not appear on such a program because of an actual desire — or ability — to talk, but simply to gain recognition, and prove, merely by showing up, that they are “somebody.”

13 Being a guest on a talk show does not require qualities of wit, eloquence, brilliance, insight, or intelligence. A former talent coordinator for “the Tonight Show,” says that when he would ask a

scheduled guest, “What would you like to talk to the host about?” the reply he got most often was, “Have him ask me anything.” This, he says, usually meant, “I am a typical Hollywood actor, so I have never had an original thought and I have nothing to say of any interest to anyone anywhere.”

14 Most hosts are grateful just to get someone who will fill the room with sound. One talk show coordinator comments, “We look for the guest who is sure to talk no matter what. Ten seconds of silence appears very awkward on television; thirty seconds is disastrous. A guest who’s got to stop to think about everything he says before he opens his mouth is a ratings nightmare.”

15 This kind of attitude rewards smooth, insincere talk, and makes hesitancy look like stupidity.

16 “We wouldn’t have used George Washington on our show,” says one talent coordinator. “He might have been first in the hearts of his countrymen, but today he’d be dragging his bottom in the ratings.”

Word List

cultural /'kʌltʃərəl/ *adj.*

文化(上)的;人文的

icon /'aɪkən, -kən/ *n.*

偶像;崇拜对象

heroine /'herəʊɪn/ *n.*

女英雄;被崇拜的女人

celebrated /'selɪbreɪtɪd/ *adj.*

著名的,远近驰名的

glamour /'glæmə(r)/ *n.*

魅力,诱惑力

achievement /ə'tʃi:vmənt/ *n.*

成就,成绩

moral /'mərəl/ *adj.*

精神上的;道义上的

pollster /'pəʊlstə(r)/ *n.*

民意调查人

shape /ʃeɪp/ *v.*

塑造

celebrity /sɪ'lebrɪtɪ/ *n.*

名人,名流

fashion /'fæʃən/ <i>n.</i>	时装
athlete /'æθlit/ <i>n.</i>	运动员
comic /'kɒmɪk/ <i>adj.</i>	逗笑的; 喜剧的
comic book/strip	连环画
media /'mi:diə/ <i>n.</i>	(复)宣传工具, 新闻媒介
distinguish /dɪ'stɪŋɡwɪʃ/ <i>v.</i>	有别于; 使显著
self-sacrifice /,self'sækrɪfaɪs/ <i>n.</i>	自我牺牲
benefit /'benɪfɪt/ <i>n.</i>	益处, 好处
consciousness /'kɒnʃənsɪs/ <i>n.</i>	意识, 观念; 觉悟
heroism /'herəʊɪzəm/ <i>n.</i>	英雄行为; 英雄品质
artifact /'ɑ:tɪfækt/ <i>n.</i>	典型产物
maintain /meɪn'teɪn, mən-/ <i>v.</i>	(正式)认为, 主张
unheroic /ʌhɪ'rəʊɪk/ <i>adj.</i>	非英雄的; 不英勇的
overall /,əʊvər'ɔ:l/ <i>adj.</i>	总的
growing /'grəʊɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	发展的, 扩大的
economy /ɪ'kɒnəmi/ <i>n.</i>	经济
consequently /'kɒnsɪkwəntli/ <i>adv.</i>	所以, 因此
bereft (of) /bɪ'reft/ <i>adj.</i>	缺少……的; 失去……的
latch /lætʃ/ <i>v.</i>	(口)得到
personality /,pɜ:sə'nælɪti/ <i>n.</i>	名人
transcend /træn'send/ <i>v.</i>	超越……的界限
legendary /'ledʒəndəri/ <i>adj.</i>	传说(中)的; 传奇(式)的
mythic /'mɪθɪk/ <i>adj.</i>	(= mythical) 神话的; 只存在于 神话中的
renounce /rɪ'naʊns/ <i>v.</i>	声明放弃
throne /θrəʊn/ <i>n.</i>	王位
indefinable /,ɪndɪ'faɪnəbl/ <i>adj.</i>	难以确切表达的; 模糊不清的
charisma /kə'rɪzmə/ <i>n.</i>	(能吸引效忠的)领袖气质; 神秘 的个人魅力
notable /'nəʊtəbl/ <i>adj.</i>	有名的

achiever /ə'tʃi:və/ <i>n.</i>	成功者
accomplishment /ə'kʌmpliʃmənt, -'kɒm-/ <i>n.</i>	成就
evident /'evidənt/ <i>adj.</i>	明显的
publicize /'pʌblɪsaɪz/ <i>v.</i>	宣扬; 广为宣传
Gallup poll /'gæləp pəʊl/	(美) 盖洛普民意测验
distinction /dɪ'stɪŋkʃən/ <i>n.</i>	荣誉
current /'kʌrənt/ <i>adj.</i>	现任的; 目前的
trademark /'treɪdmɑ:k/ <i>n.</i>	商标
big /bɪg/ <i>adj.</i>	伟大的; 名气大的
inspire /ɪn'spaɪə(r)/ <i>v.</i>	(在……心中) 激起
hero-worship /'hɪərəʊwɜ:ʃɪp/ <i>n.</i>	崇拜英雄
rise /raɪz/ <i>n.</i>	出现
photography /fə'tɒɡrəfi/ <i>n.</i>	摄影
moving picture	电影
previously /'pri:vjəsli/ <i>adv.</i>	以前; 先前
reproduction /,ri:prə'dʌkʃən/ <i>n.</i>	再现
focus /'fəʊkəs/ <i>n.</i>	焦点
accelerate /ək'seləreɪt/ <i>v.</i>	加速
leader /'li:də(r)/ <i>n.</i>	领导; 领袖
inventor /ɪn'ventə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	发明家
professional /prə'feʃənəl/ <i>n.</i>	专家, 内行人
personally /'pɜ:sənəli/ <i>adv.</i>	亲自地
proof /pru:f/ <i>n.</i>	证据
misleading /mɪs'li:dɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	骗人的; 使人产生误解的
recognition /,rekəg'nɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	赞誉; 认可
somebody /'sʌmbədi, -bədi/ <i>n.</i>	重要人物
wit /wɪt/ <i>n.</i>	才智
eloquence /'eləkwəns/ <i>n.</i>	口才; 雄辩
brilliance /'brɪljəns/ <i>n.</i>	卓越, 杰出

coordinator /kəu'ɔ:dɪnətə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	策划者
scheduled /'skedʒuəld/ <i>adj.</i>	预先安排的;定期的
host /həʊst/ <i>n.</i>	节目主持人
original /ə'rɪdʒənəl/ <i>adj.</i>	有独到见解的;有独创性的
disastrous /dɪ'zɑ:stɹəs/ <i>adj.</i>	灾难性的;极坏的
rating /'reɪtɪŋ/ <i>n.</i>	广播或电视节目收视(听)率
nightmare /'naɪtmeə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	噩梦;(在噩梦中可能看到的)可怕的事物
insincere /ɪnsɪn'siə(r)/ <i>adj.</i>	不真诚的
hesitancy /'hezɪtənsɪ/ <i>n.</i>	犹豫不决,踌躇
stupidity /stju:'pɪdɪtɪ/ <i>n.</i>	愚蠢
countryman /'kʌntrɪmən/ <i>n.</i>	同胞

Proper Names

Gary Soshgarian /'gæri sɒʃ'geəriən/	加里·高西加理安
Donna Woolfolk Cross /'dɒnə 'wu:lfəʊk 'krɒs/	唐娜·伍尔福克·克罗斯
George Washington /'dʒɔ:dʒ 'wɒtʃɪŋtən/	乔治·华盛顿(美国第一位总统)
Abraham Lincoln /'eɪbrəhæm 'lɪŋkən/	林肯(美国第十六位总统)
Daniel Boone /'dænjəl 'bu:n/	丹尼尔·布恩
Martin Luther King Jr. /'mɑ:tɪn 'lu:θə(r) 'kɪŋ 'dʒu:njə(r)/	马丁·路德·金
Amelia Earhart /ə'mɪliə 'eəhɑ:t/	艾米莉亚·埃尔哈特
Susan B. Anthony /'suzən bi: 'æntəni/	苏珊·B·安东尼
Jacqueline Kennedy Onassis /'dʒækwəli:n	杰奎琳·肯尼迪·奥纳西

'kenɪdɪ 'əʊnəsɪz/	斯
Helen Keller /'helɪn 'kelə(r)/	海伦·凯勒
Elizabeth Cady Stanton /ɪ'lɪzəbeθ 'keɪdɪ 'stæntən/	伊丽莎白·卡迪·斯坦顿
Rosa Parks /'rəʊzə 'pɑ:ks/	罗莎·帕克斯
J. P. Morgan /dʒeɪ pi: 'mɔ:ɡən/	J·P·摩根
E. H. Harriman /i: ertʃ 'hæɪrɪmən/	E·H·哈里曼
Jay Gould /'dʒeɪ 'ɡu:ld/	杰·古尔德
Thomas Edison /'tɒməs 'edɪsən/	托马斯·爱迪生
Mark Twain /'mɑ:k 'tweɪn/	马克·吐温
Nancy Reagan /'nænsɪ 'reɪɡən/	南希·里根
Carter /'kɑ:tə(r)/	卡特
Rosalynn /'rəʊzəlɪn/	罗莎琳
Daniel Boorstin /'dænjəl 'buə(r)stɪn/	丹尼尔·布尔斯特廷
Jonas Salk /'dʒɒnəs 'sɔ:lk/	乔纳斯·索尔克
Eleanor Roosevelt /ɪ'lənə(r) 'rəʊzəvelt/	埃莉诺·罗斯福
Telly Savalas /'telɪ 'sævɪləs/	特莉·萨瓦拉斯
Suzanne Somers /su:'zæn 'sʌməz/	苏珊娜·萨默斯
Graig Tennis /'ɡreɪɡ 'tenɪs/	格瑞格·泰尼斯
Johnny Carson /'dʒɒni 'kɑ:sən/	约翰尼·卡森
Hollywood /'hɒliwud/	好莱坞

Useful Expressions

distinguished (from...) by...	因……有别于(……)
measure... against...	对照……评价……
be known for	以……著称
go to sb. /sth.	授予, 被……赢得
pass through	经过

turn... into	把……变成
comment on/upon	评论
shift from... to	从……转为
look like	看似
show up	出现
fill... with	使……充满
come to realize	认识到

Word Study

make *vt. & vi.*

1. 制作, 制造

V (+ N) + N

Han Christian Andersen's father was a shoemaker; he *made* *very good shoes*.

Once he *made a young lady a pair of red shoes*.

2. 做(某事)

V + (表示行为的) N

The United States *made the Louisiana Purchase* from Napoleon.

Heroes and heroines are men and women distinguished by... and *self-sacrifice made* most often for the benefit of others.

When English people *are making a journey* by bus, they do their best to find an empty seat.

He *made a rush* for the door down the hall.

3. 使……做某事; 使……处于某种状况

V + N + N/adj., etc.; V + N + do sth.

...things that truly would be useful in *making people happier*...

This kind of attitude..., and *make hesitancy look like* stupidity.

The jokes *made their sides ache*.

4. Phrases:

make sure 确保;确定

make it 成功,做成

make a success of 做成

make friends with 与……交朋友

make a good job of 做好

make it a point to do sth. 留意去做……

make one's way to 到……去

make ... out of 用……做成

make up 编造

make up one's mind 下决心

make appointments (with)/ contact (with) /a contribution (to)/a deal /deposits/ a promise, etc. (与……)有约/(与……)签合同/(对……)有贡献/做交易/付定金/承诺等

recognize *v.*

1. 认出,识别

V + N (+ as)

For the first time, Americans could see and *recognize their* heroes.

At the beginning of the 20th century, *famous people* could have passed through a crowd without *being recognized*.

After a long time away from home, he couldn't *recognize his* mother's voice over the phone.

They *recognized the bicycle as* Xiao Yan's.

2. (正式)承认,认可

V + N (+ as)

The President said at the reception, "We *recognize one China*, that is, the People's Republic of China."

The diploma of our university is recognized in many other countries.

3. 承认(功绩、成就等), 赞赏, 高度评价

V + N (+ as / for)

They *are recognized for* shaping our nation's consciousness and development.

Einstein *is generally recognized as* one of the few outstanding scientists of the 20th century.

recognition *n.* 认出; (正式)承认; 褒奖, 赞赏

Phrase:

gain recognition 得到赞赏

define *vt.*

1. 下定义, 阐明含义

V + N (+ as)

Cultural icons are harder to define.

To define a word, the dictionary editor has to do a lot of research.

The Internet is defined as a computer system that allows millions of computer users around the world to exchange information.

2. 划定……界限、范围, 界定

V + N (+ adv.)

I don't think *my responsibility is clearly defined.*

We've got *to define consumers' rights* so that we can deal with their complaints.

definition *n.* 定义

Phrase:

by definition 按定义……

By definition, cultural icons are not achievers.

By definition, advertising is the business of publicizing a product,
a person, or a cause.

Notes on the Text

1. **About the text:** 本课课文由两个短篇组成。分别选自加里·高西加理安的 *The Contemporary Reader* (1999 年第六版) 和唐娜·伍尔福克·克罗斯的 *Mediaspeak: How Television Makes Up Your Mind* (1983 年)。

2. **“Heroes and Cultural Icons”:**《英雄与文化偶像》选自 *The Contemporary Reader* 第五章“流行偶像”(“Pop Icons”)的引言。该章收入了九篇不同作者所写的美国人所崇拜的偶像。标题为编者所加。文章的开头作者使用了两个包含虚拟条件句 if you were... 的句子,说明人们心目中英雄人物是哪些人,他们崇拜的又是什么人。

3. **George Washington, Abraham Lincoln, Daniel Boone, Martin Luther King Jr., Amelia Earhart, Susan B. Anthony, Jacqueline Kennedy Onassis, Helen Keller, Elizabeth Cady Stanton, and Rosa Parks:**

George Washington: 华盛顿(1732—1799),美国第一位总统(1789—1797 年在任),领导美国独立战争的大陆军总司令(1775—1781)。

Abraham Lincoln: 林肯(1809—1865),美国第十六位总统(1861—1865 年在任),就任后不久美国爆发南北战争,战后遭暗杀身亡。

Daniel Boone: 布恩(1734—1820),美国拓荒者,传奇式人物,对肯塔基和坎伯兰隘口通道的开辟作出了贡献。

Martin Luther King Jr.: 马丁·路德·金(1929—1968),美国浸理会黑人牧师,非暴力民权运动领袖,获1964年诺贝尔和平奖,后遭暗杀身亡。

Amelia Earhart: 埃尔哈特(1897—1937),美国女飞行员,单独飞越大西洋的第一位妇女,后环球飞行时神秘失踪。

Susan B. Anthony: 苏珊·B·安东尼(1820—1906),美国社会活动家、改革家、女权运动倡导者,为争取妇女权益而活动,为美国妇女在1920年最终赢得选举权作出了贡献。

Jacqueline Kennedy Onassis: 杰奎琳·肯尼迪·奥纳西斯(1929—1994),美国第三十五位总统肯尼迪之妻,肯尼迪1963年遇刺身亡后,1968年与希腊船王奥纳西斯结婚。

Helen Keller: 海伦·凯勒(1880—1968),美国聋哑女作家和教育家,终身致力于聋哑人和盲人的公共救助事业。

Elizabeth Cady Stanton: 伊利莎白·卡迪·斯坦顿(1815—1902),美国女权运动领袖。

Rosa Parks: 罗莎·帕克斯,美国黑人妇女,1955年12月1日她拒绝在公共汽车里给白人让座,从而引发了一场轰轰烈烈的民权运动。

4. If next you were asked to list people who are generally admired by society, who somehow seem bigger than life, you might come up with an entirely different list: 如果有人请你列举在社会上受到普遍赞赏、貌似非凡的人,你所列举的恐怕是完全不同的人。

bigger / larger than life: 超群的;(描写等)夸大的。请比较:

My disappointment was *bigger than life*.

我失望极了。

come up with: 提出,想出,又如:

No one could find a solution to the problem, but finally Bill *came up with* an idea.

谁也没有找出解决问题的方法,最后还是比尔想出了个主

意。

The scientist *came up with* a good plan for using solar energy.

那位科学家制定出了一个利用太阳能的好计划。

5. **You might, in fact, name people who are celebrated for their wealth and glamour rather than their achievements and moral strength of character:** 事实上,你提出的一些人,可能并非因其成就和内在的品德,而是因其财富和外在魅力而受到赞赏。
rather than; instead of 不是……(而是);与其……(不如)。

6. **And you would not be alone, because pollsters have found that people today do not choose political leaders who shape history for their “Most Admired” list, but rather movie and television celebrities, fashion models, professional athletes, and even comic book and cartoon characters:** 不仅是你一个人会提出这些人,民意调查人发现,今天人们不再选择创造过历史的政治领袖为他们“最钦佩的人物”,而是选择影视名人、时装模特、职业运动员、甚至连环画和漫画中的人物。

rather: 宁可。

7. **In short media icons:** 总之都是那些媒体偶像。(作者概括上述人士均为媒体频频报道的对象。)

in short: 简言之,总之(用来归纳或概括前面所提的事情。)

8. **By definition, heroes and heroines are men and women distinguished by uncommon courage, achievements, and self-sacrifice made most often for the benefit of others — they are people against whom we measure others:** 就定义而言,英雄之所以与众不同是因为他们有非凡的勇气、取得了卓著的成就、常常为他人的利益而作出牺牲——他们是我们评价别人的标准。

by definition: 按定义,又如:

By dictionary definition, an icon is a person or a thing regarded as a symbol of something.

按词典的释义,偶像是被视为象征的人和物。

be distinguished (from...) by: 由于……而有别(于……),又如:

He is distinguished from his twin brother by a mole on his back.

他因背上有个痣而与他的双胞胎兄弟不同。

made most often for the benefit of others: 过去分词短语,作定语,修饰 self-sacrifice。

against whom we measure others: 定语从句的关系代词前带一介词的又一实例。(详见第1课第28条注释。)

measure... against 对照……来评价……,又如:

He constantly measures his performance against that of the best goalkeeper in the country.

他总是对照全国最好的守门员来衡量自己的表现。

Measured against the achievements of his friends, he thinks his work is far from satisfactory.

对照朋友们的成就,他觉得他的工作一点也不令人满意。

9. They are men and women recognized for shaping our nation's consciousness and development as well as the lives of those who admire them: 他们是大家公认的对我们国家意识的形成和我们国家的发展,还有对他们的崇拜者的一生起了重大作用的人。

recognized... those who admire them: 过去分词短语,作定语,修饰 men and women; our nation's consciousness and development 和 the lives of those who admire them 两个名词短语都是动名词 shaping 的宾语。

10. Yet, some people say that ours is an age where true heroes and heroines are hard to come by, where the very ideal of heroism is something beyond us — an artifact of the past: 可是,有人说,我们的时代是很难出现真正英雄的时代,英雄主义这一概念本

身我们就难以理解——它已经成为历史。

ours: 是名词性代词, 作宾语从句的主语。

where 引出两个定语从句, 修饰 an age。

come by: 找到, 又如:

In this city, traditional barbershops are hard *to come by*.

在这个城市里传统的理发店已经很难找到。

How *did you come by* that rare book?

你是怎么找到那本珍贵的书的?

be beyond sb.: 为某人所不能理解; 对于某人来说太难。

beyond 还常与名词搭配, 常见的有:

beyond belief 不可相信

beyond control 无法控制

beyond doubt 毫无疑问

beyond description 难以描述

beyond recognition 难以认出

beyond one's means(经济上)难以承受

11. our age is essentially an unheroic one: 我们的时代本质上不是一个英勇豪壮的时代。

12. Consequently, bereft of cultural heroes, we have latched onto cultural icons: 因此, 缺少了民族(即本民族的文化)英雄, 我们就迷上了通俗文化偶像。

consequently 是副词, 起连词的作用, 将本句与上句连接起来。

bereft of: (正式)失去; 缺少。

latch onto / on to sb. / sth.: (口语)对……产生极大的兴趣。

注意作者选词的含义与分寸。cultural 一词有两种含义, 一是与某一特定的社会的思想、信仰、风俗习惯有关, 这是句中第一个 cultural 的意思; 二是与文学、艺术、美术、音乐有关, 是句中第二个 cultural 的意思。bereft of 是非常文气的说法, 而 latch onto 又是很通俗的说法, 前者用来说英雄, 后者用来说流行偶像, 语言和内容都形成鲜明的对照。

13. **people who are simply famous for being famous:** 仅仅因为有名而成名的那些人。

14. **They are people who manage to transcend celebrity, who are legendary, who somehow manage to become mythic:** 他们超越了名流,成为传奇式人物,甚至在某种程度已是神话式的人物。

15. **But what makes some figures icons and others mere celebrities?:** 究竟是哪些因素使有些人成为偶像,另一些人仅成了名流呢?

16. **In part, their lives have the quality of a story:** 部分原因是他们的生平带有传奇故事的色彩。

in part: partly, not completely, 部分地。

17. **Good looks certainly help. So does a special indefinable charisma, with the help of the media:** 漂亮的长相当然有用,另外,在媒体的炒作下某种难以描述的、特殊的个人魅力也起作用。(注意作者的讽刺口吻,暗示这种魅力很大程度上是媒体宣传出来的。)

18. **But nothing becomes an icon more than a tragic and early death:** 然而悲剧性地过早离开这个世界,却是造成偶像最重要的因素。(直译:……最适于造就偶像了。)

more than a...death: 比较从句的主语,谓语 does (= becomes an icon)省略,又如:

Nothing pleases the professor *more than his students' achievement*.

没有比学生的成就更使教授高兴的事了。

become *vt.*: 适合;与……相称,又如:

Purple *becomes* her. 紫色很适合她。

Don't be rude, Jack. It *doesn't become* you.

杰克,别粗鲁,这同你的身份很不相称。

19. **"Being Somebody":**《当名人》,文章结构十分清楚。第一部分说明英雄与名流的区别;第二部分阐述崇拜名流的原因;最后指出为什么电视台的脱口秀节目纷纷邀请名流出场。作者对

当前社会上崇拜影星、歌星的情况颇为感慨,提出自己的看法。她的语气并不慷慨激昂,而是不温不火地用当今生活中人人熟悉的事例阐明自己的观点,字里行间不时露出一丝讽刺。

- 20. Men like J. P. Morgan, E. H. Harriman and Jay Gould were all notable achievers. So were Thomas Edison, Mark Twain, and Susan B. Anthony:** 像 J·P·摩根、E·H·哈里曼和杰·古尔德等人都是著名的事业有成之人;托马斯·爱迪生、马克·吐温以及苏珊·B·安东尼也是大有作为之士。

J. P. (John Pierpont) Morgan: 摩根(1837—1913), 美国金融家、铁路巨头, 在缓解 1895 年及 1907 年美国金融危机中起过重要作用。

E. H. (Edward Henry) Harriman: 哈里曼(1848—1909), 美国金融家和铁路大王, 曾为纽约证券交易所经纪人, 后成为西部铁路大发展的主要组织者和建设者之一。

Jay Gould: 杰·古尔德(1836—1892), 美国铁路投机商和金融家, 靠投机买卖控制铁路事业及西方联合电报公司和纽约市高架铁路, 因阴谋垄断黄金市场引起“黑色星期五”(1869 年 9 月 24 日) 金融恐慌。

以上三人都是美国大资本家, 在资本原始积累时期, 不择手段地积累了大量财富, 作者认为他们对美国的经济的发展都有贡献。

Thomas Edison: 托马斯·爱迪生(1847—1931), 美国发明家, 获得白炽灯、留声机、炭粒话筒、电影放映机等 1,093 项发明专利权, 对电话、电灯及其他多种电器的发明也起了主要作用。

Mark Twain: 马克·吐温, 塞缪尔·克莱门斯(1835—1910) 的笔名, 美国著名作家, 当过密西西比河上的领航员和新闻记者, 主要作品有《汤姆·索亚历险记》、《哈克贝利·费恩历险记》等。

- 21. The people we most admire today are usually those who are most highly publicized by the media:** 今天我们最崇敬的人通常是被媒体炒得最出风头的那些人。

这里 we 泛指包括自己在内的人们。

be most publicized by the media: 被媒体宣传得最多。

22. **Gallup poll:** 盖洛普民意测验,由美国民意统计学家 G·H·盖洛普(1901—1984) 创始。

23. **Nancy Reagan:** 南希·里根,美国第四十任总统(1981—1989 年在任) 里根之妻。

24. **Rosalynn Carter:** 罗莎琳·卡特,美国第三十九任总统(1977—1981 年在任) 卡特之妻。

25. **Today's celebrities, as the writer Daniel Boorstin says, are "people well-known for their well-knownness."**: 正如作家丹尼尔·布尔斯廷所说,今天的名人是“因为有名而成名的人”。

people well-known for their well-knownness 与上篇短文中的 people who are simply famous for being famous 所表达的意思一样。

well-knownness: 作者杜撰的词,由 well-known 演绎而来。

26. **The hero was a big man; the celebrity is a big name:** 英雄是了不起的人物;名流是了不起的名声。

a big man: 这里指的是伟大的人物。

27. **The hero was distinguished by his accomplishment; the celebrity by his image or trademark:** 英雄因其成就而出众,而名流则因其形像或者说其特征而出名。

在 the celebrity by his image or trademark 中主语 the celebrity 后省略了谓语动词 is distinguished。注意作者在提到英雄时用过去时,提起名流时用现在时,如她自己所说,100 年前人们崇拜英雄,而今天人们崇拜名流。

28. **Few of us believe we could be another Jonas Salk or Eleanor Roosevelt, but we could be another TV star like Telly Savalas or Suzanne Somers:** 我们当中没有什么人相信我们能成为第二个乔纳斯·索尔克,或是第二个埃莉诺·罗斯福,但是我们能成为一个像特莉·萨瓦拉斯或苏珊娜·萨默斯一样的电视大腕。

Jonas Salk: 乔纳斯·索尔克(1914—), 美国医生、微生物学家, 研制成预防小儿麻痹症的疫苗。

Eleanor Roosevelt: 埃莉诺·罗斯福(1884—1962), 美国第三十二任总统(1933—1945 年在任) 富兰克林·罗斯福之妻, 她本人也是一位社会活动家, 曾任美国驻联合国代表、联合国人权委员会主席, 对世界人权宣言的起草和通过起了重要作用。

Telly Savalas and Suzanne Somers: 美国电视明星。

29. **Except for the attention they get from the media, these people are exactly like us:** 要是没有媒体的关注, 这些人和我们完全一样。

30. **Previously, men like Gould and Harriman, whose names everyone knew, could easily have passed through a crowd without being recognized:** 以前, 像古尔德和哈里曼这样家喻户晓的人完全可能穿过人群而没被人认出来。

whose names everyone knew: 非限定性定语从句, 修饰 Gould and Harriman。

being recognized: 动名词的被动形式。

31. **The reproduction of photos in newspapers turned famous people into celebrities whose dress, appearance, and personal habits were widely commented upon:** 现在报纸上能刊登照片, 这使名人成为名流, 他们的衣着、外貌和体态举止都成为人们评论的对象。

personal habits: 指人的举手投足, 外在形象。

32. **Slowly, the focus of public attention began to shift away from knowing what such people *did* to knowing what they *looked like*:** 公众的注意力逐渐由了解这些人做了些什么转移到了解他们长的是个什么样子。

shift (away) from...to...: 由……转移到……。

副词 slowly 放在句首, 并用逗号将其与句子的其他部分隔开时, 修饰全句。

这里 did 及 looked like 用斜体表示强调与对比。

33. **With the arrival of television, the faces of the stars became as familiar as those we saw across the breakfast table:** 电视的出现,使我们对明星的面孔就像对家里人的面孔那样熟悉。

those we saw across the breakfast table = those faces which we saw across the breakfast table: 坐在我们对面吃早饭的人,指住在一起的家庭成员。

34. **We came to know more about the lives of the celebrities than we did about most of the people we know personally:** 我们对名流生活的了解多于对我们认识的多数人的了解。

than we did...: 比较从句, did 代表 knew。

people we know personally: 指我们常见到并有接触的人(相对于那些我们只是在媒体上见过的名流。)

35. **Today an appearance on a television talk show is the ultimate proof of “making it” in America:** 今天在电视台的一个脱口秀节目上一露脸就绝对能证明你在美国“一举成名了”。(注意作者的讽刺口吻,因此 making it 用了引号。)

make it: (口语)达到预定目标,顺利度过一段困难时期;成功;(及时)到达,又如:

I believe he's got the talent *to make it*.

我相信他有把事办成的才能。

He dreamed of going to college all his life, but never *made it*.

他一辈子都梦想上大学,可始终没有上成。

36. **Celebrities do not appear on such a program because of an actual desire — or ability — to talk, but simply to gain recognition, and prove, merely by showing up, that they are “somebody”:** 名流在这样的节目中出场,并不是因为他们真想说些什么,或是口才很棒,而纯属为了出名,并通过(在荧屏上)露面,证明他们是“重要人物”。

but 引出的是一个省略了主语和谓语的并列从句,省略的部分

是: they appear on such a program. 两个不定式短语作目的状语。

merely by showing up 是状语, 修饰 prove.

that they are "somebody" 是 prove 的宾语。

37. **A former talent coordinator for "the Tonight Show," says that when he would ask a scheduled guest, "What would you like to talk to the host about?" the reply he got most often was, "Have him ask me anything":** 一位《今夜访谈》从前的策划人说, 他当策划人时, 若问一位已约定好的嘉宾: “您想和主持人谈些什么?” 最常见的回答是: “让他随便问好了。”

talent coordinator: 为电视台寻找访谈节目嘉宾的人。talent 作名词时的意思是“人才”、“演艺人员”。

"the Tonight Show": 美国一家电视台的一个访谈节目。

he would ask: 用 would 表示过去经常发生的行为。

38. **This, he says, usually meant, "I am a typical Hollywood actor, so I have never had an original thought and I have nothing to say of any interest to anyone anywhere":** 他说, 这句话的一般含义是: “我是个典型的好莱坞演员, 所以我从来没有过什么新颖的观点, 无论在什么地方, 我也没有任何人会感兴趣的话题好谈。”

注意最后一个从句 I have nothing to say of any interest to anyone anywhere 结构, 其中 of any interest to anyone 作定语, 修饰 nothing, anywhere 是副词, 修饰全句。

作者这里的潜台词是, 明星们当然是不会说出来的。作者用挖苦的口吻, 替他们解释“他问我什么都行”。表面上看, 他们好像什么问题都能回答似的, 而作者认为这句话恰好说明他们的无知。

39. **Most hosts are grateful just to get someone who will fill the room with sound:** 多数主持人只要有人说话, 让演播室老有声音就很满意了。(此句的意思是: 不管明星们说什么, 只要说话

就行。)

40. **We look for the guest who is sure to talk no matter what:** 我们找的是能说的嘉宾,不管说什么都行。

be sure to do sth.: 一定要……;肯定会……,又如:

With your talent, you *are sure to make it*.

凭着你的才能你一定会成功。

Don't worry. He *is sure to come back*.

别着急,他一定会回来的。

Be sure to take the medicine before you go to bed.

睡觉前务必吃药。

Be sure to read the text before class.

课前一定要读课文。

no matter 后省略了 he talks about.

41. **Ten seconds of silence appears very awkward on television; thirty seconds is disastrous:**

电视屏幕上 10 秒钟的沉默会使人感到别扭,30 秒钟的沉默就糟糕透了。

42. **A guest who's got to stop to think about everything he says before he opens his mouth is a ratings nightmare:** 如果一位嘉宾在开口之前,都要先停下来想一想该说什么,这对收视率来说简直是太可怕了。

43. **This kind of attitude rewards smooth, insincere talk, and makes hesitancy look like stupidity:** 这种看法结果是鼓励了口若悬河的空话,而把迟疑看成是愚笨。

reward v.: 酬谢;奖励,又如:

Winners of the speech contest *were rewarded* with a trip to Britain.

对演讲比赛的获胜者的奖励是去英国旅行。

The company *rewarded him* with a three-week leave.

公司奖励他三个星期的休假。

课文里用的是引申的意思,表示“得出……的结果”,又如:

I am sure that all your hard work *will be rewarded*.

我相信你的辛勤劳动一定会结出丰硕的果实。

The publication of the book *rewarded* his years of research.

这本书是他多年研究的结果。

44. **“We wouldn’t have used George Washington on our show,” says one talent coordinator. “He might have been first in the hearts of his countrymen, but today he’d be dragging his bottom in the ratings”:** “我们决不会邀请乔治·华盛顿来当我们节目的嘉宾。”一位策划人如是说:“他在国人的心目中可能占有头等的位置,但是今天在收视率方面,他会很糟糕。”(据说华盛顿是个出色的将军,但不善于辞令。)

We wouldn’t have used George Washington on our show 此句省略了虚拟条件句 if he had been alive(如果他还活着)。

He might have been first in the hearts of his countrymen 这里省略了虚拟条件句 if there had been an opinion poll(如果搞一个民意调查)。

he’d be dragging his bottom in the ratings 省略了虚拟条件句 if we had used him on our show(如果我们的节目请他当嘉宾)。

Work on the Text

1. Answer these questions.

- 1) How does Goshgarian define heroes and heroines?
- 2) According to Goshgarian what kind of people are generally admired by society?
- 3) Some people say that our age is an unheroic one. What reasons do they give? Do you agree that this is basically an unheroic age?

- 4) According to Goshgarian, what sort of people are cultural icons? What are some of the things that make figures icons?
- 5) What are the major distinctions between the hero and the celebrity according to Boorstin?
- 6) When did celebrity-worship begin? What caused the shift from hero-worship to celebrity-worship?
- 7) What role did the movie play in celebrity-worship?
- 8) How was this shift completed? How long did it take?
- 9) What are television talk shows? What qualities should talk show guests possess?
- 10) Why do celebrities frequently appear on such a program? In what way is this term "talk show" misleading?
- 11) Why are celebrities invited for talk shows if they don't possess the qualities such a program requires?
- 12) How would you comment on television talk shows in China?

2. Look up the following words in an English-English dictionary before looking at the Word List. (You have to decide the part of speech of each first.)

celebrated (Para. 1) achiever (Para. 4) publicize (Para. 5)
 somebody (Para. 12) original (Para. 13) reward (Para. 15)

3. Paraphrase.

- 1) ... who somehow seem bigger than life... (Para. 1)
- 2) But nothing becomes an icon more than a tragic and early death... (Para. 3)
- 3) ... the ultimate proof of "making it" in America... (Para. 12)
- 4) Most hosts are grateful just to get someone who will fill the room with sound. (Para. 14)
- 5) This kind of attitude rewards smooth, insincere talk...

(Para. 15)

4. Discuss or speak on the following topics.

- 1) According to the authors, what is a hero? What is a pop icon? What is a celebrity? Do you agree with them?
- 2) List some people you admire. By the standards of the authors, are they heroes, pop icons or celebrities? Do you think they are equally admirable?

5. Write a detailed outline of "Being Somebody".

You are expected to follow these steps:

- 1) Divide the text into 3 parts:
 - (1) What are the distinctions between a hero and a celebrity?
 - (2) What has resulted in celebrity-worship?
 - (3) Why are celebrities often invited on talk shows?
- 2) Supply details for the second and third parts the way the first part is outlined.

What are the distinctions between a hero and a celebrity:

- (1) A hero becomes famous for his / her enduring achievement; a celebrity becomes famous because of much publicity.
- (2) To become a celebrity, one needs luck; to become a hero, one needs accomplishment.
- (3) Heroes inspire respect; celebrities inspire envy.

Vocabulary Exercises

1. Complete the following sentences with words formed in the same way as in the examples, making changes in the spelling and the verb form wherever necessary.

Examples:

computerize 使计算机化 centralize 使集中
socialize 使社会(主义)化 industrialize 使工业化
specialize 使专业化 normalize 使正常化

(名词/形容词 + -ize / -ise → 动词)

criticize 批评

deputize 委派……为代表

hospitalize 住院治疗

(名词 + -ize / -ise → 动词)

adj.: modern popular

noun: apology memory computer

- 1) The government has worked out a ten-year programme to _____ the transport system of the country.
- 2) He _____ to me for what he had said.
- 3) It took her a couple of hours to _____ the new words in the text.
- 4) Much of the work in the library has been _____ .
- 5) It didn't take long to _____ personal computers.

2. Translate the following into English.

- 1) Use the verb + noun or adj. + noun collocation.

实现目标 崇拜英雄 崇拜金钱 受到赏识 获得自信
保持沉默 打破沉默 推卸责任 引起注意 分清敌友

加快速度 透露秘密 塑造历史 塑造未来 开创生活
缓解贫穷 取得进展 现任总统 工作重心 新颖观点
真诚愿望

2) Use the “useful expressions”.

- (1) 去郑州的路上,我们经过一个被洪水冲毁的村庄。
- (2) 那次不寻常的经历使鲍勃变成一个耐心、宽容的人。
- (3) 那人的头发染成了艳绿色,看上去像个小丑。
- (4) 他们总是对照专业人员 (professionals) 的标准来审视自己的工作。
- (5) 便衣警察在黑暗里等着盗贼出现。
- (6) 琼斯太太的善良使男孩心里充满了希望和感激。
- (7) 那些超级明星的私生活经常受到小报的评论。
- (8) 这个女孩子有非凡的毅力使她不同于她的同班同学。
- (9) 日落时分,强劲的冷风由东南风转为西北风。
- (10) 最高额的奖学金颁给了一位物理研究生。
- (11) 安徒生的童话以寓意深刻著称。
- (12) 许多人开始意识到在公共场所使用蜂窝电话 (cellular phones) 的负作用。

3) Use *make*, *recognize* and *define*.

- (1) 国际社会公认中华人民共和国代表全中国。
- (2) 小时候她的父母就教育她要准备为了国家的利益作出自我牺牲。
- (3) 我们一眼就认出舞台上的那个罗密欧是我们的英国老师。
- (4) 英国人的矜持使他们显得傲气。
- (5) 不同的民族对人权的定义有很大的不同。
- (6) 我的朋友乔治因其新颖观点而倍加赞赏,他的成功使得我的努力显得微不足道。
- (7) 林先生,请您明确描述您组织的宗旨 (purposes) 好

吗?

- (8) 我们对他人的同情心以及我们对学习的热忱使我们的生命更有意义。
- (9) 我妹妹是流行音乐迷,可是她居然没有听出我刚才哼(hum)的歌曲。
- (10) 按照定义,文化偶像一般指的是被媒体大加炒作的著名的电视名人、时装模特、职业运动员、电影明星等人。

3. Complete the following sentences.

1) Put suitable prepositions or adverbs in the blanks.

- (1) I don't think he is capable _____ doing that sort of thing. He is far _____ being a jealous person.
- (2) He grew _____ in a village which was famous _____ its beautiful mountains.
- (3) He has all the makings of a great tennis player except _____ his height.
- (4) The future of all the employees is closely tied _____ the development of their company.
- (5) Chen's latest film has been unfavorably commented _____.
- (6) The focus of their attention has shifted _____ heavy industry _____ agriculture and light industry.
- (7) It's almost 8 o'clock. But no one has shown _____ for the meeting.
- (8) What you've said is _____ no interest to me _____ all.
- (9) With the arrival of the 21st century, the so-called information superhighway will play a very important

role.

- (10) The boy is very grateful _____ the old man _____ his generous offer.
- (11) The writer is well known _____ his simple language and profound insight.
- (12) He thought for a while and then came _____ a good idea.
- (13) This edition of the book is hard to come _____ nowadays. Where did you pick it _____?
- (14) In short, he did all this _____ the benefit of the people.
- (15) In those days, young people used to measure themselves _____ such heroes as Lei Feng and Dong Cunrui.

2) Choose the right word from the brackets.

- (1) He has broken two world records in one day, which is quite an _____. (achievement, accomplishment)
- (2) The _____ of computer technology has transformed the information industry (信息产业). (rise, increase)
- (3) Have you got any _____ that you own this car? (sign, proof)
- (4) I'm really _____ to you for all your help. (grateful, thankful)
- (5) The first day was a _____, but it was far from a total _____. (disaster, nightmare)

4. Choose the best word for each blank.

Every day thousands of people go jogging. Why has jogging — running slowly for long (1) _____ (distances, lengths, spaces, ways) — become so popular? Donald Robbins, who is

forty-two years old (2) _____ (and, but, so, while) works in an office, began jogging a few years ago because he felt he was too fat. At first he (3) _____ (can, could, might, must) only run about 100 yards, and (4) _____ (it, that, this, those) took him almost three months to be able to run a (5) _____ (complete, full, total, whole) mile. But two months later, he ran in a marathon (6) _____ (contest, dash, race, rush) — over twenty-six miles.

If you (7) _____ (decide, hate, love, refuse) to jog, be sure to ask your doctor for (8) _____ (advice, help, medicine, treatment).

Does jogging cost much? No, it costs almost nothing. But most people agree (9) _____ (as, like, that, with) good running shoes are very important. They (10) _____ (cover, keep, protect, warm) your feet and legs from the shock of running on hard (11) _____ (coverings, outsides, surfaces, tops).

Jogging could make your heart stronger and also help you (12) _____ (feel, feeling, in feeling, to feel) better about yourself.

Grammar & Usage

Subject-Verb Agreement (II)

1. 带确定数量词的名词词组作主语时的主谓一致

- 1) 当主语是表示数目、时间、重量、距离等的复数名词时, 如果该名词所表示的数量看作一个整体, 其后的动词用单数。

Ten seconds of silence *appears* very awkward on television.

A thousand dollars a month *is* more than I can afford.

Four years *is* too long for me to wait.

Sixty miles *is* a short run in a car.

- 2) 当主语是表示数目、时间、重量、距离等的复数名词时, 如该名词所表示的数量看作单个个体, 其后的动词用复数。

The past three weeks *were* the hardest time in his life.

Hundreds of buildings *were* put up in the city last year.

Five kilos of apples *are* placed into the basket.

- 3) 当主语为“分数或百分数 + of + 名词”时, 其后的动词形式依照 of 后名词的单复数形式来定。

Three-fourths of the surface of the earth *is* sea.

Three-fourths of the people *do not* agree with the president.

One-fourth of the region *is* underdeveloped.

Thirty percent of the oil in that country *is* imported.

Ten percent of the eggs *have* gone bad.

Fifty percent of the land in that region *has* been used to build factories.

- 4) 当主语为 sheep, fish, deer, aircraft, means, steelworks 等单数与复数同形的词时, 动词的形式以名词单、复数意义为准。

An American aircraft *was* brought down by the anti-aircraft fire.

Three aircraft *are* reported missing.

Various means *have* been tried to solve the problem.

Two steelworks *were* built ten years ago.

Ten fish *have* been caught today.

One sheep *was* killed by a wolf.

2. all 的主谓一致

- 1) 代词 all 表示可数的人或物时, 其后的动词用复数形式。

All *were* hungry and desperate (渴望) for food.

All who *have* seen the film love it.

All of them *enjoyed* themselves at the party.

2) 代词 *all* 表示不可数名词时, 其后的动词用单数。

All *is* going well. (一切顺利。)

All *is* quiet in the middle of the night.

All you have to do now *is* wait.

All that glitters *is* not gold. (闪光的不都是金子。)

All of his money *is* gone.

3) 形容词 *all* + 可数名词时, 其后的动词用复数形式。

All roads *lead* to Rome. (条条道路通罗马。)

All the people taking part in the race *were* over 60 years old.

All things *are* difficult when we begin to do them.

4) 形容词 *all* + 不可数名词时, 其后的动词用单数形式。

All work and no play *makes* Jack a dull boy.

Not all food *is* good to eat.

3. 带 *none* 的词组作主语时, 其后面的动词单数或复数形式都可用。

None of you *have / has* had my experience.

None of the hotels *are / is* ready for guests yet.

None of us *were / was* certain what he was going to do.

None of the lifts *are / is* working.

Exercises

1. Choose the correct verb form from the brackets.

- 1) A total of 700 cars (was, were) sold this week.

- 2) Three more chairs (is, are) missing from the classroom.
- 3) Three glasses of beer (is, are) not enough to get him drunk.
- 4) Only 15 percent of the investment (has come, have come) from abroad.
- 5) All (is, are) eager to have a try.
- 6) The last ten years (has been, have been) very eventful.
- 7) Ten miles (is, are) a long distance to walk.
- 8) One-fourth of the students here (is, are) girls.
- 9) All (is, are) well that ends well.
- 10) Every means (has, have) been tried to get him out of trouble.

2. Translate the following sentences into English.

- 1) 学生们没有一个人愿意本周末去郊游。(none)
- 2) 所有到场观看足球赛的人都非常激动。(all)
- 3) 有 1/4 的房屋没被利用起来。
- 4) 他们 25% 的工资被用来购买食物和衣服。
- 5) 五公斤的热带(tropical)水果如香蕉、菠萝(pineapple)等在我们这里值很多钱。
- 6) 过去的 10 周是我迄今为止最幸福的 10 周。
- 7) 他所说的一切都无法让人相信。
- 8) 只有 20% 的申请人得到了面试(interview)的机会。
- 9) 完成这项工作需要两个月的时间。(被动语态)
- 10) 100 公斤的米我背不动。

3. Complete the following sentences with the correct choice (for revision of articles).

- 1) _____ students in our class mostly come from _____ south.
A. The, / B. The, the

- C. /, the D. /, /
- 2) We'll meet each other at _____ north entrance of the park on _____ National Day.
- A. the, the B. /, the
C. the, / D. /, /
- 3) _____ China is _____ old country with _____ long history.
- A. /, an, a B. The, an, a
C. /, the, a D. /, the, /
- 4) My aunt was a dancer and she went on _____ stage at _____ age of eight.
- A. the, an B. /, the
C. the, the D. a, /
- 5) The post office is not far from my home. In fact it's within _____ stone's throw.
- A. a B. the
C. one D. /
- 6) What _____ honest man he is!
- A. a B. /
C. the D. an
- 7) _____ number of people using the internet is on _____ increase.
- A. the, the B. the, /
C. a, / D. a, the
- 8) I like to go to _____ theatre when I am in _____ mood for it.
- A. /, a B. the, a
C. the, / D. the, the
- 9) During _____ last night's storm, five people were reported dead when _____ bus ran into _____ deserted farm house.
- A. /, the, the B. /, a, a

- C. the, a, a D. /, a, the
- 10) At the meeting, _____ problems of _____ unemployed were discussed in detail.
- A. /, an B. the, the
- C. /, / D. the, /

Quotations for the Lesson

How vain, without the merit, is the name.

Homer, *Iliad*, 9th century B.C.

A sign of a celebrity is often that his name is worth more than his services.

Daniel J. Boorstin, 1962

A celebrity is a person who works hard all his life to become known, then wears dark glasses to avoid being recognized.

Fred Allen, 1954

A character: Pity the country that has no heroes.

Galileo: Pity the country that needs heroes.

Bertolt Brecht, *Galileo*

Lesson Three

Text

Go-Go Americans

Alison R. Lanier

如果矜持是英国人突出的特性,我们则可以用“风风火火”来概括美国人典型的特点。他们好像整天在忙忙碌碌,匆匆去上班,匆匆用午饭,匆匆返回工作;他们没有耐心,脾气急,爱发火,不耐烦排队;他们谈公事开门见山,没有客套话,直截了当切入话题;他们喜爱快餐,大量使用节省劳力的家用电器,钟情电子通讯设施;他们办事不拘形式,讲速度,重效率等等。这一切皆源于他们对生命之短促的紧迫感,视时间为生命的价值观。

1 Americans believe no one stands still. If you are not moving ahead, you are falling behind. This attitude results in a nation of people committed to researching, experimenting and exploring. Time is one of the two elements that Americans save carefully, the other being labor.

2 “We are slaves to nothing but the clock,” it has been said. Time is treated as if it were something almost tangible. We *budget* it, *save* it, *waste* it, *steal* it, *kill* it, *cut* it, *account* for it; we also *charge* for it. It is a precious commodity. Many people have a rather acute sense of the shortness of each lifetime. Once the sands have run out of a person's hourglass, they cannot be replaced. We want every

minute to count.

3 A foreigner's first impression of the U.S. is likely to be that everyone is in a rush — often under pressure. City people appear always to be hurrying to get where they are going, restlessly seeking attention in a store, elbowing others as they try to complete their errands. Racing through daytime meals is part of the pace of life in this country. Working time is considered precious. Others in public eating places are waiting for you to finish so they too can be served and get back to work within the time allowed. Each person hurries to make room for the next person. If you don't, waiters will hurry you.

4 You also find drivers will be abrupt and that people will push past you. You will miss smiles, brief conversations, small courtesies with strangers. Don't take it personally. This is because people value time highly, and they resent someone else "wasting" it beyond a certain courtesy point.

5 This view of time affects the importance we attach to patience. In the American system of values, patience is not a high priority. Many of us have what might be called "a short fuse." We begin to move restlessly about if we feel time is slipping away without some return — be this in terms of pleasure, work value, or rest. Those coming from lands where time is looked upon differently may find this matter of pace to be one of their most difficult adjustments in both business and daily life.

6 Many newcomers to the States will miss the opening courtesies of a business call, for example. They will miss the ritual socializing that goes with a welcoming cup of tea or coffee that may be traditional in their own country. They may miss leisurely business chats in a cafe or coffee house. Normally, Americans do not assess their visitors in such relaxed surroundings over prolonged small talk; much less do they take them out for dinner, or around on the golf course while

they develop a sense of trust and rapport. Rapport to most of us is less important than performance. We seek out evidence of past performance rather than evaluate a business colleague through social courtesies. Since we generally assess and probe professionally rather than socially, we start talking business very quickly.

7 Most Americans live according to time segments laid out in engagement calendars. These calendars may be divided into intervals as short as fifteen minutes. We often give a person two or three (or more) segments of our calendar, but in the business world we almost always have other appointments following hard on the heels of whatever we are doing. Time is therefore always ticking in our inner ear.

8 As a result we work hard at the task of saving time. We produce a steady flow of labor-saving devices; we communicate rapidly through telexes, phone calls or memos rather than through personal contacts, which though pleasant, take longer — especially given our traffic-filled streets. We therefore save most personal visiting for after work hours or for social weekend gatherings.

9 To us the impersonality of electronic communication has little or no relation to the importance of the matter at hand. In some countries no major business is carried on without eye contact, requiring face-to-face conversation. In America, too, a *final* agreement will normally be signed in person. However, people are meeting increasingly on television screens, conducting “teleconferences” to settle problems not only in this country but also — by satellite — internationally. An increasingly high percentage of normal business is being done these days by voice or electronic device. Mail is slow and uncertain and is growing ever more expensive.

10 The U. S. is definitely a telephone country. Almost everyone uses the telephone to conduct business, to chat with friends, to make or break social engagements, to say their “Thank you’s,” to shop and

to obtain all kinds of information. Telephones save your feet and endless amounts of time. This is due partly to the fact that the telephone service is good here, whereas the postal service is less efficient. Furthermore, the costs of secretarial labor, printing, and stamps are all soaring. The telephone is quick. We like it. We can do our business and get an answer in a matter of moments. Furthermore, several people can confer together without moving from their desks, even in widely scattered locations. In a big country that, too, is important.

11 Some new arrivals will come from cultures where it is considered impolite to work too quickly. Unless a certain amount of time is allowed to elapse, it seems in their eyes as if the task being considered were insignificant, not worthy of proper respect. Assignments are thus felt to be given added weight by the passage of time. In the U.S., however, it is taken as a sign of competence to solve a problem, or fulfill a job successfully, with rapidity. Usually, the more important a task is, the more capital, energy, and attention will be poured into it in order to “get it moving.”

Word List

explore /ɪk'splɔ:(r)/ <i>vt.</i>	探索; 探险
element /'elɪmənt/ <i>n.</i>	要素; 因素
tangible /'tændʒəbl/ <i>adj.</i>	有实体的; 可触摸到的
budget /'bʌdʒɪt/ <i>v.</i>	安排, 计划(时间等)
account /ə'kaʊnt/ <i>vi.</i>	解释, 说明(常与 for 连用)
commodity /kə'mɒdɪtɪ/ <i>n.</i>	商品
acute /ə'kjʊt/ <i>adj.</i>	敏感的
hourglass /'aʊəglɑ:s/ <i>n.</i>	滴漏; 更漏(一种旧式计时器)
replace /rɪ'pleɪs/ <i>vt.</i>	重置; 更换

count /kaunt/ <i>vi.</i>	有价值;有用
restlessly /'restləslɪ/ <i>adv.</i>	焦躁不安地
elbow /'elbəʊ/ <i>vt.</i>	以肘推;挤
errand /'erənd/ <i>n.</i>	(短程的)差事;任务
race /reis/ <i>vi.</i>	赶紧,加速
abrupt /ə'brʌpt/ <i>adj.</i>	突然的
resent /rɪ'zent/ <i>vt.</i>	怨恨,憎恶
priority /praɪ'ɒrəti/ <i>n.</i>	优先;优先考虑的事
fuse /fju:z/ <i>n.</i>	导火线;保险丝
slip /slɪp/ <i>vi.</i>	悄悄地溜走
terms /'tɜ:mz/ <i>n.</i>	(复)措辞
adjustment /ə'dʒʌstmənt/ <i>n.</i>	调整
ritual /'rɪtʃuəl, 'rɪtʃ-/ <i>adj.</i>	礼节性的
socialize /'səʊʃəlaɪz/ <i>vi.</i>	参加社交活动
socializing /'səʊʃəlaɪzɪŋ/ <i>n.</i>	交往,交际
leisurely /'leɪʒəli/ <i>adj.</i>	悠闲的
normally /'nɔ:məli/ <i>adv.</i>	通常
assess /ə'ses/ <i>vt.</i>	评估
rapport /ræ'pɔ:/ <i>n.</i>	亲善;和谐
performance /pə'fɔ:məns/ <i>n.</i>	业绩;表现
colleague /'kɒli:ɡ/ <i>n.</i>	同事
probe /prəʊb/ <i>vi.</i>	探求
professionally /prə'feʃənəli/ <i>adv.</i>	职业上;专业上
socially /'səʊʃəli/ <i>adv.</i>	社交上
segment /'segmənt/ <i>n.</i>	部分
engagement /ɪn'ɡeɪdʒmənt/ <i>n.</i>	约会
calendar /'kælɪndə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	日程表;日历
interval /'ɪntəvl/ <i>n.</i>	间隔;停顿
heel /hi:l/ <i>n.</i>	(足)跟;末尾

tick /tɪk/ <i>vi.</i>	滴答作响
inner /'ɪnə(r)/ <i>adj.</i>	内部的, 里面的
device /dɪ'vaɪs/ <i>n.</i>	装置
telex /'teleks/ <i>n.</i>	电传
memo /'meməu/ <i>n.</i>	(口)备忘录 (= memorandum)
gathering /'gæðərɪŋ/ <i>n.</i>	聚会
impersonality /ɪm,pə'sə'nælətɪ/ <i>n.</i>	没有人与人的接触
electronic /ɪ,lek'trɒnɪk/ <i>adj.</i>	电子的
communication /kə'mju:nɪ'keɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	通讯
conduct /kən'dʌkt/ <i>vt.</i>	实施; 进行
teleconference /'telɪkɒnfərəns/ <i>n.</i>	(通过电话、电视等的)电讯会议
satellite /'sætələɪt/ <i>n.</i>	卫星
internationally /ɪntə'næʃənəli/ <i>adv.</i>	在国际上
uncertain /ʌn'sɜ:tn/ <i>adj.</i>	不确定的
postal /'pəʊstl/ <i>adj.</i>	邮政的
efficient /ɪ'fɪʃənt/ <i>adj.</i>	高效率的
secretarial /ɪ'sekrɪ'teəriəl/ <i>adj.</i>	秘书的; 有关秘书事务的
soaring /'sɔ:ɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	猛增的, 剧增的
confer /kən'fɜ:(r)/ <i>vi.</i>	商量; 商议
location /lə(u)'keɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	地方; 场所
elapse /ɪ'læps/ <i>vi.</i>	(时间)溜走; (光阴)逝去
insignificant /ɪn'sɪg'nɪfɪkənt/ <i>adj.</i>	无关紧要的; 无意义的
worthy /'wɜ:ðɪ/ <i>adj.</i>	有价值的
passage /'pæsɪdʒ/ <i>n.</i>	(时间等的)消逝, 推移
competence /'kɒmpɪtəns/ <i>n.</i>	能力
fulfill /fʊl'fɪl/ <i>vt.</i>	完成
rapidity /rə'pɪdɪtɪ/ <i>n.</i>	快速

capital / 'kæpɪtl / n .

资金;资本

Proper Names

Alison R. Lanier / 'ælɪsən ɑ:
lə'nɪə(r) /

艾莉森·R·拉尼尔

Useful Expressions

move ahead

进行,进展

fall behind

落后

account to... for

向……交代

make room for

腾出地方

take sth. seriously/personally

认真对待/认为是针对自己的

attach importance to

重视

in terms of

就……而言

seek out

找到

carry on

经营

worthy of

值得

Word Study

save *vt. & vi.*

1. (从危险中等) 救出,拯救

V + N; V + N + from + N / doing

Every effort was made to *save the miners* trapped in the pit.

They *saved most of the equipment from* the fire.

The timely operation *saved him from* becoming a cripple.

2. 节省(劳力、时间、费用等)

V + N

As a result we work hard at the task of *saving time*.

Time is one of the two elements that Americans *save* carefully.

Americans use a lot of devices at home *to save labour*.

3. 保留; 节省; 攒钱

V + N (+ for + N); V + N + N; V

Shall we *save some fish for* dinner?

We *save most personal visiting for* after work hours.

Save me a piece of that cake, okay?

We should all *save for* a rainy day. (我们都应为日后急用而攒钱。)

4. 使避免, 使免去

V + N; V + N + N

Telephones *save your feet*. (电话可以使你少走走路。)

This arrangement *will save me the trouble of* cooking.

5. (计算机) 保存, 存盘

V; V + N

Don't forget to *save* before you close the file. (退出文件时, 别忘了存盘。)

For the sake of safety, you'd better *save your work* from time to time (on the computer).

6. Phrases:

save (one's) face 保住面子, 有脸面

save one's neck (口语) 保住脑袋

allow *vt.*

1. 允许, 听任; 许可(……进入)

1) V (+ N) + N

Smoking is not allowed in public places.

The doctor *allowed his patient a cup of wine* on his birthday.

The government refuses to *allow foreign journalists* into that area.

2) V + N + to do sth.

We won't *allow our differences to affect* the relations between our two countries.

Passengers are not allowed to use their mobile phone after the plane takes off.

2. 答应给予(时间、金钱等)

V (+ N) + N

The teacher *allowed his students 20 minutes* to do all the exercises.

They want to get back to work within *the time allowed* for the lunch break.

His parents *allow him ¥100* a month for books.

3. Phrase:

allow for 考虑到

try *vt. & vi.*

1. 努力, 企图, 设法

V; V + to do sth.

If at first you don't succeed, *try, try, try* again. (谚语)

When you work out your schedule, *try to include* at least two study hours each day.

2. 尝试, 试用, 试验

V + N; V + doing sth.

I'm not sure whether this will shake off your cold. If it

doesn't work, You'll have to try a different one.

Try taking a deep breath when you feel very nervous.

3. Phrases:

try one's best 尽某人最大的努力

try sth. on 试穿(衣物)

try *n.* 努力, 尝试

Cheer up. Have an another try.

Notes on the Text

1. **About the text and the author:** 课文选自 *Living in the U. S. A.* (1988 年, 第四版) 第五章 "Business and Practices", 标题为编者所加。作者艾莉森·R·拉尼尔 (Alison R. Lanier) 的公司 Overseas Briefing Associates 为到美国工作或作生意的人以及到国外工作或投资的美国人提供咨询服务。他的 *Living in the U. S. A.* 于 1973 年第一次出版后, 先后在美国之外的九个国家出版, 译成七种语言。
2. **Go-Go Americans:** 《风风火火的美国人》主要阐明美国人的时间概念。他们珍惜时间, 办事不重形式, 讲求实效; 他们整天都好像是匆匆忙忙; 他们谈公事, 少有啰嗦的开场白, 而很快切入话题; 他们喜爱高效率的通讯工具等等。作者从字里行间把美国人的“风风火火”刻画得入木三分。当然作者也不时为同胞的缺点如不耐烦等进行辩解。
3. **This attitude results in a nation of people committed to re-searching, experimenting and exploring:** 这种不进则退的观念使得整个民族都觉得有责任去进行研究、实验和探索。
committed to... exploring: 过去分词短语, 作定语, 修饰 a nation of people。
be committed to: 决心或承诺, 又如:

From then on, I *was committed to* shedding the weight and getting into shape.

从那以后,我决心减肥,恢复正常体形。

4. **Time is one of the two elements that Americans save carefully, the other being labor:** 时间是美国人努力节省的两样东西之一,另一样是劳力。美国人节省劳力从他们大量使用他们称之为“labor-saving devices”的家用机械设施可略见一斑。如厨房里的洗碗机、电动打蛋机、电动开罐机等等。

the other being labor: 独立结构。

5. **“We are slaves to nothing but the clock,” it has been said:** “我们只受时钟的支配,”这是人们的口头禅。

it 代表引号里的话。

be slave to / of: 受……的支配或影响,又如:

An ancient Greek philosopher once said that the rich man *was slave to* his money.

一位古代希腊哲学家曾经说过富人是他的钱财的奴隶。

Quite a number of girls *are slaves of* fashion.

不少的女孩子完全受流行时尚的左右。

6. **Time is treated as if it were something almost tangible:** 对待时间简直就像它是看得见、摸得着的东西一样。

7. **We budget it, save it, waste it, steal it, kill it, cut it, account for it; we also charge for it:** 我们计划时间、节省时间、浪费时间、挤出时间、消磨时间、减少时间、解释时间;占用了我们的时间,我们还要收费。

此句集中了“时间”一词与动词的八个重要搭配方式,用来说明人们对时间的态度。

account for sth.: 对……作出解释,又如:

The boy *could not account for* the time he spent away from school.

那男孩解释不了不上学的时候都干了些什么。

The public official charged with bribery was unable *to account for* the \$ 200,000 found in his house.

被指控收贿的那个官员无法解释在他家里发现的那 20 万美元。

charge (sb. money) for sth. : 向(某人)收取……的费用,又如:

They *charge \$ 10 for* a haircut there.

在那里,理一次发他们要收 10 美元。

The hotel *doesn't charge for* breakfast.

那个饭店早饭免费。

I *don't charge for* it.

这东西我不收费。

charge sb. money (for sth.) : (因……)向某人收取费用。如:

The watch-repairer *charged Lao Li 200 yuan for* his service.

那位修表师向老李收取了 200 元的修理费。

8. Many people have a rather acute sense of the shortness of each lifetime: 许多人深感人的一生之短促。

9. Once the sands have run out of a person's hourglass, they cannot be replaced: 一旦岁月的沙粒从人的沙漏里流光,那是无法弥补的。

sands: (古代计时用的)沙漏中的沙;(寓)时间,光阴;寿命。

sands 表示时光时常用于下列短语和句子:

the sands of time

the sands of (one's) life

The sands are running out. (= There is not much time left.)

10. We want every minute to count: 我们想让每一分钟都发挥作用。

count: be of value or importance 有价值,有重要意义,又如:

We don't have much water left, so make every drop *count*.

我们没有多少水了,每一滴都要用在刀刃上。

Strength, skill and willpower *count* equally in sports.

在运动场上,力量、技术和意志同等重要。

11. **A foreigner's first impression of the U. S. is likely to be that everyone is in a rush — often under pressure:** 外国人对美国的最初的印象往往是:人人都是匆匆忙忙,也就是说他们经常有压力。

在第一段与第二段中,作者归纳了美国人的基本时间观。第三段与第四段说明基于这种观念,美国人生活的基本特点:匆忙(rush 和 hurry)。为了突出这一核心内容,作者使用了大量的表示行为的动词词组,如:

hurrying to get where they are going 匆匆忙忙赶往要去的地方

restlessly seeking attention in a store 在商店不耐烦地找人为他服务

elbowing others as they try to complete their errands 设法完成自己的差使时用胳膊肘推挤别人

racing through daytime meals 急忙吃完早、午饭

to make room for the next person 给下一位腾出地方

这里作者绘制了一幅文字图画,把美国人匆忙办事的状况生动而形象地表现了出来。

12. **If you don't, waiters will hurry you:** 你要是不赶快,服务员就要催你。
13. **You will miss smiles, brief conversations, small courtesies with strangers:** 在这里,你看不到对陌生人的微笑、和他们简短的谈话以及起码的客套。
14. **Don't take it personally:** 这种表现不是针对个人的。
15. **This is because people value time highly, and they resent someone else "wasting" it beyond a certain courtesy point:** 这是因为人们极为珍视时间,别人“浪费”他们的时间超过了一定礼貌容许的限度,他们就会感到愤恨。

这里 wasting 用引号表示不是一般人理解的“浪费时间”,美国

人认为,办事拖拉使他们等的时间稍长、和不熟悉的人东拉西扯地聊天等都是“浪费了他们的时间”。

16. This view of time affects the importance we attach to patience.

In the American system of values, patience is not a high priority: 这种时间观影响了我们对耐心的重视。按美国的价值观标准,耐心并没有排在很高的地位。

attach importance / significance / value, etc. to: 认为……重要,又如:

We *attach great importance to* the good relations between our two countries.

我们认为我们两国保持良好的关系很重要。

People seem *to attach too much importance to* his opinion.

人们似乎太看重他的观点了。

17. Many of us have what might be called “a short fuse”: 我们当中很多人都很容易“发火”。(直译:我们当中很多人都有可以称之为“爱发火”的毛病。原意:我们每个人的导火线都很短。)

what might be called “a short fuse”: 名词从句,作 have 的宾语;
what 在从句中作主语。

have a short fuse: get angry easily 很容易生气、发脾气。

18. We begin to move restlessly about if we feel time is slipping away without some return — be this in terms of pleasure, work value, or rest: 只要我们感到消耗了时间而没有回报,我们就开始烦躁不安地走来走去——无论是在娱乐、在工作、还是在休息,我们都是如此。

slip away: leave quickly 很快离开;(时间)流逝,又如:

She *slipped away* ten minutes after the film began.

电影开演 10 分钟以后她就溜走了。

We must get down to work as soon as possible; time's *slipping away*.

我们必须尽快开始干起来,时间过得很快。

without some return: 没有什么收获(回报)。

in terms of: 在……方面,就……而论。

be this in terms of pleasure, work value, or rest = whether this is in terms of... , or rest 这是一个由 whether...or 引出的条件状语从句,又如:

Passing that exam is a difficult business, *whether* one is an undergraduate *or* a graduate student.

无论是本科生还是研究生,要通过那项考试都很困难。

如果这类从句中的动词是 be, whether 可以省略, be 置于主语之前。如:

Every public official should put the good of the state above everything else, *be he* a minister *or* a junior clerk.

每个国家干部,不管是部长还是基层职员,都应把国家利益放到高于一切的位置。

19. **Those coming from lands where time is looked upon differently may find this matter of pace to be one of their most difficult adjustments in both business and daily life:** 来自时间观大相径庭的国家的人,可能会发现无论在公务方面还是日常生活中,(在美国)节奏是最难以适应的方面之一。

找出这个句子的主、谓、宾。

主: those...differently; 谓: may find; 宾: this matter of pace; 宾补: to be...daily life.

20. **miss the opening courtesies of a business call:** 不会看到公务拜访开始时的那些客套。

21. **They will miss the ritual socializing that goes with a welcoming cup of tea or coffee that may be traditional in their own country:** 他们不会看到在他们自己国家的那种传统性的社交礼节性表示——如端上一杯茶或是一杯咖啡以示欢迎。

此句的宾语 the ritual socializing 带有两个定语从句,即两个 that 从句。

go with sth. : be included with or as a part of sth. 包括, ……是其一部分, 又如:

The car *goes with* the job.

这份工作还提供一辆轿车。

22. **Normally, Americans do not assess their visitors in such relaxed surroundings over prolonged small talk:** 一般情况下, 美国人不会在这种轻松的环境, 通过长时间的闲聊来评价他们的(生意上的)来访者。(即他们不会通过这种方式判断来访者是否是可靠的合作伙伴、客户等。他们要进行调查。)

in such relaxed surroundings: 指上文所说的 in a cafe or coffee house.

over: 在做……的时候, 又如:

Let's discuss the matter *over* dinner.

咱们一边吃饭一边讨论这件事吧。

They exchanged information *over* a cup of tea.

他们一边喝茶一边交换了各自所了解的情况。

small talk: 闲谈, 聊天。

23. **much less do they take them out for dinner, or around on the golf course while they develop a sense of trust and rapport:** 他们更不会把来人带到外面吃饭, 或是带他们去高尔夫球场转转, 以此建立信任和融洽关系。

much less: (正式)更不用说。用于否定句, 起连词的作用, 又如:

They wouldn't even take any souvenir, *much less* money.

他们连纪念品都不肯收, 更不用说钱了。

She was so tired that she did not want to speak, *much less* sing.

她累得连话都不想说, 更不用说唱歌了。

much less 用于句首时引起倒装, 又如:

He would not do anything that might disgrace his country;

much less would he turn traitor.

他决不做会给祖国脸上摸黑的事,更不会背叛自己的祖国。

24. **We seek out evidence of past performance rather than evaluate a business colleague through social courtesies:** 我们调查生意伙伴过去的业绩而不是通过社交活动来评估他们。

seek out: 努力寻找,找出。

rather than: 而不,与其……不如……。意思与 instead of 或 in place of 相似,但起连接词的作用,连接平行的结构,又如:

She is shy rather than proud.

她是害羞而不是自负。

We attach more importance to what he is rather than what his parents are.

我们认为他是什么人比他的父母是什么人更重要。

25. **Since we generally assess and probe professionally rather than socially, we start talking business very quickly:** 由于我们总的来说是从专业的角度而不是从社交的角度来评价(我们的合作伙伴),来探索(生意的可能性),我们很快就谈正事。
这里 business 的意思是“公事”、“正事”。

26. **Most Americans live according to time segments laid out in engagement calendars:** 多数美国人是按照活动日程表所制定的时间段来生活的。(即:他们在一个日记本上事先就规定好哪一段时间做什么事。)

lay out: 设计,规划(建筑物等)。

engagement calendars: “约会”本,预约记事本,指作为日历兼记事本的本子,一页一天,上面分上午、下午,几点到几点,空处填上计划要做的事。

27. **but in the business world we almost always have other appointments following hard on the heels of whatever we are doing:** 可是在商界里,不管我们正在干什么,差不多总是紧接着有其他已经安排好的活动在等着我们。

注意 world 的多种意思,这里的意思是“范围”、“圈子”,又如:

the show-business world 演艺圈

the world of politics 政界

(hard) on the heels of: happening very soon after 紧接着,接踵而来,又如:

Famine came *hard on the heels of* the flood.

水灾刚过,饥荒接踵而来。

这里这个短语和现在分词 following 一起组成现在分词短语作定语,修饰 other appointments。

28. **Time is therefore always ticking in our inner ear:** 因此时间就像时钟一样无时无刻不在我们的内耳滴答滴答地响着。(即:提醒我们抓紧时间去做该干的事。)

29. **As a result we work hard at the task of saving time:** 因而我们努力节省时间。

本段扼要指出美国人节省时间的具体措施:不断生产出节省劳力的家用机械设施,大量使用先进的通讯工具等。

work (hard) at: 在……上(狠)下工夫。

30. **especially given our traffic-filled streets:** 特别是考虑到我们车辆拥挤的街道。

given *prep.*: 考虑到……,又如:

Given his age, he's done well.

考虑到他的年龄,他干得不错。

given that 可以看成是连接词,引出条件从句。如:

Given that there was so little money available for the project, they've done a good job.

考虑到对这个项目的投资微薄,这个项目搞得不错。

31. **We therefore save most personal visiting for after work hours or for social weekend gatherings:** 因此我们把具体的拜访活动,都安排在工作之外的时间,或是周末的社交聚会。

在课文中 save 一词出现六次,有三种不同的意思:1)节省:

labor-saving devices; 2)保留(本句 save 的意思);3)使避免(见第 36 条注释)。

after work 是复合形容词,一般的形式为 after-work,又如:

after-dinner speech 饭后讲话

after-sales service 售后服务

32. **To us the impersonality of electronic communication has little or no relation to the importance of the matter at hand:** 我们觉得,电子通讯无需人与人直接接触,所处理的事并不因此而不重要。(即:不能说因为使用这种通讯手段,所处理的事就不重要。)

33. **In some countries no major business is carried on without eye contact, requiring face-to-face conversation:** 在有些国家,一切公事都要面对面地进行,需要当面的交谈。

no...without: 英语常用两个否定的词表示强调的、肯定的意思。

eye contact: (与另一个人的)目光接触。目光接触属形体语言(body language),在交流思想方面起重要作用。在美国,与人交谈时与对方要有适当的目光接触,要看着对方,东张西望被视为不礼貌,不正视对方被认为缺乏信心,或是做了亏心事。

face-to-face: 面对面。类似的短语还有:

eyeball-to-eyeball 面对面的;剑拔弩张的

friend-to-friend 朋友间的

man-to-man 坦诚的

34. **An increasingly high percentage of normal business is being done these days by voice or electronic device:** 今天通过声音或是电子设施来处理日常公务的比例越来越高。

is being done: 现在进行时的被动形式。有 increasing 的句子里,一般用进行时,表示行为在当前一段时间里正在发生,又如:

In China, an *increasing* number of children *are learning* to play the piano.

在中国,越来越多的少年儿童在学弹钢琴。

35. to say their "Thank you's": 来表示感谢。

thank you's 作名词。

在美国,收到礼物之后,或是应邀出席了某项活动之后,都要给送礼的人或主人写一封简短的感谢信。现在也时兴打电话表示谢意。

36. Telephones save your feet and endless amounts of time: 使用电话你不必跑腿,还省了你大量时间。

save your feet: (When you use the telephone) you avoid a lot of walking 你避免了走路。

注意在这个句子中 save 有两个不同的意思 save feet(使避免)与 save time(节省)。用同一个动词接两个宾语,而在两个搭配中动词有不同的意思,是英语的一种修辞手段。

37. in a matter of moments: 一会儿的工夫。

a matter of + 名词,表示量少,又如:

The taxi arrived in *a matter of* minutes.

出租车几分钟内就到了。

They think the war will be over in *a matter of* months.

他们认为战争几个月内就会结束。

Give him what he asks for. It's just *a matter of* a few dollars.

他要多少就给他多少吧,只不过是几块钱的事。

38. Furthermore, the costs of secretarial labor, printing, and stamps are all soaring: 再说,雇秘书、印材料、买邮票的费用都在猛涨。

39. Furthermore, several people can confer together without moving from their desks, even in widely scattered locations: 还有,几个人不必离开他们的办公桌,即便相隔很远,也可以交换意见。

40. Unless a certain amount of time is allowed to elapse, it seems in their eyes as if the task being considered were insignificant, not worthy of proper respect: 要是不泡上一定的时间,他们就觉得

好像当前考虑的事情不够重要,不足以引起重视。

it seems as if / as though: 看起来好像,又如:

It seems as if she doesn't like the watch I gave her.

看起来她好像不喜欢我给她的那块表。

being considered: 正在被考虑的。这是现在分词的被动形式。

worthy of: 值得,又如:

He is a man worthy of trust.

他是一个值得信赖的人。

- 41. Assignments are thus felt to be given added weight by the passage of time:** 因此,事情花的时间越多,人们就越感到它重要。

be felt to do / to be: (人们)觉得……(往往不正确),又如:

Garbage collecting is generally felt to be less honourable than many other jobs.

清理垃圾一般被认为不如许多别的工作体面。

give sth. added weight: 使……更重要。

- 42. In the U.S., however, it is taken as a sign of competence to solve a problem, or fulfill a job successfully, with rapidity:** 然而,在美国很快解决问题或很快地胜利完成任务,是一个人有能力的表现。

此句的主语是动词不定式短语 to solve a problem, or (to) fulfill a job, with rapidity; it 是形式主语。

take sth. as a sign of: 把……看成是……的标志,又如:

Don't take our patience as a sign of weakness.

不要把我们的忍耐看成是软弱的表现。

- 43. Usually, the more important a task is, the more capital, energy, and attention will be poured into it in order to "get it moving":** 一般说来,项目越重要,为了让工程“启动起来”,投入的资金、精力以及对它的关注也就越多。

get sth. doing: (有意识地)使得……,又如:

Wait until I get the machine running.

等一下,让我把机器发动起来。

Work on the Text

1. Answer these questions.

- 1) What attitude do Americans generally adopt towards life?
- 2) Americans are often regarded as a squandering nation. But they do carefully save two things. What are they?
- 3) How time is regarded and treated in the United States?
- 4) What is the most striking characteristic of American life to a foreigner? Give examples to show this characteristic.
- 5) How does the author account for Americans' impatience? Do you agree?
- 6) What do foreigners expect when they go to the States on business?
- 7) What is the American way of doing business?
- 8) Why do Americans attach more importance to performance than to social courtesies when evaluating a business colleague?
- 9) How is normal business carried on in the U.S.?
- 10) Why are telephones popular and widely used? What are the advantages of communicating over the phone?
- 11) Can we measure the importance of a matter in terms of the time it takes to handle it? Why / why not?
- 12) Do you think the idea that time is money is being accepted in China? Give evidence.

2. Look up the following words in an English-English dictionary before looking at the Word List. (You have to decide the part of speech of each first.)

count (Para. 2) abrupt (Para. 4) restlessly (Para. 5) probe (Para. 6) eye contact (Para. 9) passage (Para. 11)

3. Paraphrase.

- 1) We are slaves to nothing but the clock. (Para. 2)
- 2) We want every minute to count. (Para. 2)
- 3) Many of us have what might be called "a short fuse." (Para. 5)
- 4) We seek out evidence of past performance rather than evaluate a business colleague through social courtesies. (Para. 6)
- 5) ... especially given our traffic-filled streets. (Para. 8)

4. Discuss or speak on the following topics.

- 1) What is the American attitude towards time? Give examples to support your conclusion.

You may cover these points:

- (1) Why do most Americans value time?
 - (2) Why do Americans always seem to be in a rush?
 - (3) Why are telecommunication and fast food popular in the United States?
 - (4) In what way is the American way of doing business related to this attitude towards time?
- 2) Do you share the American view of time? Why/why not?

5. Translate the following passage into English.

“时间就是金钱,”美国人说,“这辈子你就这么多时间,最好还是好好利用。”在美国,人们佩服办事效率高、井井有条的

(well-organized)人,即把要做的事一一列出,并制定计划一一实施的人。在这个国家里,一个理想中的人准时到会、准时赴约、不浪费他人的时间。

快餐连锁店(fast-food chains),如麦当劳、肯德基、必胜客等,在美国十分普遍,也十分受欢迎,因为许多人想在做饭、吃饭上尽量少花时间。

美国人还喜欢电子通讯手段。他们使用电话、电子邮件和英特网做生意,他们召开电话或电视会议处理问题,还通过英特网获取各种信息。总之,他们想要每分钟都用得值得。

Vocabulary Exercises

1. Complete the following sentences with words formed in the same way as in the examples.

Examples:

doorway 门口 thumbnail 大拇指甲 notebook 笔记本
gravestone 墓碑 fireplace 壁炉 sunglasses 太阳眼镜
(名词 + 名词 → 复合名词)

book coat end head line news paper rain test week

- 1) I cannot remember where I put my history _____.
- 2) This _____ we will go skating for a change.
- 3) He has been working in a(n) _____ office since he left school last year.
- 4) Don't forget to take your _____ in case it rains.
- 5) Every evening we turn on the TV to get the seven o'clock _____.

2. Translate the following.

1) Use the verb + noun or adj. + noun collocation.

落后于别人 珍惜时间 珍惜友谊 解决问题 完成任务
腾出地方 重视某事 获得信息 第一印象 生活节奏
飞涨的物价 做生意 商界

2) Use the "useful expressions".

- (1) 工程师们深入地讨论了方案,一旦开工,工程将进展很顺利。
- (2) 在过去几个月,出口额下降了。
- (3) 他必须把每天经手的文件向公司交代清楚。
- (4) 科学院的部分资深院士提出退休,以便为更年轻有为的科学家腾出位置。
- (5) 政府非常重视保护中国的原始森林(virgin forests)。
- (6) 就面积而言,俄罗斯是世界上最大的国家。
- (7) 这所大学正在努力寻找担任图书馆馆长的合适人选。
- (8) 在当今,不懂电脑便几乎什么事都办不成。
- (9) 你觉得汤姆对马克开的玩笑感到不高兴了吗?
- (10) 莎士比亚在文学上的成就值得给予高度的赞赏。

3) Use *save*, *allow* and *try*.

- (1) 我们一直在尝试一种新的教学方法,目前看来效果还令人满意。
- (2) 答应给那哥俩的钱不够去旅行,他俩只好放弃。
- (3) 为了保存对现有的一个文件的修改,你需要保存这个文件。
- (4) 这场及时雨(timely rain)省了农民浇地的麻烦。
- (5) 他们一直在寻找节省能源的新招。
- (6) 开始别跑得太快,为最后 100 米留着劲儿。
- (7) 参观者不得触碰任何展品。
- (8) 这对年轻夫妇在为他们的女儿的教育攒钱。

- (9) 她刻苦努力,第一学期末就赶上了班上的同学。
- (10) 在那个城市公共汽车上既不许抽烟,也不许喝饮料、吃东西。

3. Complete the sentences.

1) Put suitable prepositions or adverbs in the blanks.

- (1) He has been studying very hard because he doesn't want to fall _____ his friends.
- (2) The prolonged cold war finally resulted _____ a hot one _____ the two countries.
- (3) I'm sorry, I'm _____ a terrible rush. I'm only allowed an hour _____ some translation. Could you phone again this afternoon?
- (4) Nobody can account _____ his strange behaviour today.
- (5) Anyone who works _____ great pressure is likely to make mistakes.
- (6) Should we measure the success of a school _____ terms _____ the number of students who get _____ university?.
- (7) We attach more importance _____ quality than _____ speed. There is no need to do it rapidly.
- (8) The open-air concert had to be put off due _____ the pouring rain.
- (9) You shouldn't have left _____ saying good-bye. That was far _____ being courteous.
- (10) Nowadays, weddings are looked _____ as a once-in-a-lifetime experience and people are ready to pour all their savings _____ it.
- (11) Never pay for an expensive suit before you try it

- _____.
- (12) Be realistic when you make a study plan. Allow _____ unexpected things.

2) Choose the right word from the brackets.

- (1) This marriage is very _____ — they've only known each other a few weeks. (abrupt, sudden)
- (2) There is a _____ increase in the number of students going to college. (constant, steady)
- (3) Tomorrow it will be cloudy, with a few sunny _____. (intervals, periods)
- (4) I began to _____ and try to find out how such a big business had been put out of business. (explore, probe)
- (5) He _____ with his lawyer, and then decided to take over the chain store. (discussed, conferred)

4. Choose the best word for each blank.

The most important thing to understand about Americans is probably their (1) _____ (belief, contribution, devotion, trust) to "individualism." They have been trained (2) _____ (before, from, since, till) very early in their lives to consider themselves as separate individuals who are responsible (3) _____ (about, for, on, to) their own situation in life and their own destiny. They have not been trained to (4) _____ (look, see, think, treat) themselves as members of a close-knit, tightly interdependent family, religious group, nation, or other collectivity.

You can see it in the way Americans treat their children. Even very young children are given (5) _____ (chances, opportunities, occasions, possibilities) to make their own choices

and express their opinions. A parent will ask a one-year-old child what color balloon she wants, which candy bar she would prefer, or whether she wants to sit next to mommy or daddy. The child's preference will normally be (6) _____ (accepted, agreed, received, recognized).

Through this (7) _____ (course, development, practice, process), Americans come to regard themselves as (8) _____ (different, individual, separate, unique) human beings who have their own opinions and who make their own decisions.

Indeed, many American books on (9) _____ (how, what, where, why) to raise kids state that the parent's objective in raising a child is to (10) _____ (build, create, establish, make) a responsible, independent individual who, by the age of 18 or so, is ready to move out of the parents' house and make his or her own way in life. Americans (11) _____ (consider, follow, take, treat) this advice so seriously that a person beyond the age of about 20 who is still living at home with his or her parents may be thought to be "immature," "tied to the mother's apron (围裙) strings," or otherwise unable to lead a (12) _____ (common, general, normal, usual) independent life.

Grammar & Usage

Noun-Pronoun Agreement

Noun-Possessive Case Agreement

1. 名词与代词和名词所有格的一致

一般来说,代词和名词所有格对名词的指代在数的形式上是一致的。

Americans do not assess *their* visitors in such relaxed surroundings over prolonged small talk.

The two *sisters* have *their* own different toys.

The *men* are discussing *their* opinions at the meeting.

Mr. and Mrs. Smith are my good friends. *They* are coming to dinner tonight.

They were talking about *one of the girls*, but I didn't know *her* at that time.

当名词为 audience, class, committee, enemy, family, faculty, gang, government, jury, media, public, staff, team 等既可视作整体名词又可视为个体名词的集体名词时,则要根据它们在句中的意思来确定代词和所有格的形式。

The public demanded that *the government* account for *its* new economic policy.

The government had discussed this problem for a long time but *they* had shown no sign of agreement.

Every *family* has *its* own problems.

The Johnson family are always quarrelling among *themselves*.

Every class may organize outings on *its* own.

The class are reading very attentively. *Their* eyes are all fixed on *their* books.

Nowadays *the public* generally admires the successful. *Its* sympathy for failures is skin-deep.

When *the public* found *they* were deceived by the media, *their* anger was beyond description.

2. 不定代词的一致问题

one, everyone, everybody, no one, nobody, anyone, anybody, someone, somebody 等作主语时,在正式的文体中其相应的代词一般用 him, 所有格用 his, 也有人用 him or her 和 his or

her, 但是这种用法显得累赘。

If *anybody* asks for me, please tell *him* to come to my office.

Everybody must finish *his* homework by tomorrow.

Nobody in that position will give *his* opinion right away.

Nobody in *his* right mind would do anything like that.

注意:one 作主语时,其相应的代词也可以是 one, 所有格可以是 one's。

One has to be careful about what *one* says before children.

在非正式文体中,也可根据意义,用复数代词。而且,由于 him 和 his 有语言性别歧视之嫌,虽然谓语动词仍用单数形式,现在人们普遍用复数代词。

Almost *everyone* uses the telephone to say *their* "Thank you's."

Someone has left a note on my desk. Would *they* please come to my office after class?

Everybody left the cinema in the middle of the film. Was it because *they* were not interested in it?

No one has handed in *their* paper yet.

Everyone has given *their* opinion on the issue.

但 everything, anything, something, nothing 作主语时,其相应的代词要用单数形式。

Something has gone wrong, hasn't *it*?

Exercises

1. Complete the sentences with the correct choice, noting that in some cases both may be acceptable.

- 1) The team _____ (is, are) driving to the game in _____ (its, their) own cars.
- 2) The Internet public _____ (is, are) increasing rapidly.

- 3) The committee _____ (has, have) made up _____ (its, their) minds to defend _____ (its, their) rights.
- 4) The committee _____ (has, have) said that _____ (it, they) will reconsider _____ (its, their) decision.
- 5) Tom's family _____ (is, are) very eager to please his girlfriend and show _____ (its, their) hospitality.
- 6) Take cover. The enemy _____ (is, are) attacking. No one is sure when _____ (it, they) will stop.
- 7) The government _____ (has, have) decided to increase income taxes (所得税) to solve _____ (its, their) financial problems.
- 8) The ticket office is closed. The staff _____ (is, are) on strike. _____ (It, They) won't call it off until _____ (its, their) demands are met.
- 9) The audience at the concert yesterday evening _____ (was, were) much larger than expected. _____ (It's, They've been) the largest the concert hall has had since Christmas.
- 10) Half an hour after the police surrounded _____ (its, their) hiding place, the gang _____ (was, were) arrested.

2. Complete the sentences with the correct choice, noting that in some cases both may be acceptable.

- 1) Everything is ready, _____ (isn't it, aren't they)?
- 2) Everyone is expected to do _____ (his, their) share of the work.
- 3) He has never remembered to put anything back in _____ (its, their) place after class.
- 4) If anybody calls, tell _____ (him, them) to leave a mes-

sage.

- 5) No one is permitted to enter the building without showing _____ (his, their) ID to the guard.
- 6) Everybody is talking at the top of _____ (his, their) voice.
- 7) Anyone is welcome to the meeting if _____ (he is, they are) interested in the subject.
- 8) Everybody has _____ (his, their) own weak spot.
- 9) "Somebody wants to see you, Sir." "Please show _____ (him, them) in."
- 10) At this airport, every passenger is expected to move _____ (his, their) own luggage to the ticket counter.

3. Translate the following sentences into English.

- 1) 一切都没变,不是吗?
- 2) 每个人都想带他们的家属来参加这次聚会。
- 3) 这个班来自全国各地。
- 4) 每个人都来了,是吗?
- 5) 有人把身份证落在衣帽间(cloakroom)里了。
- 6) 昨天的晚会大家都没玩痛快。
- 7) 有谁知道答案,请把手举起来。
- 8) 观众们穿着各式各样的衣服,有穿西装的也有穿夹克的。
- 9) 在中国一般的城市(urban)家庭由三个成员组成——父亲、母亲和孩子。
- 10) 那个委员会没能就这个问题(issue)达成一致意见。

4. Put in the blanks the correct form of the verbs in the brackets (revision: tenses and voices).

In the early days of the modern beauty contest, judges (1) _____ (base) their decisions on the contestant's beauty of face

and figure. But today the winning of a beauty contest (2) _____ (depend) not only on a girl's physical beauty but also on her accomplishments. She (3) _____ (expect) to be able to sing, play a musical instrument, dance, recite poetry, make her own clothes, or show in some way that she (4) _____ (develop) a skill or talent. And the judges sometimes (5) _____ (arrange) a personal interview in order to know more about her. So, today, much more (6) _____ (require) of a beauty contestant than just to look attractive in a bathing suit or an evening dress.

What happens when a girl (7) _____ (award) the title of Miss Thailand, Miss Sweden or Miss of any other country? Usually, she (8) _____ (offer) money, scholarships, and opportunities to travel and to appear in TV advertising, or to try out for the movies. During the time she (9) _____ (hold) the title of queen, her life (10) _____ (fill) with many out-of-the-ordinary experiences.

Quotations for the Lesson

Efficiency is the ability to do a job well, plus the desire to do it well.

Paul H. Gilbert

An inch of gold will not buy an inch of time.

William Feather

If you spend most of the time dreaming of tomorrow and regretting yesterday, you won't find a great deal of time left for doing anything today.

Louise E. Schillinger

Lesson Four

Text

“Take Over, Bos'n!”

Oscar Schisgall

一艘失事船只的 10 名幸存水手在救生艇上漂流了 20 天,水手们干渴难忍,三副因不许他们碰艇上最后一小壶淡水,成了众矢之的,尤其是副水手长,对他是更是恨之入骨。为了保住那壶水,3 天来,他没有合眼,一直把枪口对准了其他水手,不许他们轻举妄动。他明白,那点水是 10 个人活下去的动力。他疲乏至极,就在他倒下之际,他低声说:“水手长,接过去!”后来……

1 Hour after hour I kept the gun pointed at the other nine men. From the lifeboat's stern, where I'd sat most of the twenty days of our drifting, I could keep them all covered. If I had to shoot at such close quarters, I wouldn't miss. They realized that. Nobody jumped at me. But in the way they all glared I could see how they'd come to hate my guts.

2 Especially Barrett, who'd been bos'n's mate; Barrett said in his harsh, cracked voice, "You're a fool, Snyder. Y-you can't hold out forever! You're half asleep now!"

3 I didn't answer. He was right. How long can a man stay awake? I hadn't dared to shut my eyes in maybe seventy-two hours. Very soon now I'd doze off, and the instant that happened they'd jump on

the little water that was left.

4 The last canteen lay under my legs. There wasn't much in it after twenty days. Maybe a pint. Enough to give each of them a few drops. Yet I could see in their bloodshot eyes that they'd gladly kill me for those few drops. As a man I didn't count any more. I was no longer third officer of the wrecked *Montala*. I was just a gun that kept them away from the water they craved. And with their tongue swollen and their cheeks sunken, they were half crazy.

5 The way I judged it, we must be some two hundred miles east of Ascension. Now that the storms were over, the Atlantic swells were long and easy, and the morning sun was hot — so hot it scorched your skin. My own tongue was thick enough to stop my throat. I'd have given the rest of my life for a single gulp of water.

6 But I was the man with the gun — the only authority in the boat — and I knew this: once the water was gone we'd have nothing to look forward to but death. As long as we could look forward to getting a drink later, there was something to live for. We had to make it last as long as possible. If I'd given in to the curses, we'd have emptied the last canteen days ago. By now we'd all be dead.

7 The men weren't pulling on the oars. They'd stopped that long ago, too weak to go on. The nine of them facing me were a pack of bearded, ragged, half-naked animals, and I probably looked as bad as the rest. Some sprawled over the gunwales, dozing. The rest watched me as Barrett did, ready to spring the instant I relaxed.

8 When they weren't looking at my face they looked at the canteen under my legs.

9 Jeff Barrett was the nearest one. A constant threat. The bos'n's mate was a heavy man, bald, with a scarred and brutal face. He'd been in a hundred fights, and they'd left their marks on him.

10 Barrett had been able to sleep — in fact, he'd slept through

most of the night — and I envied him that. His eyes wouldn't close. They kept watching me, narrow and dangerous.

11 Every now and then he jeered at me in that hoarse, broken voice:

12 "Why don't you quit? You can't hold out!"

13 "Tonight," I said. "We'll ration the rest of the water tonight."

14 "By tonight some of us'll be dead! We want it now!"

15 "Tonight," I said.

16 Couldn't he understand that if we waited until night the few drops wouldn't be sweated out of us so fast? But Barrett was beyond all reasoning. His mind had already cracked with thirst. I saw him begin to rise, a calculating look in his eyes. I aimed the gun at his chest — and he sat down again.

17 I'd grabbed my gun on instinct, twenty days ago, just before running for the lifeboat. Nothing else would have kept Barrett and the rest away from the water.

18 These fools — couldn't they see I wanted a drink as badly as any of them? But I was in command here — that was the difference. I was the man with the gun, the man who had to think. Each of the others could afford to think only of himself; I had to think of them all.

19 Barrett's eyes kept watching me, waiting. I hated him. I hated him all the more because he'd slept. As the boat rose and fell on the long swells, I could feel sleep creeping over me like paralysis. I bent my head. It filled my brain like a cloud. I was going, going...

20 Barrett stood over me, and I couldn't even lift the gun. In a vague way I could guess what would happen. He'd grab the water first and take his drop. By that time the others would be screaming and tearing at him, and he'd have to yield the canteen. Well, there was nothing more I could do about it.

21 I whispered, "Take over, bos'n."

22 Then I fell face down in the bottom of the boat. I was asleep before I stopped moving. . .

23 When a hand shook my shoulder, I could hardly raise my head. Jeff Barrett's hoarse voice said, "Here! Take your share o' the water!"

24 Somehow I propped myself up on my arms, dizzy and weak. I looked at the men, and I thought my eyes were going. Their figures were dim, shadowy; but then I realized it wasn't because of my eyes. It was night. The sea was black; there were stars overhead. I'd slept the day away.

25 So we were in our twenty-first night adrift — the night in which the tramp *Croton* finally picked us up — but now, as I turned my head to Barrett there was no sign of any ship. He knelt beside me, holding out the canteen, his other hand with the gun steady on the men.

26 I stared at the canteen as if it were a mirage. Hadn't they finished that pint of water this morning? When I looked up at Barrett's ugly face, it was grim. He must have guessed my thoughts.

27 "You said, 'Take over, bos'n,' didn't you?" he growled. "I've been holding off these apes all day." He lifted the gun in his hand. "When you're boss-man," he added, "in command and responsible for the rest — you — you sure get to see things different, don't you?"

Word List

bos'n /'bəʊsn/ *n.*

(boatswain 的缩略式) 水手长

stern /stɜ:n/ *n.*

船尾

drifting /'driftɪŋ/ *n.*

at close quarters

glare /gleə(r)/ *v.*

gut /gʌt/ *n.*

mate /meɪt/ *n.*

harsh /hɑːʃ/ *adj.*

cracked /krækt/ *adj.*

doze /dəʊz/ *v.*

instant /'ɪnstənt/ *n.*

canteen /kæn'tiːn/ *n.*

pint /pɪnt/ *n.*

drop /drɒp/ *n.*

bloodshot /'blʌdʃɒt/ *adj.*

wrecked /rekt/ *adj.*

crave /kreɪv/ *v.*

Atlantic /ət'læntɪk/ *adj.*

swell /swel/ *n.*

scorch /skɔːtʃ/ *v.*

gulp /gʌlp/ *n.*

curse /kɜːs/ *n.*

oar /ɔː(r), ɒə(r)/ *n.*

pack /pæk/ *n.*

ragged /'ræɡɪd/ *adj.*

half-naked /'hɑːfneɪkɪd/ *adj.*

rest /rest/ *n.*

sprawl /sprɔːl/ *vi.*

gunwale /'ɡʌnl/ *n.*

spring /sprɪŋ/ *v.*

漂流

非常接近

用愤怒的目光看,怒视

(常用复数)内脏,肠子

助手

沙哑的;刺耳的

(嗓音)粗哑的

瞌睡

刹那,瞬息

(士兵等用的)水壶

品脱(容量单位,大体等于半公升)

水滴,一滴水

(眼睛)布满血丝的

(船)失事的

渴望得到

大西洋的

涌浪,滚滚浪潮;长浪

烘烤(皮肤)

一大口;吞饮

诅咒,咒骂

橹,桨

(蔑)人或事物的群;(猎狗或野兽)群

衣衫褴褛的

半裸的

其余的人;剩余部分

(懒散地)伸开四肢躺(或坐)

船沿

跳;跃出

threat /θret/ <i>n.</i>	威胁; 危险
bald /bɔ:ld/ <i>adj.</i>	秃顶的
scarred /'skɑ:d/ <i>adj.</i>	有疤痕的
brutal /'bru:tl/ <i>adj.</i>	残忍的; 野蛮的
fight /fait/ <i>n.</i>	战斗; 打架
narrow /'nærəu/ <i>adj.</i>	小小的; 狭窄的
jeer /dʒiə(r)/ <i>v.</i>	嘲笑
hoarse /hɔ:s/ <i>adj.</i>	(声音)沙哑的, 嘶哑的
quit /kwɪt/ <i>v.</i>	放弃; 认输
ration /'ræʃən/ <i>vt.</i>	定量分配; 限制使用(食物、水等)
reasoning /'ri:zənɪŋ/ <i>n.</i>	理智; 理性
thirst /θɜ:st/ <i>n.</i>	口渴
calculating /'kælkjuleɪtɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	狡猾的, 诡计多端的
grab /græb/ <i>v.</i>	抓住
instinct /'ɪnstɪŋkt/ <i>n.</i>	本能, 直觉
badly /'bædli/ <i>adv.</i>	(口)很, 非常地
command /kə'mɑ:nd/ <i>n.</i>	命令; 指挥
paralysis /pə'relɪsɪs/ <i>n.</i>	瘫痪症; 瘫痪
yield /jɪld/ <i>v.</i>	放弃
whisper /'wɪspə(r)/ <i>v.</i>	低语
bottom /'bɒtəm/ <i>n.</i>	底部
share /ʃeə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	份额, 分得的一份
dizzy /'dɪzi/ <i>adj.</i>	(人)晕眩的, 昏乱的
shadowy /'ʃædəʊi/ <i>adj.</i>	模糊的
overhead /'əʊvə'hed/ <i>adv.</i>	在头顶上
adrift /ə'drɪft/ <i>adv.</i>	(一般指船)失去控制而随风浪漂流
tramp /træmp/ <i>n.</i>	不定期货船
mirage /'mɪrɑ:ʒ/	幻影; 海市蜃楼

grim /grim/ <i>adj.</i>	严厉的;冷酷的
growl /graʊl/ <i>v.</i>	咆哮着说;吼
ape /eɪp/ <i>n.</i>	猿;(蔑)野人或粗人
boss-man /'bɒs'mæn/ <i>n.</i>	主管,主事人
responsible /rɪ'spɒnsəbl/ <i>adj.</i>	对……负责的
sure /ʃʊə(r)/ <i>adv.</i>	(美)肯定地

Proper Names

Oscar Schisgall /'ɒskə 'sɪzɡɔ:l/	奥斯卡·希斯戈尔
Snyder /'snaɪdə/	斯奈德
Jeff Barrett /'dʒef 'bæ:rɪt/	杰夫·巴雷特
Montala /mɒn'tɑ:lə/	蒙塔拉
Ascension /ə'senʃən/	阿森松岛(南大西洋)
Croton /'krəʊtn/	克洛顿

Useful Expressions

take over	接管;兼并
hold out	坚持
look forward to	盼望
give in to	屈服于
on instinct	本能
run for	赶往,跑向
in command	领导
afford to	(有条件)做
all the more	更加
hold off	使……难接近

Word Study

keep *vt.*

1. 持有;保存;保留

V + N

The Andersen Museum *keeps* the wonderful *papercuts* he made.

Cory *keeps* her son's best-loved *pair of blue jeans*.

Keep the fish in a cool place.

They *keep* all the important *documents* on file.

2. 继续做

V + doing

His eyes wouldn't close. They *kept watching* me.

"Free! Body and soul free!" she *kept whispering*.

3. 使……保持……状态;使……继续做;使……继续进行

V + N + adj. / past participle / N; V + N + doing

It's getting late. I'm afraid that I'll *keep you late*.

Keep your plan flexible.

Hour after hour I *kept the gun pointed* at the other nine men.

I could *keep them* all covered.

I would like you to *keep my plan a secret* at the moment.

Who *kept the taps running* all night?

4. 阻止;控制住

V + N + from + N / doing; V + N + adv. + from + N / doing sth.

He wore sunglasses *to keep his eyes from* the sun.

When you forgive, you remove a major obstacle that *keeps others from* changing.

I was just a gun that *kept them away from* the water they craved.

5. *link v.* 保持……状况; 远离

V + adj. / adv. / prep. phrase

The villagers *kept calm* through the crisis.

Keep back. An ambulance is coming.

I've *kept in touch* with a few childhood friends all these years.

Young people *should keep away from* drugs.

6. Phrases:

keep in mind 牢记

keep up with 跟上, 赶上

keep a promise 遵守诺言

keep a straight face 忍住不笑

keep house 管家

keep up with the Joneses 赶时髦; 与他人攀比

look *vt.* & *vi.*

1. 看, 瞧

V; V + N; V + adv. / prep. phrase

"You *have not looked* very carefully; *look* again, *look* again!"
the professor said.

When they *weren't looking at* my face they *looked at* the canteen under my legs.

Quickly the man *looked down*.

The boy *looked up at* the large woman.

Her eyes *looked from* my face *down to* my foot.

I *looked around at* the faces that were turned towards me.

Occasionally, I got a straight man-to-man reply from someone who *looked me in the eye*.

2. *link v.* 看起来, 显得; 看起来像 (look like)

V + adj.; V + as if / though clause

I probably *looked* as *bad* as the rest.

My body *looks good*, and my mind feels great!

This kind of attitude makes hesitancy *look like* stupidity.

It *looked as though* my relatives were right that I was an idiot
and beyond help.

3. Phrases:

look after 照看

look ahead 考虑未来

look down on/upon 看不起

look for 寻找

look forward to 盼望, 期盼

look into the future 展望未来

look on 旁观

look sb. in the eye /face 正眼看; 正视

look upon... as 看成, 看作

look up 查(词典等)

look *n.* 看; 脸色; 容貌 (looks)

look *int.* 喂, 注意, 听着

"*Look*," he said, "I came here to be a pharmacist. Why do I have
to read this stuff?"

I want to tell them, "*Look*, I am as clean as you are," but it
wouldn't help.

stop *vt. & vi.*

1. 停止, 使……停止

V; V + to do; V + N; V + doing

He *stopped* before he reached the manager's office.

My watch *stopped* during the night.

Often he *stopped to pick* some small berries and put them in his mouth.

She saw her freedom clearly and *could not stop to think of* smaller things.

She *stopped a taxi* and told the driver to take the injured man to the nearest hospital.

The men *had stopped pulling* on the oars long ago.

The club has *stopped functioning*.

2. 结束, 使……结束

V; V + N

They set out as soon as the rain *stopped*.

At the sight of her husband, Mrs. Mallard's heart *stopped*.

We decided to walk on until the road *stopped*.

We *stop work* at five p.m.

3. 阻止

V + N; V + N (+ from) + doing

Once he makes up his mind to do a thing, nothing *can stop him*.

The couple tried *to stop their daughter from* going out with a man they disliked.

4. 堵塞

V + N

My own tongue was thick enough *to stop my throat*.

The chimney is stopped up. We've got to get someone to fix it.

stop n. 停止; 结束; 车站

Phrases:

bring... to a stop 使……结束

come to a stop 结束

stop press (英) 报纸付印时插入的最新消息

Notes on the Text

1. **About the author:** 奥斯卡·希斯戈尔(1901—),美国作家,长期在纽约居住,写了 35 本书,在杂志上发表过两千多篇短篇小说。
2. **About the text:** 《接过去,水手长》是希斯戈尔最受读者喜爱的短篇小说,被译成多种语言。阅读这篇课文时注意以下几点:
 - 1) 第一人称的叙事方法,增强了故事的真实感,使读者深入主人公的思惟,了解到他具体的内心活动,增加了人意料的结局的戏剧性。
 - 2) 故事用口头语体写成。句子简短,有时一句话只有三四个词,甚至两个词。通篇没有结构复杂的长句;大量使用单音节词(双音节词也不多),大量使用表现力极强的短语动词;使用缩略形式,如 they'd, who'd 等,就连 boatswain 一词也是用其缩略形式 bos'n。读这个故事,就好像是在 10 个船员获救不久,三副不经加工、源源本本地在向人讲述他们在大海上 20 天的漂流中的种种的艰难困苦。三副和副水手长的对话,都是单刀直入;就连三副的思惟也是直截了当、切中要害。表现人们在生死存亡关头的思想与活动,当然不能拖泥带水、废话连篇。
 - 3) 口语体的叙事不等于东拉西扯地讲故事。本篇结构严谨,把短篇小说的几个环节 where(故事发生的地点),who(主人公及其对立面),what(主人公与其对立面的冲突或矛盾),why(冲突的原因),how(冲突如何化解)交代得清清楚楚。故事情节的发展一环扣一环,直到人意料的结局。
 - 4) 由于没有结构复杂的长句,学习的重点应放在理解句子的含义、围绕课文多进行口语活动上,同时要注意本课的词

汇,尤其是动词的使用。课文中的动词大体可分为以下几类:

- (1) 表示动作,如:jump, shut, point, cover, stop, empty, spring, grab, prop, creep, tear, fall, fill, lift, run 等。
- (2) 表示思想、情感,如:understand, realize, think, know, see, guess, judge, envy, fear, hate 等。
- (3) 表示观看,如:see, watch, look (up), stare, glare, watch 等。
- (4) 表示声音,如:shout, scream, whisper, growl 等(以及形容词 harsh 和 cracked)。

3. Hour after hour I kept the gun pointed at the other nine men:

一小时过去了又是一小时,我一直把枪瞄准其他九个人。

hour after hour: 每小时(表示长时间或连续做一件事,说话者已经感到厌烦,或是已经坚持不住了)。类似的短语如:

day after day 日复一日

year after year 年复一年

4. From the lifeboat's stern, where I'd sat most of the twenty days of our drifting, I could keep them all covered: 从救生艇的尾部,我可以把他们全纳入我的射程之内,在我们漂浮的 20 天里,大部分时间我都坐在船尾。

keep sb. covered: (用枪)一直瞄准某人。

5. If I had to shoot at such close quarters, I wouldn't miss: 要是我不得不开枪的话,离这么近他们谁也逃不掉。

at/from close quarters / range: 很近,又如:

These boys love to watch the aircraft take off and land *at close quarters*.

这些男孩子酷爱在近处观看飞机起飞、降落。

The birds were photographed *at close range*.

这些小鸟是近距离拍摄下来的。

The centre forward headed the ball in *from close range*.

中锋近距离用头破门。

Fighting *at close quarters* requires daring on the part of the soldier.

打近距离仗需要战士有胆量。

6. **But in the way they all glared I could see how they'd come to hate my guts:** 不过从他们瞪着我的那副神态,我能看出来他们对我已是恨之入骨。

hate sb. 's guts: (俚语)对某人恨之入骨。

7. **Especially Barrett, who'd been bos'n's mate:** 特别是巴雷特,在船上的时候他是副水手长。

who'd been bos'n's mate: 这里用过去完成时表示这是巴雷特在原来那艘船上的职务,在救生艇上他和别人一样都是幸存的水手,不再有职务的区别。

8. **Y-you can't hold out forever!**: 你……你不可能这样坚持下去!
y-you: 表示巴雷特口吃。

hold out: (在危险或困难的情况下)抵抗,坚持,又如:

The city *held out* until the last man. 那座城市抵抗到最后一个人为止。

The refugees *held out* against the severe cold that winter.

难民们熬过了那年冬天的严寒。

9. **Very soon now I'd doze off, and the instant that happened they'd jump on the little water that was left:** 我很快就会打盹,只要我一开始打盹,他们就会向剩下的那点水扑过来。

the instant / moment (that): 一……就……(起连接词的作用,引出时间状语从句),又如:

The instant he sensed danger he dashed out of the house.

一意识到有危险,他就冲到屋外。

The children rushed out of the classroom *the moment* the teacher said, "Class is over."

老师一宣布下课,孩子们就从教室跑了出去。

the little water that was left: 所剩不多的水。

10. **Yet I could see in their bloodshot eyes that they'd gladly kill me for those few drops:** 不过我可以从他们那充满血丝的眼睛里看出,为了那几滴水他们会毫不犹豫地把我宰了。

that 从句是 see 的宾语。

11. **As a man I didn't count any more. I was no longer third officer of the wrecked *Montala*. I was just a gun that kept them away from the water they craved:** 作为人,我不再有什么价值,我不再是遇难的“蒙塔拉”号的三副;这会儿,我只不过是一杆枪,不让他们喝到梦寐以求的水的一杆枪。

count *vi.* be of value 有价值(见第3课第10条注释)。

keep sb./sth. away from: 不让……接近……,使……不能靠近……

12. **And with their tongue swollen and their cheeks sunken, they were half crazy:** 他们的舌头已经干得发肿,面颊都凹了下去,各个都处于半疯的状况。

with ... -ed / adj. / adv. 是一种表示主语所处的某种状况时常用的结构,在句中作状语,又如:

With all the windows open, the room is very cool.

所有的窗户都开着,这屋子很凉快。

With so many people watching me, how can I concentrate on my work?

那么多人都在看着我,我怎么能全神贯注地工作?

13. **The way I judged it, we must be some two hundred miles east of Ascension:** 根据我的判断,我们很可能是在阿森松岛以东两百英里左右。

the way I judged it: as I judged it 作状语。

Cf. But in the way they all glared... (见第6条注释)。

Ascension (Island): 阿森松岛,南大西洋中的一个火山岛。1815年英国占领之前一直无人居住,现为英国殖民地圣海伦

娜的一部分。

(to the) east / west / north / south of: 在……以东/西/北/南,
又如:

He works in Beijing, and lives in a small town some 70 kilometres *south of* the city.

他在北京工作,住在北京以南七十公里左右的一个小镇。

14. **Now that the storms were over, the Atlantic swells were long and easy, and the morning sun was hot — so hot it scorched your skin:** 风暴已经过去,大西洋上波浪平稳,上午的阳光无比灼热,热得把你的皮肤烤疼。

15. **My own tongue was thick enough to stop my throat:** 我自己的舌头也粗得能把嗓子堵死。(与前文所提水手们的舌头已经肿大相呼应。)

16. **I'd have given the rest of my life for a single gulp of water:** 我早就用下半辈子的生命换取了一口水。

此句省略了虚拟条件句 if I could allow myself to do so 要是我能让自己这么做的话。

这句话一方面说明主人公和其他的水手一样渴得难以忍受,也愿意豁出一条命喝上一口水,但更重要的是反映了他的责任感——为了其他九个人的生命,他要坚持下去,他决不能那样做。下面第六段说明他到底为了什么冒死保卫最后一壶水。

17. **But I was the man with the gun — the only authority in the boat — and I knew this: once the water was gone we'd have nothing to look forward to but death:** 但是我是惟一有枪的人,此时枪是船上惟一的权威,我明白一旦那点水喝光,我们除了死亡,再也没有别的东西可盼望的了。

the only authority in the boat: the gun 的同位语。

but: except 除了。

18. **As long as we could look forward to getting a drink later, there was something to live for:** 只要我们一直盼着待会儿还能喝上

一口水,我们就有了活下去的目标。

live for sth. / sb.: 为……而活,又如:

There would be *no one to live for* during those years. She would *live for herself* alone.

在将来的那些日子里她无需为他人而生活,她只为自己而活着。

She says that she *is living for* the green revolution and is ready to die for the green revolution.

她说绿色革命是她生活的目的,她愿为绿色革命而献身。

19. **If I'd given in to the curses, we'd have emptied the last canteen days ago. By now we'd all be dead:** 我要是因为他们的诅咒和谩骂而屈服,好几天之前最后一壶水就会喝得精光。这会儿,我们早都成了鬼。

give in to sth. / sb.: 屈服于……,又如:

Parents often *give in to* their children's demands.

父母往往对子女的要求言听计从。

He is a determined person, and in the face of difficulties, he never *gives in*.

他是个坚定的人,从不在困难面前低头。

20. **The nine of them facing me were a pack of bearded, ragged, half-naked animals, and I probably looked as bad as the rest:** 面对着我的那九个人是一群胡子拉碴、衣衫褴褛、衣不遮体的野兽,我的样子恐怕也和他们差不多。

the nine of them: 他们九人(一共有九人)。

Cf. nine of them: 他们当中九人(他们不止九人)

facing me: 现在分词短语,修饰 the nine of them.

a pack of: (狼等)一群;(坏人)一伙。

21. **The bos'n's mate was a heavy man, bald, with a scarred and brutal face. He'd been in a hundred fights, and they'd left their marks on him:** 副水手长很壮实,秃头,脸上有疤,一副凶相;他

打架斗殴上百次,身上伤痕累累。(这里主人公寥寥数语交代了他的长相以及打架斗殴的历史,让读者感到他是个可怕的人,增加了故事结局的戏剧性。)

they'd left their marks on him: 这里 they 和 their 指什么?(指 a hundred fights。)

22. **in fact, he'd slept through most of the night — and I envied him that:** 事实上,头天夜里他大部分时间都在睡觉,这使我嫉妒他。

envy sb. sth.: 因……羡慕或嫉妒某人,又如:

I *envy* Xiao Li her large vocabulary.

我羡慕小李词汇量那么大。

We *envy* the old man his good health.

我们都羡慕那位老人身体好。

envy 也可只跟一个宾语,如:

Xiao Li has a large vocabulary. I *envy* her.

小李的词汇量很大,我羡慕她。

The old man is in good health. We *envy* him.

那位老人身体那样好,我们羡慕他。

23. **His eyes wouldn't close. They kept watching me, narrow and dangerous:** 他不肯合眼,眯着眼一直盯着我,十分可怕。

narrow and dangerous: 是主语 they 的补足语,说明主语的情况。

24. **Every now and then he jeered me in that hoarse, broken voice:** 他时不时用他那沙哑的嗓音,断断续续地取笑我。

25. **"Why don't you quit? You can't hold out!"**: “你干嘛不放手? 你能坚持到底吗?”

quit (doing sth.): stop. doing something, often, bad or annoying)(口语)停止,又如:

Can't you *quit* smoking?

你就不能把烟戒了?

在美式英语中 quit 还有“辞职不干”、“退学”的意思。如：

Jim has decided to quit. He doesn't like his job.

吉姆已经决定辞职，他不喜欢那份工作。

26. **Couldn't he understand that if we waited until night the few drops wouldn't be sweated out of us so fast?**: 难道他不明白要是我们等到天黑，我们喝下去的那几滴水就不会那么快变成汗流掉吗？

这是个否定疑问句，表示责备，又如：

Can't you quit complaining? I'm tired of it.

难道你就不能停止抱怨？我都烦死了。

Couldn't you do me a favour and leave me alone?

行行好，别缠着我，好吗？

27. **beyond all reasoning**: 不可理喻，和他讲理没有用。

28. **His mind had already cracked with thirst**: 口渴已经使他失去了理智。

cracked with: (口语)因……疯狂，愚蠢。

Cf. crack-brained: (人)疯狂；(思想、观点)愚蠢。

29. **I saw him begin to rise, a calculating look in his eyes**: 我看到他开始站起身来，目光露出一一种老谋深算的神色。(此时主人公与其对手之间的矛盾已经发展到剑拔弩张、一触即发的程度。)

calculating: clever at planning things to one's own advantage, without caring about other people (贬义)善于策划对自己有利、不顾他人的事；审慎的；狡猾的。

a calculating look in his eyes 是独立结构，由名词 + 介词短语组成。

30. **Nothing else would have kept Barrett and the rest away from the water**: 除了枪别的任何东西也不可能阻止巴雷特和其他人接近那点水。

31. **Each of the others could afford to think only of himself; I had**

to think of them all: 除我之外每个人都可以只为自己着想,而我必须为他们全体考虑。

afford: (常与 can 连用)担当得起(损失、负担、后果等),可以(这样做),又如:

He's failed two exams and *can't afford* to fail another.

他已经有两门考试不及格,担不起再有一门不及格了(有留级或被开除的危险)。

The meeting is very important; we *can't afford* to miss it.

这次会很重要,可不能不去。

- 32. I hated him all the more because he'd slept:** 他睡过觉,这让我更加恨他。

all the more / better: (副词性短语)更加,又如:

Now that I've learned what my parents had done for me, I love and respect them *all the better*.

我知道了父母为我做的那些事,我更加爱他们,更加尊敬他们。

After a thorough cleaning, the room looked *all the more* comfortable.

彻底打扫之后,那间屋子显得更加舒适。

- 33. As the boat rose and fell on the long swells, I could feel sleep creeping over me like paralysis:** 船在平缓的海浪中一起一伏地漂流着,我觉得困倦之意渗透了全身,使我浑身无力。

like paralysis: 像患了瘫痪症一样。这是一个明喻(用 as 或 like 直接比较两种不同的事或物),又如:

Like a rude animal walking on two legs, I moved on, leaving the children and the woman alone.

我没有理会他们母子,径直往前走,像只两条腿走路、不懂礼貌的畜生。

- 34. I bent my head. It filled my brain like a cloud. I was going, going...:** 我的脑袋耷拉了下来。瞌睡使我的脑子如坠云里雾

里,我的知觉渐渐模糊,模糊……

like a cloud: 这也是个明喻。

go: 失去知觉;失去(视力、思维等),又如:

After the accident, his sight began *to go*.

出事之后,他的视力开始衰退。

He can't remember where he had met the man before: his memory *is going*.

他记不得以前在什么地方见过那人,他的记忆力在衰退。

35. **In a vague way I could guess what would happen... Well, there was nothing more I could do about it:** 我模模糊糊地想像以后会发生的事情。……对此我已经无能为力了。(这一段的描述是以后实际发生的事的陪衬,烘托出巴雷特的大转变。)

36. **I whispered, "Take over, bos'n":** 我低声说:“水手长,交给你了。”(这句话唤醒了巴雷特的责任心,是故事的转折点。)

take over (sth.): 接收,接管,接任,接办,又如:

He *took over* the company after his father died.

他的父亲去世后,由他来领导公司。

I've been driving for two hours; *would you take over* for a while?

我已经开了两小时的车了,你能接着开一会儿吗?

The new president *will take over* from Mr. Johnson next week.

新校长下星期就要接任约翰逊先生的职务。

37. **Then I fell face down in the bottom of the boat. I was asleep before I stopped moving...:** 然后我就一头栽进了船舱,还没等倒下去就进入梦乡了。

face down / facedown: (副词性短语)脸朝下。

38. **"Here! Take your share o' the water!":** “喂! 快喝下你的那份水!”

o' the water: 是 of the water 的缩略形式。

39. **I'd slept the day away:** 我把白天睡过去了。(主人公是上午睡着的,直到天黑才醒。)

40. **So we were in our twenty-first night adrift — the night in which the tramp Croton finally picked us up:** 原来我们已经进入了第二十一夜的海上漂流,也就是后来“克洛顿”号货船把我们 from 海上救起的那天的夜里。

pick sb. up: (从海上或封闭的地方)把某人救起;到某地(往往开车)去接某人,又如:

The police *have picked up* all the homeless children.

警察把所有无家可归的儿童都收留了。

The helicopter *picked up* all those trapped in the deep valley.

直升飞机把所有陷在深谷里的人救了出来。

The Joneses *promised to pick us up* at the airport.

琼斯夫妇答应到机场来接我们。

our twenty-first night adrift: 我们海上漂流的第二十一夜。

adrift 是后置形容词,置于所修饰的名词之后,又如:

three days adrift 漂流的 3 天

a boat adrift down the river 一条沿江漂流的船

41. **He knelt beside me, holding out the canteen, his other hand with the gun steady on the men:** 他跪在我的身旁,一只手端着水壶,另一只手握枪对准其他水手。

his other hand with the gun steady on the men 也是“名词 + 介词短语”的独立结构。

with the gun steady on the men 是 *with + noun + adj.* 结构(见第 12 条注释)。

42. **When I looked up at Barrett's ugly face, it was grim:** 我抬头看了看巴雷特那张丑陋的脸,他的脸色铁青。(上文提到巴雷特脸上有疤,表情凶狠,目光可怕。此刻仍然丑陋的脸,但显露出一种坚毅的神色。多么鲜明的对照!)

43. **"I've been holding off these apes all day":** “我一直都防备着这

帮笨蛋不让他们靠近。”

hold off: 与……保持距离;防备。

ape: (骂人语)笨蛋,讨厌鬼。

44. “When you’re boss-man,” he added, “in command and responsible for the rest — you — you sure get to see things different, don’t you?” “当你成了主事的人,”他接着说,“你负起了责任,你要对他人负责的时候,你,你看问题肯定就不一样了,对不?”(巴雷特最后一语道破了他转变的原因:三副倒下去之前对他说的话,就是把捍卫最后那壶水的任务交给了他。保住了水,就保住了10个人活下去的愿望。以前他不理解三副的意图。这正是不在其位,不谋其政。只有担子压在肩头,才知它的分量。)

boss-man: the man in command 负责人,主事的人。这是作者为巴雷特杜撰的词,这里 boss-man 表示的意思与 boss 没有任何区别,但它的发音与斯奈德对他的称呼 bos’n 相似,巴雷特自称为 boss-man 意思是两词音虽近似,所表示的职务却相差很大。他现在的地位变了,思惟当然随之改变。这也说明巴雷特虽然相貌凶狠、文化不高,却有幽默感。

sure *adv.*: (美)肯定;当然(英 *certainly*)。

different 应为 differently。巴雷特文化水平不高,不讲究用词。

Work on the Text

1. Answer these questions.

- 1) How many people were there in the lifeboat? Who were they? What had happened to their ship? How long had they been drifting on the sea?
- 2) Who was the man holding the gun? What was his name? Why did he keep the gun pointed at the others?
- 3) Describe the condition the men were in. What did they

desperately crave? In what way was Snyder, the narrator, worse-off than the other nine? What would they do the instant Snyder dozed off?

- 4) Why wouldn't Snyder let the men drink the last pint of water? What would happen once the water was gone? The other men didn't understand this, did they? How did they feel about Snyder?
- 5) Who was Barrett? Describe his appearance. Why was he a constant threat to Snyder?
- 6) What advantage did Barrett have over Snyder? What made Snyder so sleepy?
- 7) What did Snyder imagine would happen when he dozed off?
- 8) What words did he manage to whisper to Barrett before he fell and dropped into a deep sleep?
- 9) When did Snyder wake? Who waked him up? What for?
- 10) What had Barrett been doing all the time Snyder was sleeping? What did he say to Snyder? What did he mean?
- 11) What happened to the ten men on their twenty-first night adrift?
- 12) What does this story show?

2. Look up the following words in an English-English dictionary before looking at the Word List. (You have to decide the part of speech of each first.)

guts (Para. 1) swell (Para. 5) authority (Para. 6) canteen (Para. 6) badly (Para. 18)

3. Paraphrase the following.

- 1) But in the way they all glared I could see how they'd come to hate my guts. (Para. 1)

- 2) I'd have given the rest of my life for a single gulp of water. (Para. 5)
- 3) . . . I could feel sleep creeping over me like paralysis. (Para. 19)
- 4) I stared at the canteen as if it were a mirage. (Para. 26)
- 5) "When you're boss-man," he added, "in command and responsible for the rest — you — you sure get to see things different, don't you?" (Para. 27)

4. Discuss or speak on the following topics:

- 1) Retell the story as (1) Snyder, or (2) Barrett, or (3) a sailor.
- 2) What do you think changed Jeff Barrett from bos'n to boss-man? Do you think this changeover believable?
- 3) Have you ever found yourself suddenly in a position of leadership? What does responsibility mean to you?

5. Write a summary of the story in about 150 words.

These questions may help you to cover the main points:

- 1) What had happened to the ship when the story began? How long had the men been drifting on the lifeboat? What was their biggest problem?
- 2) Who were Snyder and Barrett? What had they been trying to do? What advantage did Barrett have over Snyder?
- 3) What words did Snyder whisper to Barrett just before Snyder dropped into a deep sleep?
- 4) What surprised Snyder when he woke up?
- 5) How were the men rescued?

Vocabulary Exercises

1. Complete the following sentences with words formed in the same way as in the examples, putting in a hyphen wherever necessary.

Examples:

war-torn 受战争蹂躏的 battery-powered 用电池供电的

heartfelt 衷心的 machine-made 机制的

mass-produced 大量生产的 self-educated 自学成材的

(名词 + 过去分词 → 复合形容词)

noun: blood computer heart home snow

verb: break cover design make shoot

- 1) We bought a unit of _____ furniture for our house.
- 2) If we didn't allow her to join the team, she would be _____.
- 3) The _____ mountaintop looks beautiful in the sun.
- 4) A few restless nights gave him _____ eyes.
- 5) Is the cake _____ or from a shop?

2. Translate the following sentences into English.

1) Use the verb + noun or adj. + noun collocation.

未中目标 命中目标 闭上眼睛 辞职不干 抬起头来
提高嗓门 瞄准某人 低下头去 松懈劲头 留下痕迹
沙哑的声音 朝……开火

2) Use the "useful expressions".

- (1) 听到我所在的公司要被一家石油公司兼并的消息, 我十分震惊。
- (2) 矿工们被困在坍塌的坑道里一个多星期才得到营救。

- (3) 女孩眼巴巴地盼望父亲带她去旅行,那是他答应过的。
- (4) 看见卡车朝他冲过来,他本能地迅速闪开了。
- (5) 为了躲开高峰期,苏珊只得每天早上 8 点赶公共汽车。
- (6) 在增援部队(reinforcements)到达之前,战士们抵御敌人一个星期的进攻。
- (7) 二十多年来,史密斯先生一直领导着那个极为成功的企业。
- (8) 母亲从不屈服于在我成长过程中遇到的困难。
- (9) 这个国家可不能再陷入内战了,人民渴望持久的和平。
- (10) 他真诚的自我批评使我们更加尊重他。

3) Use *keep*, *look* and *stop*.

- (1) 我们该停下来想一想:为什么年轻人崇拜歌星和足球明星?
- (2) 他抬起头来,碰巧看到一个人把手伸进一位乘客的裤兜。
- (3) 很抱歉,让大家久等了。
- (4) 没有任何力量能够阻止中国人民统一自己的国家。
- (5) 有人一直盯着我,你认为我能全神贯注地工作吗?
- (6) 记者们把他们的相机时刻准备好,等待戴安娜王妃出现。
- (7) 你要是不断地来,不断地投诉(complain),他们没准会认真对待这个问题。
- (8) 要是我们都躲着不理这些“坏孩子”,他们怎么能改进?
- (9) 她两天以后再次见到部长时,他的样子就好像他从来也没见过她似的。
- (10) 以前教过的一个学生来向教授求援时,他看起来很

高兴。

3. Complete the following sentences.

1) Put suitable prepositions or adverbs.

- (1) As the saying goes, misfortune never comes singly. A storm came _____ the heels of the earthquake and the people in the region suffered great losses.
- (2) _____ an amazed look _____ their faces, the children all listened to the adventure story.
- (3) _____ the way he walked, I could tell that something was wrong _____ his leg.
- (4) The monkey stretched _____ its hand, only to find the apple was _____ its reach.
- (5) I missed part of the lecture because I dozed _____ for about 10 minutes.
- (6) Please keep the children _____ the poisonous plants in this garden.
- (7) William Tell aimed his arrow _____ the apple _____ the head of his son and hit his target _____ hurting the boy in the least.
- (8) This man has been faced _____ countless temptations, but he has never given _____ them.
- (9) For three hours, Jane was left _____ the darkness; a feeling of terror crept all _____ her.
- (10) He's been unemployed for a whole year and is craving _____ a chance to work.
- (11) The coach felt that he was responsible _____ his team's total failure in the championships.
- (12) I hope these new regulations will put a stop _____

drunk driving.

- (13) In this family, the parents look _____ their children as equals, and their wishes are honoured.
- (14) The heatwave kept a lot of people _____ their air-conditioned houses.
- (15) The children are looking forward _____ going to the zoo and seeing the baby elephant.

2) Choose the right word from the brackets.

- (1) They stopped arguing and _____ at each other.
(stared, glared)
- (2) Their village was bombed during the war, and they now live in half _____ houses with no electricity or water supply. (damaged, wrecked)
- (3) There was a _____ protest outside the court, and a police officer was injured. (violent, brutal)
- (4) I'd had enough of college and decided to _____.
(quit, stop)
- (5) The man took out a gun and everyone started _____.
(shouting, screaming)

4. Choose the best word for each blank.

With the (1) _____ (development, introduction, invention, usage) of the radio, newspaper publishers (2) _____ (doubted, guessed, thought, wondered) how broadcasting would (3) _____ (affect, change, influence, make) them. Many feared that the radio as a quick and easy means of keeping people (4) _____ (heard, informed, known, told) would displace the newspaper industry altogether.

Others hoped that the (5) _____ (brief, limited, short, small) newscast heard on the air would stimulate listeners'

interest in the story so they'd buy the paper to get more information. This second idea turned (6) _____ (against, into, to, out) to be closer to the truth. Radio and print were not substitutes for each other but (7) _____ (actually, contrarily, hardly, really) supported each other. You see the relationship between different media is not always one of displacement but can be one of reinforcement. However this is not always the (8) _____ (case, fact, situation, truth). Take television and motion pictures (9) _____ (as, for, like, to) example. With the (10) _____ (fame, reputation, popularity, popularization) of TV, the motion picture suffered greatly. Movie attendance dropped when people chose to stay at home and be entertained. (11) _____ (Alike, Like, Likely, Likewise), when a football game was shown (12) _____ (by, in, on, over) the air, the stands were often empty because fans chose to watch the game at home.

Grammar & Usage

Tag Questions

1. 附加疑问句的构成

由两部分构成:陈述句 + 附加成分。附加成分也由两部分构成:助动词或 be 的一种形式 + 人称代词(应与陈述句的主语相应)

附加疑问句主要用于口语,表示期望对方的同意或对所陈述之事的首肯。

附加疑问句有下列几种形式:

- 1) 肯定陈述句 + 否定附加成分(附加成分除极为正式场合或老式英语中都要用缩略形式)

Mary is here, isn't she?

Snyder said, "Take over, bos'n," didn't he?

You sure get to see things differently, don't you?

You've heard the news, haven't you?

He gave you the book, didn't he?

Peter had finished the letter before you came, hadn't he?

You'd rather I didn't say anything, wouldn't you?

Jack usually has tea for breakfast, doesn't he?

2) 否定的陈述句 + 肯定附加成分

Peter doesn't smoke, does he?

The party won't start until seven, will it?

David wouldn't be in this position if he worked in the industry, would he?

People shouldn't litter, should they?

You haven't been here before, have you?

He didn't switch off the gas, did he?

2. 附加疑问句的几点特殊用法

- 1) 凡是带有 no, none, no one, nobody, nothing, hardly, seldom, rarely, never, barely, few, little, neither 等否定词的陈述句,都应看作否定陈述句,后面接肯定附加成分。

She seldom leaves the room in winter, does she?

People rarely go that far to that small village, do they?

- 2) 当陈述句的主语为 everybody, everyone, someone, somebody, anyone, nobody, no one, neither, none 时,附加成分中的代词一般用 they。

Everyone at the party had a good time, didn't they?

Neither of them said a word, did they?

None of the books are returned, are they?

- 3) 陈述部分是 there 引导的存在句时,附加成分由助动词或

be 的一种形式 + there 构成。

There is something wrong with the child, isn't there?

There is nobody in the room, is there?

- 4) 陈述部分是肯定的 I'm ... 结构时,附加成分为 aren't I。

I'm the doctor, aren't I?

I'm late, aren't I?

(在老式或极为正式的英语中用: I am late, am I not?)

- 5) 陈述部分是一个带有 that 从句作宾语的主从结构时,附加成分应与主句的主语和谓语动词保持对应关系。

You think (that) I did it, don't you?

He didn't say Mary would come, did he?

注意:当陈述部分的主句是 I think, I suppose, I believe 等时,附加成分往往与 that 从句中的主语和谓语动词保持对应关系,但要注意 I don't think 等结构对从句的否定用法。

I suppose you are here to study, aren't you?

I don't think he came here just to say goodbye, did he?

I believe you are in urgent need of help, aren't you?

如果想核实对方的看法是否与你一致,附加部分则与主句相应。

I think he's the best person for the job, don't you?

- 6) 在祈使句后加上一个附加疑问成分可缓和语气,附加成分一般用 will you 和 would you,但也可用 won't you 或 can't you。

Sit still, won't you?

Open the window, would you?

Give me a hand, won't you?

- 7) Let's 型祈使句中附加成分用 shall we。

Let's go for a walk, shall we?

Let's get down to work, shall we?

- 8) 陈述部分带有 used to 时,附加成分用 did 形式,偶尔用

used to 形式。

He used to smoke fifty cigarettes a day, didn't he?

有的语法书将 used not 缩略式定为 usedn't to, 这是老式的用法, 现在很少有人使用。

3. 附加疑问句的回答

要针对所陈述的内容, 不受附加疑问成分的制约。

—You didn't go there alone, did you?

—No, I didn't.

—You love coffee, don't you?

—Yes, I do.

Exercises

1. Add a suitable tag to each of the following statements.

- 1) They used to climb the mountain every morning, _____?
- 2) You had trouble finding this place, _____?
- 3) Someone turned the radio down, _____?
- 4) Birds rarely fly north in winter, _____?
- 5) I don't think he has finished the term paper, _____?
- 6) Learning how to speak good English takes a long time, _____?
- 7) He'd rather you didn't do it, _____?
- 8) No one is allowed to enter the room, _____?
- 9) We have saved very little this month, _____?
- 10) Let's have a good talk, _____?

2. Correct the following wrong tags.

- 1) Neither of the books can be taken out of the library, can't

it?

- 2) Everyone warned you, didn't he?
- 3) You'd better change your dirty socks, wouldn't you?
- 4) There wasn't enough time to go around, was it?
- 5) I don't suppose anyone will do it, do I?
- 6) None of your friends liked the idea, didn't they?
- 7) Don't forget to buy some vegetable on your way home, do you?
- 8) Few people know the answer to the question, don't they?
- 9) Someone called you this morning, didn't he?
- 10) He was unhappy, was he?

3. Translate the following sentences into English, using tag questions.

- 1) 没有什么东西能阻挡我们, 对吧?
- 2) 我比你年龄大, 是吧?
- 3) 我想你知道发生了什么事, 是吧?
- 4) 别忘了给我打电话, 好吗?
- 5) 你不介意我用一下你的字典, 是吧?
- 6) 你的书还没还, 是吧?
- 7) 冬天这里很少下雨, 是吧?
- 8) 我们自己动手, 好吗?
- 9) 他说他会来的, 是吧?
- 10) 你认为他通过考试没问题, 是不是?

4. Put in the blanks the correct form of the verbs in the brackets (revision: tenses and voices).

What a coincidence (巧合) that your letter with the newspaper clipping "Riches of the Sea" (1) _____ (arrive) the same day the science department here (2) _____ (present) a lecture

on oceanography (海洋地理学)! I (3) _____ (plan) to go to a movie that night, but after I (4) _____ (get) your letter I (5) _____ (decide) to attend the lecture instead, and I (6) _____ (be) certainly glad I (7) _____ (do).

As you know, what I (8) _____ (want) to do after I finished school (9) _____ (be) never very clear to me. Dad always (10) _____ (want) me to be a teacher but now I (11) _____ (believe) I (12) _____ (like) to be an oceanographer. Until the lecture, I always (13) _____ (think) of the ocean as just a vast body of water where one (14) _____ (swim), (15) _____ (ride) the surf, or (16) _____ (take) a ship for some far-off place. Dr. Brown, the lecturer, (17) _____ (make) me realize that the ocean (18) _____ (be) a great new frontier, with untold potential as a source of food and of other products valuable to mankind. He (19) _____ (talk) about the new developments taking place in ocean research these days. I (20) _____ (try) to give you a brief summary of some of the things he (21) _____ (mention).

Quotations for the Lesson

Reason and judgment are the qualities of a leader.

Tactus

No man can lead who does not love the men he leads.

Paul P. Parker

Lesson Five

Text

Are you Giving Your Kids Too Much?

Benjamin Spock

天下的父母哪个不疼爱自己的孩子？天下的父母又有哪个不望子成龙、盼女成凤？一个普遍存在的错误观念是：给孩子的越多，越能体现对孩子的爱；相当多的家长对孩子的物质要求不愿说“不”。殊不知孩子最需要的是父母对他们的关心和爱护，无节制地满足孩子的物质愿望不利于他们的健康成长，也不是他们的愿望。有时孩子的哭闹仅仅是发出信号，请求家长规定界限。家长应该让孩子从小就学习如何面对回绝、挫折和失败。

1 While traveling for various speaking engagements, I frequently stay overnight in the home of a family and am assigned to one of the children's bedrooms. In it, I often find so many playthings that there's almost no room — for my small toilet kit. And the closet is usually so tightly packed with clothes that I can barely squeeze in my jacket.

2 I'm not complaining, only making a point. I think that the tendency to give children an overabundance of toys and clothes is quite common in American families, and I think that in far too many families not only do children come to take their parents' generosity for granted, but also the effects of this can actually be somewhat harmful

to children.

3 Of course, I'm not only thinking of the material possessions children are given. Children can also be overindulged with too many privileges — for example, when parents send a child to an expensive summer camp that the parents can't really afford.

4 Why parents give their children too much, or give things they can't afford? I believe there are several reasons.

5 One fairly common reason is that parents overindulge their children out of a sense of guilt. Parents who both hold down full-time jobs may feel guilty about the amount of time they spend away from their children and may attempt to compensate by showering them with material possessions.

6 Other parents overindulge because they want their children to have everything *they* had while growing up, along with those things the parents yearned for but didn't get. Still others are afraid to say no to their children's endless requests for toys for fear that their children will feel unloved or will be ridiculed if they don't have the same playthings their friends have.

7 Overindulgence of a child also happens when parents are unable to stand up to their children's unreasonable demands. Such parents vacillate between saying no and giving in — but neither response seems satisfactory to them. If they refuse a request, they immediately feel a wave of remorse for having been so strict or ungenerous. If they give in, they feel regret and resentment over having been a pushover. This kind of vacillation not only impairs the parents' ability to set limits, it also sours the parent-child relationship to some degree, robbing parents and their children of some of the happiness and mutual respect that should be present in healthy families.

8 But overindulging children with material things does little to lessen parental guilt (since parents never feel that they've given

enough), nor does it make children feel more loved (for what children really crave is parents' time and attention). Instead, the effects of overindulgence can be harmful. Children may, to some degree, become greedy, self-centered, ungrateful and insensitive to the needs and feelings of others, beginning with their parents. When children are given too much, it undermines their respect for their parents. In fact, the children begin to *sense* that a parent's unlimited generosity is not right. The paradoxical result may be that these children will push further, unconsciously hoping that, if they push *too* hard, they will force their parents into setting limits.

9 Also, overindulged children are not as challenged as children with fewer playthings to be more creative in their play. They have fewer opportunities to learn the value of money, and have less experience in learning to deal with a delay in gratification, if every requested object is given on demand.

10 The real purpose of this discussion is not to tell parents how much or how little to give to their children. Rather, my intent is to help those parents who have already sensed that they might be overindulging their children but don't know how to stop.

11 Parents who are fortunate enough not to have a problem with feelings of guilt don't need to respond crossly to their children when denying a specific request which is thought to be unreasonable. They can explain, *cheerfully*, that it's too expensive — except perhaps as a birthday or holiday gift — or that the child will have to contribute to its purchase from an allowance or from the earnings of an outside job.

12 It's the cheerfulness and lack of hesitation that impress upon the child that parents mean what they say. A cross response signals that the parents are in inner conflict. In fact, I'll make a rash statement that I believe is true, by and large: Children will abide by what their

parents sincerely believe is right. They only begin arguing and pestering when they detect uncertainty or guilt, and sense that their parents can be pushed to give them what they want, if they just keep at it. But the truth is that a child *really* wants parents to be in control — even if it means saying no to a request — and to act with conviction in a kind and loving fashion.

13 But, you may answer, I often *am* uncertain about whether to give in to many of my children's requests. That doesn't mean you can't change. First you should try to determine what makes you submissive or guilty. Then, even if you haven't uncovered the reason, you should begin to make firm decisions and practice responding to your children's requests in a prompt, definite manner.

14 Once you turn over a new leaf, you can't expect to change completely right away. You are bound to vacillate at times. The key is to be satisfied with gradual improvement, expecting and accepting the occasional slips that come with any change. And even after you are handling these decisions in a firmer and more confident manner, you can't expect your children to respond immediately. For a while they'll keep on applying the old pressures that used to work so well. But they'll eventually come to respect your decisions once they learn that nagging and arguing no longer work. In the end, both you and your children will be happier for it.

Word List

engagement /ɪn'geɪdʒmənt/ <i>n.</i>	约请,受聘
overnight /ˌəʊvə'nɑ:t/ <i>adv.</i>	整夜,通宵
plaything /'pleɪθɪŋ/ <i>n.</i>	玩具
kit /kɪt/ <i>n.</i>	(一套)工具、用具等

closet /'kloʊzɪt/ <i>n.</i>	(美) 衣橱; 壁橱 (英 wardrobe /'wɔːdrəʊb/)
barely /'beəli/ <i>adv.</i>	几乎不(能)
tendency /'tendənsɪ/ <i>n.</i>	倾向
overabundance /'əʊvərə'bʌndəns/ <i>n.</i>	过于丰富, 过多
somewhat /'sʌmwɒt/ <i>adv.</i>	稍稍, 有几分
privilege /'prɪvɪlɪdʒ/ <i>n.</i>	特权
guilt /gɪlt/ <i>n.</i>	内疚
compensate /'kɒmpenset/ <i>v.</i>	补偿(损失、伤害等)
shower /'ʃaʊə(r)/ <i>v.</i>	大量给予
yearn (for) /jɜːn/ <i>v.</i>	渴望
unloved /'ʌnlʌvd/ <i>adj.</i>	失宠的
unreasonable /ʌn'reɪzənəbl/ <i>adj.</i>	不合理的
demand /dɪ'mɑːnd/ <i>n.</i>	(常用复数)要求, 所要求之物
vacillate /'væsɪleɪt/ <i>v.</i>	(在意见方面)犹豫
satisfactory /'sætɪs'fæktəri/ <i>adj.</i>	令人满意的
remorse /rɪ'mɔːs/ <i>n.</i>	懊悔
ungenerous /ʌn'dʒenərəs/ <i>adj.</i>	不大方的, 吝啬的
resentment /rɪ'zentmənt/ <i>n.</i>	愤恨, 怨恨
pushover /'puʃəʊvə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	(俚)易于征服或控制的人
vacillation /'væsɪ'leɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	犹豫; 迟疑
impair /ɪm'peə(r)/ <i>v.</i>	损害
limit /'lɪmɪt/ <i>n.</i>	(最大或最小的)极限; 限度
parent-child /'peərənt'tʃaɪld/ <i>adj.</i>	父母与子女之间的
rob /rɒb/ <i>v.</i>	剥夺(某人有权享有的东西等)
respect /rɪ'spekt/ <i>n.</i>	尊敬
present /'preznt/ <i>adj.</i>	存在的; 在场的
lessen /'lesn/ <i>v.</i>	减弱, 削弱

parental /pə'rentl/ <i>adj.</i>	父母亲的
greedy /'gri:dɪ/ <i>adj.</i>	贪婪的
self-centered /,self'sentəd/ <i>adj.</i>	自私的;以自我为中心的
ungrateful /ʌn'grɛtɪf(u)l/ <i>adj.</i>	不领情的,忘恩负义的
insensitive /ɪn'sensɪtɪv/ <i>adj.</i>	(对他人感情等)感觉迟钝的
undermine /,ʌndə'maɪn/ <i>v.</i>	逐渐损害(或削弱)
unlimited /ʌn'lɪmɪtɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	不受限制的;无原则的
paradoxical /,pærə'dɒksɪkəl/ <i>adj.</i>	看似矛盾的;似是而非的
unconsciously /ʌn'kɒnʃəsli/ <i>adv.</i>	无意识地
challenged /'tʃælɪndʒd/ <i>adj.</i>	受到挑战的
creative /kri:'eɪtɪv/ <i>adj.</i>	有创造力的
delay /dɪ'leɪ/ <i>n.</i>	迟延
gratification /,grætɪfɪ'keɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	喜悦,满足
intent /ɪn'tent/ <i>n.</i>	目的;意向
respond /rɪ'spɒnd/ <i>v.</i>	反应;作出反应
crossly /'krɒsli/ <i>adv.</i>	生气地,发怒地
specific /spɪ'sɪfɪk/ <i>adj.</i>	特定的;具体的;明确的
cheerfully /'tʃɪəfəli/ <i>adv.</i>	愉快地
allowance /ə'laʊəns/ <i>n.</i>	津贴
earnings /'ɜ:nɪŋs/ <i>n.</i>	(复)赚得的钱
cheerfulness /'tʃɪəfʊlnɪs/ <i>n.</i>	愉快,欢乐
hesitation /,hezɪ'teɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	犹豫
cross /krɒs/ <i>adj.</i>	坏脾气的,易怒的
signal /'sɪgnəl/ <i>v.</i>	表示,发出信号
inner /'ɪnə(r)/ <i>adj.</i>	内心的;精神上的
conflict /'kɒnflɪkt/ <i>n.</i>	冲突,矛盾
rash /ræʃ/ <i>adj.</i>	匆忙的;轻率的
sincerely /sɪn'siəli/ <i>adv.</i>	真诚地

pester /'pestə(r)/ <i>v.</i>	纠缠;使烦恼
detect /dr'tekt/ <i>v.</i>	发现;查出
uncertainty /ʌn'sɜ:təntɪ/ <i>n.</i>	不确定,不明确
submissive /səb'mɪsɪv/ <i>adj.</i>	降服的,顺从的
uncover /ʌn'kʌvə(r)/ <i>v.</i>	揭开
prompt /prɒmpt/ <i>adj.</i>	迅速的,爽快的
gradual /'grædʒʊəl, -dʒʊəl/ <i>adj.</i>	逐步的;逐渐的
slip /slɪp/ <i>n.</i>	失误,小疏忽
eventually /ɪ'ventʃʊəli/ <i>adv.</i>	最终,最后
nagging /'næɡɪŋ/ <i>n.</i>	唠叨,纠缠

Proper Names

Benjamin Spock /'bendʒəmɪn 'spɒk/	本杰明·斯波克
-----------------------------------	---------

Useful Expressions

take...for granted	认为……理所当然
be harmful to	对……有害
hold down	保持(职位)
feel guilty about	感到愧疚
shower with	大量给予
yearn for	渴望
stand up to	顶住
give in	让步
keep at	坚持
be bound to	一定会

Word Study

give *vt. & vi.*

1. 给予, 赠送; 付给

V; V(+ N) + N/V + N + to + N; V + N + *what* clause; V(+ N) + N + *for*

A person who is not willing *to give* cannot be called rich.

Why do parents *give their children too much*?

The purpose of this discussion is not to tell parents *how much or how little to give to* their children.

Children begin pestering when they sense that their parents can be pushed *to give them what* they want.

How much are you going to *give (me) for* these books?

2. 提供; 告诉

V(+ N) + N

My secretary hears of my plans only a few minutes before I *give orders* to carry them out.

I must *give an exact account* of my discoveries the next day.

The English reserve tends to *give the impression* of coldness.

The professor *gave me specific instructions* before he left.

The director *gave the new arrivals information* they needed.

3. 做

V(+ N) + N

I'll *give the project my full support*.

Would you give me a call as soon as you get home?

They are going *to give a party* for their father's 50th birthday.

Yesterday, Prof. Lin *gave us a talk* about her recent trip to Tibet.

4. Phrases:

give birth to 生(孩子)

give in 递交; 屈从

give in to 屈从于

give oneself up to 向……自首

give out 分发

give up 放弃

give way to 让路, 为……所代替

feel *vt. & vi.*

1. *link v.* 感觉

V + adj. / -ed / prep. phrase; V + as if / as though clause

When he *felt better*, he told them his story.

Parents may *feel guilty* about the amount of time they spend away from their children.

Other parents are afraid that their children *will feel unloved* if they don't have what they want.

Andersen *felt* most *at ease* with children.

They *felt as if* they had known each other for years.

2. *link v.* 摸起来感觉

V + adj.

This material *feels smooth*.

Her body *felt cold*.

3. 感到(情感、情绪等)

V + N

If parents refuse a request, they immediately *feel a wave of remorse*.

They *feel regret and resentment* over having been a pushover.

Kaz was hit in the back, but she *felt no pain*.

4. 感觉到, 意识到

V + N + do / doing; V + that clause

He *felt the earth tremble*.

She *felt something creeping* out of the sky and *approaching* her.

He *felt a hand reaching* into his pocket.

Parents never *feel that* they've given enough.

5. 触摸;摸索

V + N; V + adverbial

The doctor *felt the patient's pulse*.

She *felt the child's forehead*, and found it hot.

She *felt in her bag* to see if there was the right change.

In the darkness, she began *feeling along the wall* for the switch.

6. Phrase:

feel like (口语)感觉想……

begin *vt. & vi.*

1. 开始,使……开始

V; V + N; V + to do sth. / doing sth.

The story *began* on a downtown Brooklyn street corner.

The professor *began his lecture* by asking questions.

You should *begin to make* firm decisions.

They only *begin arguing* when they detect uncertainty or guilt.

2. Phrases:

begin with sth. 以……开始

Children may become insensitive to the feelings of others, *beginning with* their parents.

to begin with 首先,第一

expect *vt.*

1. 预计, 预料; 期盼, 等待

V (+ N + adverbial); V (+ N) + to do; V + that clause

We *expect a cold winter* this year.

Don't expect any support from me.

I'm *expecting a letter* from home.

We *expect to see* you next Monday.

We *expect the new teacher to arrive* in a week.

I *expect (that)* he will come back before 4 p. m.

(注意 expect 与 hope 的区别。)

2. 指望, 要求

V + N; V + N + to do

We *expect whole-hearted cooperation* from our partner.

When you turn over a new leaf, you *can't expect to change* completely right away.

You *can't expect your children to respond* immediately.

The teacher *expects his students to write* on every other line.

You *can't expect a great change to take place* overnight.

All students *are expected to wear* uniforms to school.

Notes on the Text

1. **About the author:** 本杰明·斯波克(1903—), 美国医学博士、儿科医生及社会活动家, 共出版 11 本有关保健方面的著作。他 1946 年出版的《婴幼儿保健常识》(*The Common Sense of Infant and Child Care*), 创下了当时图书发行量之最, 影响了一代又一代的父母。1967 年他辞去大学教授的职务, 全心投入反越战的运动。他还是 1972 年人民党(the People's Party)的总统候选人。

2. **About the text:** 《你给孩子的东西是不是太多?》是一篇随笔,文风既不是纯口语体,也不特别正式,总的来说是属于学者使用的口语体。尤其是最后两段比较明显,使用了不定代词 you,好像直接与家长对话,显得亲切。学习这篇课文应注意以下几点:

- 1) 本文层次分明,结构清楚:一开始指出美国家庭娇宠孩子的一些普遍现象;接着分析了家长宠爱孩子的原因;最后对家长提出建议。由于理解内容难点不多,学生可把学习重点放在语言方面,学会活用课文中出现的重点词和词组。
- 2) 本文的目的是给娇宠孩子的家长提些建议,作者的口气亲切、中肯:他不是居高临下、盛气凌人的指教,而是客观地分析,诚恳地建议。
- 3) 与上一课的课文相比,本课课文的句子较长,全篇只有 42 个句子,多数的自然段只有两三个句子。句子虽长,结构并不太复杂,多为常用的复合句,这是因为使用这种复合句可以准确而又利落地表达作者的意思,如用很多的简单句就会显得拖泥带水。学生在阅读过程中要注意长句各部分之间的关系。
- 4) 选词方面,文中既有表现力极强的短语动词,如 *paced with*, *yearn for*, *stand up to*, *give in* 等,也使用了不少的介于一般和正式之间的词,如 *overindulge*, *compensate*, *attempt*, *detect*, *vacillate*, *possession* 等。开始进入中级学习阶段的学生,应逐步扩大这类词汇。

3. **While traveling for various speaking engagements, I frequently stay overnight in the home of a family and am assigned to one of the children's bedrooms:** 在我应邀到各地演说时,经常在别人家过夜,往往被安排到这家孩子的一间卧室。

stay overnight: 过夜,又如:

Jane's parents never allows her *to stay overnight* at any of her

friends'.

简的父母从不容许她在朋友家过夜。

be assigned to sth. : 向(某人)提供……,把……分派给(某人),
又如:

Xiao Zhang *has been assigned to* Class Five.

小张被分到了五班。

The best worker *was assigned to* the most difficult job.

(他们)把最困难的活分派给了最优秀的工人。

be assigned to do sth. : (某人)被指派做某事。

I' *ve been assigned to do it.*

(上级)指派我来办这件事。

4. no room — for my small toilet kit: 没有地方放我小小的洗漱用品包。

there's (no) room for: (没)有……的空间或地方,又如:

There's enough room in the car for one more person. Why don't you go with us?

车里还能再坐一个人,你和我们一起去吧。

Is there any room in the refrigerator for more ice cream?

冰箱里还能再放进些冰淇淋吗?

The suitcase is tightly packed. *There's no room for anything else.*

箱子已经装得满满的,再也塞不进别的东西了。

toilet kit: (一套)洗漱用品。类似的短语:

shaving kit (一套)剃须用品

sewing kit (一个)针线包

first-aid kit (一套)急救用品

repair kit (一套)修理用具

Cf. toilet bag: (旅行时)用来放洗漱用品的袋子。

5. And the closet is usually so tightly packed with clothes that I can barely squeeze in my jacket: 而且衣橱一般也是挂满了衣

服,我连一件夹克也塞不进去了。

be packed with: 装满了……;挤满了……,又如:

The boy's desk *is* often *packed with* photos of his sports icons.

这个少年的书桌里放满了他的那些运动员偶像的照片。

The restaurant *is* always *packed with* celebrities.

那家饭馆常常挤满了社会名流。

This magazine *is* *packed with* useful information.

这本杂志里满是有用的信息。

barely squeeze in my jacket: barely squeeze my jacket into the closet, 这里 in 是副词, barely 是否定词。

6. **I'm not complaining, only making a point:** 我并不是抱怨,只是表明一个看法。

make a / one's point: 发表看法。

7. **I think that the tendency to give children an overabundance of toys and clothes is quite common in American families, and I think that in far too many families not only do children come to take their parents' generosity for granted, but also the effects of this can actually be somewhat harmful to children:** 我觉得给孩子过多的玩具和服装是美国家庭普遍的倾向。我还认为,在太多太多的家庭里,这样做的结果不仅让孩子们认为父母对他们的大方理所当然,而且实际上还会对孩子有一定程度的负面影响。

这是个包含 54 个词的长句,由两个以 I think 开头并用 and 连接的并列句组成。两个并列句的宾语都是 that 从句;第二个并列句的宾语是由 not only... but also 连接的两个并列句。

an overabundance of: 太多的,过多的。

far too many: 过多的。

take sth. for granted / take for granted sth. / take (it) for granted that: 把……看成是理所当然的事,又如:

Don't *take* their help *for granted*. None of them are well-off. 不要认为他们对你的帮助是他们份内的事。他们谁也不富裕。

We *took it for granted that* he would agree, so we didn't ask first.

我们以为他肯定会同意,所以没有事先问他。

8. **Children can also be overindulged with too many privileges — for example, when parents send a child to an expensive summer camp that the parents can't really afford:** 孩子们还往往享受过多的特殊待遇,比如家长把孩子送往实际上超越他们经济能力的、收费颇高的夏令营。

be overindulged with: 过分享受到。

afford sth. / to do sth. : (常与 can 或 be able to 连用)买得起;有钱做某事,又如:

We *can't afford* anything more expensive than a bicycle — an ordinary one.

我们现在买不起比一辆普通自行车更贵的东西。

I *can't afford to go* to that concert. It would wipe out half my monthly allowance.

那场音乐会我可听不起,门票要花掉每月生活费的一半。

9. **Parents who both hold down full-time jobs may feel guilty about the amount of time they spend away from their children and may attempt to compensate by showering them with material possessions:** 都要全日上班而且还要努力保住工作的父母,会因许多时间不在孩子的身边而可能感到内疚。于是他们给孩子买大量东西,作为弥补。

hold down a job: have a secure job; do a job well enough to remain in it for some time 有稳定的工作;做好工作以保住饭碗,又如:

Tom doesn't think he'll be able to *hold down his job* for long.

His hearing is going.

汤姆觉得他的工作快保不住了,因为他的听觉越来越差。

feel guilty about: 对……感到内疚。(Cf. guilty of: 有……罪;
对……要承担责任。)

She *felt guilty about* beating her son for such a trivial matter.

她因自己为那么件小事就揍了儿子感到内疚。

The jury found him *guilty of* murder.

陪审团判他犯了谋杀罪。

shower sb. with sth. / shower sth. on sb.: 给某人大量的……,
又如:

The little girl rushed to her parents and *showered* them *with* kisses.

小女孩跑到父母身边,不断地亲吻他们。

On her 100th birthday, the city *showered* her *with* gifts and good wishes.

她 100 岁生日那天,礼物和祝愿像雪片一样地从全城飞来。

10. **Other parents overindulge because they want their children to have everything *they* had while growing up, along with those things the parents yearned for but didn't get:** 还有些家长娇宠孩子是因为他们要使自己的孩子享有他们小时候所有的一切,还要使孩子享有他们当时想要而没能得到的东西。

along with sth. / sb.: 除此之外;同样;一起,又如:

They got financial aid, *along with* encouragement.

他们得到了资助,也得到了鼓励。

Alcohol is forbidden on campus, *along with* tobacco.

在校园里喝酒和抽烟同样受到禁止。

The veteran soldiers, *along with* their families, were invited to the party.

老战士们,还有他们的家属,被邀请参加聚会。

yearn for: 渴望;思念,又如:

He *yearns for* an apartment of his own.

他渴望有自己的一套住房。

The first time he was away from home, he *yearned for* his parents.

第一次离开家的时候,他很想念父母。

11. **Still others are afraid to say no to their children's endless requests for toys for fear that their children will feel unloved or will be ridiculed if they don't have the same playthings their friends have:** 还有的家长不愿拒绝孩子的没完没了的买玩具的要求,生怕他们觉得家长不爱他们,或惟恐他们因为没有和小朋友们一样的玩具而遭到嘲笑。

注意此句几个从句的作用:for fear that... 为状语,表示主行为的目的;if... 为条件从句,修饰 will be ridiculed; their friends have 为定语从句,修饰 the same playthings。

say no to sb. / sth.: 拒绝做……,又如:

When the bus driver told her to give up her seat to a white man, Rosa Parks suddenly decided *to say no to* Jim Crow.

公共汽车司机叫罗莎·帕克斯给白人让座时,她突然决心抵制种族隔离政策。(Jim Crow: 种族隔离政策)

for fear that... / of doing sth.: 为了避免……发生;惟恐……发生,又如:

They tiptoed upstairs *for fear of* waking their parents.

他们惟恐吵醒父母,踮着脚上了楼。

The children hurried home as soon as school was over *for fear that* their parents would worry about them.

一放学孩子们就赶回家,生怕父母担心。

12. **Overindulgence of a child also happens when parents are unable to stand up to their children's unreasonable demands:** 父母顶不住孩子们的无理要求也就娇惯了孩子。

注意 stand up to 后面一般跟 sb., 表示顶住某人要求等,又如:

If you *stand up to* them, they will stop making unreasonable demands.

你要是顶住,他们就不会再提出无理要求了。

If you *don't stand up to* bullies, they will continue to have their way.

对暴徒你要是不反抗,他们就会为所欲为。

stand up to sth.: remain almost undamaged or unharmed after rough treatment (物质或物品)耐磨,耐用。如:

In 1998, the dam *stood up to* the severest flood in history.

1998年,那个大坝经受了历史上最严重的洪水的考验。

Are these houses going to stand up to strong earthquakes?

这些房子能经得住强地震的考验吗?

13. **Such parents vacillate between saying no and giving in — but neither response seems satisfactory to them:** 这类家长举棋不定,对孩子的无理要求,不知道是该回绝还是该满足,觉得这两者都不理想。

vacillate between: (正式)犹疑,又如:

She *vacillated between* her two admirers.

在两个追求者之间,她举棋不定。

He *is vacillating between* leaving and staying on.

他在去和留之间犹豫不决。

14. **This kind of vacillation not only impairs the parents' ability to set limits, it also sours the parent-child relationship to some degree, robbing parents and their children of some of the happiness and mutual respect that should be present in healthy families:** 这种举棋不定的态度使家长下不了决心给孩子规定界限,同时也一定程度地影响家长和孩子之间的关系,使他们享受不到健康家庭本应有的欢乐和相互尊重。

注意本句的句子结构为由 *not only*, (*but*) *also* 连接的两个并列句;第二个并列句中,现在分词短语 *robbing...* 作状语,修饰

sours the parent-child relationship, that 从句作定语, 修饰 some of the happiness and mutual respect.

sour: 使……恶化, 又如:

What he said *has soured* the relations between the two sides.

他的讲话致使双方关系恶化。

rob sb. of: 使……失去;(非法)剥夺, 又如:

The disease *robbed* the man *of* much of his hearing.

疾病使那人的听觉大大衰退。

The accident *robbed* the boy *of* the opportunity to participate in a math competition.

那次事故使那少年失去了参加一次数学竞赛的机会。

15. **But overindulging children with material things does little to lessen parental guilt:** 可是过分满足孩子的物质要求并不能减轻家长的内疚感。

do little: produce little effect, help little 产生极少效果, 不能起多大的作用。

to lessen parental guilt 作目的状语。

16. **nor does it make children feel more loved (for what children really crave is parents' time and attention):** 孩子们也不会因此就感到父母对他们爱得深(因为他们真正渴望的是父母的时间和关注)。

17. **Instead, the effects of overindulgence can be harmful. Children may, to some degree, become greedy, self-centered, ungrateful and insensitive to the needs and feelings of others, beginning with their parents:** 相反, 娇宠反而有害, 孩子们可能会变得贪婪、以自我为中心、忘恩负义, 对他人(首先是父母)的需要和感情毫不在乎。

insensitive to: 对……感觉迟钝; 不敏感; 不在乎, 又如:

He's *insensitive to* the suffering of those around him.

他对周围人的痛苦麻木不仁。

Doctors found him *insensitive to pain*.

医生发现他对疼痛不敏感。

18. **The paradoxical result may be that these children will push further, unconsciously hoping that, if they push too hard, they will force their parents into setting limits:** 这些孩子就会得寸进尺,下意识地希望过份些会迫使父母给他们的要求规定界限,这种结果看似(与父母的意图)矛盾,却有道理。

注意:that these children will push further 是表语从句。unconsciously hoping that... setting limits 是现在分词短语作状语,修饰 will push further, 其中 they will force their parents into setting limits 作分词 hoping 的宾语,条件从句 if they push too hard 修饰 will force...。

force sb. into doing / to do sth. : 迫使某人做某事(一般用 forced to do sth. 更自然。)

19. **Also, Overindulged children also are not as challenged as children with fewer playthings to be more creative in their play:** 还有,玩具太多的孩子在玩的时候不如玩具少的孩子有创造性。(因为他们玩腻了一个玩具,再玩另一个,反正有的是;而玩具少的孩子,想方设法用自己的一两个玩具玩出许多名堂,因此也就开发了他们的创造力。)

be challenged to be. . . : 受到激发而……,又如:

Children of boarding schools *are more challenged to be independent* than those at day schools.

寄宿学校的孩子比走读的孩子更要学会自己管理自己。

20. **They have fewer opportunities to learn the value of money, and have less experience in learning to deal with a delay in gratification, if every requested object is given on demand:** 如果要什么就给什么,孩子们就没有多少机会去体会钱来之不易,自己的要求不能立即满足时就不能正确对待。

have experience in doing sth. : 有做……的经验,又如:

He *has* a lot of *experience in dealing* with rejects.

他有许多处理退货问题的经验。

When she started out, she *had no experience* whatever in *teaching* handicapped children.

开始时,她没有一丁点儿教残疾儿童的经验。

on demand: as soon as they ask for 一经要求。类似的短语如:

on arrival 一到达

on graduation 毕业时

21. **The real purpose of this discussion is not to tell parents how much or how little to give to their children:** 本文所要讨论的问题不是具体告诉家长该给孩子多少东西。

22. **Rather, my intent is to help those parents who have already sensed that they might be overindulging their children but don't know how to stop:** 准确地说,我的意图是给那些已经意识到自己娇宠孩子而又不知怎样纠正的家长出点主意。

(or) *rather adv.*: (用来修正或补充上文)并非那样,而是……,更确切地说,又如:

He seemed pleased to hear the criticism. *Or rather*, he pretended to be pleased.

他听到批评看似很高兴,更确切地说是装出高兴的样子。

The President's secretary, *or rather*, his daughter, arranged all his engagements.

总统的秘书,更确切地说是他的女儿,为他安排一切活动。

23. **Parents who are fortunate enough not to have a problem with feelings of guilt don't need to respond crossly to their children when denying a specific request which is thought to be unreasonable:** 有幸没有内疚感的家长们在回绝孩子的无理要求时也无需跟他们发火。

注意此句的几个从句的作用:

who are...guilt 作定语修饰主语 parents; which...unreasonable

作定语,修饰 a specific request; when denying... 为省略之后的时间状语从句,修饰主句谓语 don't need to respond...。

24. **They can explain, *cheerfully*, that it's too expensive — except perhaps as a birthday or holiday gift — or that the child will have to contribute to its purchase from an allowance or from the earnings of an outside job:** 他们可以和颜悦色地解释说这东西太贵了(生日礼物和节日礼物例外),也可以让孩子也掏出点自己的零花钱或是在外面挣的钱来买这件东西。

cheerfully: 使孩子感到舒服的方式。

contribute to its purchase: 为所要买的东西掏一部分钱。

the earnings of an outside job: 在外干活挣的钱。(美国的孩子很小就在家庭之外干活,如为别的家庭修理草坪、扫雪、临时看小孩等,一方面挣点零花钱,另一方面也锻炼自己与他人打交道的能力,所挣的钱由自己支配。)

25. **It's the cheerfulness and lack of hesitation that impress upon the child that parents mean what they say:** 这种和颜悦色和毫不犹豫的态度让孩子感到父母说话是算话的。(即不给买再磨也没有用,答应与孩子共同出钱买的一定会买。)

impress sth. on / upon sb.: 使某人对……明确无误,使铭记……。如果 impress 的宾语太长或是 that 从句,则将其挪至 upon sb. 之后,又如:

The manager *impressed upon* the salesmen the importance of creating new markets.

经理使每个推销员深深感到开辟新市场的重要。

The teachers *impressed upon* their students that homework must be done in exercise-books, and not on loose sheets.

老师们让学生们切实记住作业必须写在练习本上,不得写在活页纸上。

26. **In fact, I'll make a rash statement that I believe is true, by and large: Children will abide by what their parents sincerely**

believe is right: 我要鲁莽地说一句我认为基本正确的话:家长真诚相信是正确的决定,孩子们是会遵循的。

make a rash statement: 这是一种套语,相当与汉语的“冒昧地说一句”,说话者并不认为他要说的是 *rash statement*, 含义是“如果你们不同意我的观点,请原谅”。

that I believe is true 为定语从句,修饰 *statement*。

by and large: 大体上,总的说来。

abide by: 遵守(法律,决定等);信守(诺言等),又如:

The spokesman of the Tax Bureau impressed upon all businessmen and businesswomen that they *must abide by* the new tax regulations.

税务局的发言人让所有的商人明白他们必须遵守新的税务规定。

Is this something that foreign residents *should also abide by*?
这是外国居民也必须遵守的规定吗?

We *have always abided by* all the agreements we have signed.
我们一直遵守了我们所签定的一切协议。

27. **They only begin arguing and pestering when they detect uncertainty or guilt, and sense that their parents can be pushed to give them what they want, if they just keep at it:** 只有当孩子们发现家长犹豫不决或是感到内疚而且意识到只要坚持下去父母就会答应他们的要求时,他们才会和家长争吵,才会纠缠不休。

push sb. to do / into doing sth. /: 催促,鼓励或逼迫某人做……,又如:

The boy is a diligent student. His parents never have *to push him to do* his homework.

那少年是个用功的学生,他的家长根本不需要去催促他做作业。

She thanked her teacher for *pushing her into sending* her

essays to a magazine.

她感谢她的老师鼓励她把文章寄给了一家杂志。

keep at it: 继续, 坚持做某事, 又如:

The experiment may take a few days to finish, but it's worth *keeping at it*.

这个实验也许要花几天的时间才能完成, 但却值得坚持做下去。

I was about to give up when my classmates shouted, "*Keep at it!*"

我正打算放弃, 我的同学们大声喊道: “坚持下去!”

28. But the truth is that a child *really* wants parents to be in control — even if it means saying no to a request — and to act with conviction in a kind and loving fashion: 然而, 实际情况是, 孩子真正需要的是父母当家作主——既果断行事, 又和蔼可亲, 尽管这意味着有时要回绝他们的要求。

注意两个平行的动词不定式短语 to be in control 和 to act... 的作用(作宾语 parents 的补足语)。

even if... 是让步从句, 修饰主句的谓语。

29. practice responding to your children's requests in a prompt, definite manner: 训练自己在孩子提出要求时回答爽快干脆。

prompt: without delay 不拖延。

definite: without vacillating between “yes” and “no” 不模棱两可。

30. You are bound to vacillate at times: 有时你肯定还是会犹豫不决。

be bound to do sth.: be certain to do sth. 肯定会……, 又如:

The weather *is bound to improve* in a couple of days.

一两天后天气肯定会好转。

He's *bound to get* the scholarship. No other applicant is better qualified.

他一定会获得这项奖学金, 申请人当中他最合格。

31. The key is to be satisfied with gradual improvement, expecting and accepting the occasional slips that come with any change:

对这种情况, 最好的态度就是看到自己在逐渐改进而感到满意, 对偶尔的反复要有思想准备, 不要回避, 任何的改变都是有反复的。

be satisfied with: 对……感到满意, 又如:

They're quite satisfied with their children's progress.

他们对孩子们的进步感到满意。

The young man is not satisfied simply with a "no". He wants to know why he's been rejected.

对一个简单的“不”字年轻人不满意, 他想知道为什么回绝了他。

Children are not easily satisfied nowadays. The more you give them, the more they want.

现在要让孩子们满意可不容易。给他们的越多, 他们的欲望也就越多。

occasional slip: an occasional turning away from correct practice
偶尔偏离你的正确做法。

that come with any change 作定语从句, 修饰 occasional slip, 任何改变都会同时产生的那种(偏离大方向的事情)。

32. For a while they'll keep on applying the old pressures that used to work so well: 在一段时间里, 他们还会采取过去行之有效的施加压力的老办法。

keep on doing sth.: continue doing sth. 不断做某事, 又如:

His children kept on pestering him while he was working hard on a report.

他在写报道时孩子们不断地来打扰他。

Please don't keep on coming in when I'm concentrating on my work.

我全神贯注地工作时,请不要出出进进。

work (on sb. / sth.): (对……)有效,起作用,成功,又如:

The folk remedy *works*. My headache's gone.

那偏方真管用,我的头不疼了。

Flattery *doesn't work on me*; so don't try it.

恭维奉承的话对我不起作用,你就别来这一套了。

Do you think the plan *will work*?

你觉得他的计划行得通吗?

Work on the Text

1. Answer these questions.

- 1) What does the author often find in the children's rooms when he stays overnight on his lecture tours?
- 2) What point does he make about his findings?
- 3) According to the author in what ways can children be overindulged?
- 4) How does the author account for this overindulgence?
- 5) What difficult situation do some parents find themselves in when their children make unreasonable demands? Why do they vacillate between saying no and giving in? What harm does this response do to the parent-child relationship?
- 6) In what ways is overindulgence harmful to children's development?
- 7) Why is it that overindulgence does not really enhance children's respect for their parents?
- 8) How does the author think parents should reject a request?
- 9) What "rash statement" does the author make about child behavior?

- 10) What advice does he give to those uncertain (or hesitating) parents?
- 11) What does the author tell these parents they should be prepared for once they begin to change?
- 12) Do you think children are generally overindulged in China? If you think they are, do you think the reasons are similar to those mentioned in this article? Were you an overindulged child? In what way(s) if you were?

2. Look up the following words in an English-English dictionary before looking at the Word List. (You have to decide their part of speech first.)

overnight (Para. 1) kit (Para. 1) somewhat (Para. 2) impair (Para. 7) lessen (Para. 8) cross (Para. 12)

3. Paraphrase, paying special attention to the italicized parts.

- 1) ... it also *sours* the parent-child relationship to some degree, *robbing* parents and their children *of* some of happiness and mutual respect that should be present in healthy families. (Para. 7)
- 2) But overindulging children with material things *does little to lessen parental guilt* ... (Para. 8)
- 3) Children may, to some degree, become greedy, self-centered, ungrateful and *insensitive to the needs and feelings of others, beginning with* their parents. (Para. 8)
- 4) They... have less experience in *learning to deal with a delay in gratification, if every requested object is given on demand*. (Para. 9)
- 5) ... the child will have *to contribute to its purchase from an allowance or from the earnings of an outside job*.

(Para. 11)

- 6) The key is to be satisfied with gradual improvement, expecting and *accepting the occasional slips that come with any change*. (Para. 14)

4. Discuss or speak on the following topics.

- 1) According to the writer, why do parents overindulge their children? What harm does over-indulgence do to them?
- 2) Were you an overindulged child? How did you feel about your parents' "generosity"? Did you take it for granted?

5. Write a detailed outline of the text.

You are expected to follow the same steps as you did in writing an outline of the text in Lesson 2.

Vocabulary Exercises

1. Complete the following sentences with words formed in the same way as the examples show.

Examples:

overdress 穿得过于讲究 overgrowth 生长太快

overjoyed 大为高兴的 overestimate 过高估计

oversimplify 过于简单化 overburden 使负担过重

(over- + 名词/动词/形容词/副词 → 复合名词/动词/形容词/副词)

crowded eat sleep react work
--

- 1) I _____ at dinner last night and got indigestion (消化不良).

- 2) I think she _____ when the teacher criticized her.
- 3) He _____ this morning and missed his flight.
- 4) Trains and buses are always _____ during rush hours.
- 5) The manager broke down because of constant _____.

2. Translate the following into English.

- 1) Use the verb + noun, adj. + noun, or noun + prep. + noun collocation.

损伤关系 减缓痛苦 减轻负疚(感) 施加压力 作出贡献
 重新做人 作出决定 拒绝要求 发现原因 兼职工作
 全职工作 周围世界 世纪之交 成就感 责任感
 幽默感

- 2) Use the "useful expressions".

- (1) 随着劳动市场的竞争日趋激烈,许多人不再把他们的工作看成是理所当然的了。
- (2) 保尔有四口之家要养活,他很清楚他必须尽最大的努力保住他的职位。
- (3) 经过一场旷日持久的、残酷的部落战争,本地区的百姓都渴望和平与安全。
- (4) 母亲顶住来自医生和亲戚的巨大压力,坚持教我读书写字。
- (5) 由于双方拒不妥协,仗一直打了十几年。
- (6) 只要坚持写下去,你最终一定会成功。
- (7) 假如你相信钱能为你的生活解除万难,你一定会大失所望。
- (8) 出版这本书可能会给出版社的声誉带来损害。
- (9) 对书法(Chinese calligraphy)如此无知,我十分惭愧。
- (10) 别人说你一生将好运不断时,你可别当真。

3) Use *give*, *feel*, *begin* and *expect*.

- (1) 我们邀请李教授来给我们上音乐课。
- (2) 音乐会 7 点开始,我们最好快点。
- (3) 蜡烛(candle)灭了,那人在衣兜里摸索着想找根火柴。
- (4) 他们都期盼系主任在中秋节(the Moon Festival)举办一个晚会。
- (5) 孩子总是盼望家长对他们要什么给什么。
- (6) 我感到要求一个 3 岁的孩子背熟这首长诗是不合理的。
- (7) 会见这些精力旺盛的年轻人给那位老人很大的乐趣。
- (8) 她觉着有人在跟踪她,开始担心起来。
- (9) 老板解雇她的时候,她没有感到惊讶,因为她从未指望他会发善心。
- (10) 你预料我会感激你的所谓帮助,告诉你,我不领情。
- (11) 敬请所有客人在招待会开始半小时到场。
- (12) 你不能指望一两个星期内就能大大提高英语口语水平。
- (13) 我有这么多事情要做,不知从哪件开始。
- (14) 请给我一个试一试的机会。
- (15) 我们预料韩磊会在演讲比赛中得第一名。

4. Complete the following sentences.

1) Put prepositions or adverbs in the blanks.

- (1) We tend to take our parents' love _____ granted.
- (2) He reminded his mother of her promise several times _____ fear that she might forget about it.
- (3) The old man loves his grandson so much that he gives him everything _____ demand.

- (4) In that area, many children were robbed _____ the right to education.
- (5) He told us a lot about his trip, beginning _____ the people he had met.
- (6) _____ the end, he got what he had yearned _____.
- (7) The dean does not seem to be _____ control. Too often he gives _____ the students when they make unreasonable demands.
- (8) He was fired because he could never deal _____ complaints from the customers.
- (9) He did all this out _____ respect _____ the hero.
- (10) If you give your children too much freedom, they may resent discipline when they grow _____.
- (11) We are bound to fall _____ if we stop striving _____ good results.
- (12) All public servants should be sensitive _____ the suffering of the poor. Otherwise, they are unworthy _____ their title.
- (13) Gradually, her anger gave way _____ understanding.
- (14) Urged by his father, the man wanted by the police decided to give himself _____.
- (15) I feel _____ swimming today. Would you like to go _____ me?

2) Choose the right word from the brackets.

- (1) I found out that it was quite _____ for cats to be poisoned by the mice they eat. (common, ordinary)
- (2) I don't know how he can _____ a new car on his salary. (afford, offer)
- (3) The _____ for her actions remains unclear. (cause,

reason)

- (4) We _____ for beauty, truth and meaning in our lives. (crave, yearn)
- (5) You say your company is in England; can you be more _____? (special, specific)

5. Choose the best word for each blank.

Ernest Miller Hemingway was born in Illinois in the year 1899. He was the son of a doctor, (1) _____ (that, which, what, who) later introduced the boy to the outdoor life of hunting, fishing and ball games. When he was in high school, he played (2) _____ (for, into, on, with) baseball and football teams, and also began to write.

After he (3) _____ (completed, finished, graduated, stopped) school, he didn't go on to college, but (4) _____ (in place of, instead, rather, yet) got a job as a reporter for a newspaper. Working for the newspaper, Hemingway (5) _____ (achieved, created, developed, received) his well-known journalistic (6) _____ (form, manner, style, way): simple, direct and objective.

In 1926, he published his two novels. One of them (7) _____ (describes, explains, pictures, tells) that lonely, hopeless "lost generation" of Americans that he knew in Europe. His fourth novel, *A Farewell to Arms*, made him famous (8) _____ (in, on, over, throughout) the world. In 1954, he received the Nobel Prize (9) _____ (about, for, on, towards) Literature.

In 1961, sick and (10) _____ (impossible, incapable, unlikely, unable) to live the active life he loved, Hemingway killed himself with one of his own shotguns, so (11) _____

(ceased, closed, ended, stopped) the life of the man who had one of the greatest (12) _____ (controls, effects, powers, influences) on American literature in the 20th century.

Grammar & Usage

Types of Sentence: the Imperative

1. 祈使句的作用

1) 表示命令和指示

Be quiet.

Stop shouting over there.

Keep off the grass!

Shake the bottle before you take the medicine.

Don't make any noise.

Let the boy say what he wants.

2) 表示建议、劝告或警告

Don't worry!

Be sensible.

Don't be silly!

Be careful.

Don't be upset.

Write to me if you need further information.

3) 请求和呼吁

Come quickly. Help!

Do help me, please.

Please, stop fighting.

4) 邀请

Drop in whenever you have time.

Come in and have a cup of tea.

Please help yourself.

5) 解释

Take Class 5 for example.

Look at the situation in the Middle East for example.

Consider the following case.

2. 祈使句的基本形式

祈使句的第二人称主语 you 通常省略,以动词原形开头,句尾用句号或感叹号。

Sit down.

Take your share of the water!

祈使句的否定形式是在动词前加 don't,但在正式文体中则用 do not。

Don't be silly!

Don't pick your nose in class.

Do not litter in the park!

Do not feed the animals!

也可在动词前加 never。

Never forget the past.

Never put off until tomorrow what you can do today. (谚语)

3. 祈使句的委婉形式

1) 在句首或句尾加 please。

Please speak slowly.

Pass me the salt, please.

Please don't forget to come here at eight tomorrow.

Please don't do that again.

2) 用附加疑问成分 will you? / won't you? / would you? 等。

Come and have dinner with us, would you?

Take me to the theatre, won't you?

Don't come late again, will you?

Listen carefully, will you?

4. 祈使句的强调形式

- 1) 在动词前可加上助动词 do。

Do come in and have a cup of coffee.

Do tell me what's bothering you.

Do finish your homework on time.

Do be polite to your customers.

- 2) 祈使句表示命令、建议或警告时,动词前加“you”。

You shut up. (不客气的说法)

You go first.

You be at the sheriff's office at noon!

5. 祈使句的第三人称形式

祈使句的句首或句尾也可加人名和第三人称代词如 everyone, everybody, nobody, anybody 等,但它们不是句子的主语,只是称呼,用以唤起注意,不影响动词的形式。

Tom move the table there, and John take the rubbish out.

Please keep quiet, everyone.

Somebody open the door for me, please.

Passengers for Flight 104 please wait at Gate Four.

6. Let's 型祈使句

如果祈使的对象包括说话者本人,就用 Let's 型祈使句:

Let's have a meeting this evening.

Let's go in and have a look.

Let's wait for him here.

Let's have a break.

Let's 型祈使句的否定式为 Let's not... 和 Don't let's...:

Don't let's argue any more.

Let's not argue any more.

Let's not stay for too long.

Let's not put all the blame on him.

Let's not talk about it.

注意 let me do sth. 表示“提出做某事”。

Let me carry your suitcase.

在极为正式的文体中, let 表示愿望。

Let justice and peace live!

Let all good people be happy!

《圣经》的《创世纪》描写上帝创造世界时说:

Let there be light! (让世上有光明!)

Let there be day! (让世上有白天!)

7. 祈使句的被动结构

祈使句的被动结构多用于否定式。

Don't be fooled by appearances.

Don't be frightened by what he says.

Don't be surprised at what you are going to see.

Exercises

1. Change the following into imperative sentences.

Examples: Will you give this chair to the old lady?

Please give this chair to the old lady.

You mustn't be late again.

Don't be late again.

1) You should stay in bed with that cold.

2) Will you explain it more clearly?

- 3) You mustn't take the books out of the library.
- 4) Why don't you quit smoking? You know it's harmful.
- 5) We'd better not go by train.
- 6) Shall we discuss the problem after dinner?
- 7) You should not leave your junk around.
- 8) I'd like you to do me a favour and pass the message to Xiao Chen.
- 9) You can ask the librarian for help.
- 10) Will you tell your brother to return the bike to me?

2. Translate the following into English, using imperative sentences.

- 1) 我们今天下午把教室打扫一下吧。
- 2) 请你告诉你妹妹晚上给我来电话。
- 3) 千万不要相信那家地方报纸的报道。
- 4) “置于儿童不能拿到之处。”
- 5) 汤里别放太多盐。
- 6) 他很忙,我们别去打扰他了。
- 7) 别再批评他了,他对此事已经够难受的了。
- 8) 请离柜台一米远。
- 9) 下周五晚上你一定要来参加我的生日晚会。
- 10) 碰到这样的情况,你一定要冷静。

3. Turn the italicized parts into the passive voice (revision: the passive voice).

- 1) People *considered him a genius*.
- 2) Someone *will have to deal with this matter* right away.
- 3) They *discussed other problems* as well at the meeting.
- 4) The university *expects all students to return to the university* two days before the new semester begins.

- 5) You *should return application forms* to the department office by September 15.
- 6) The thief left the house without anyone *seeing him*.
- 7) They *are building another bridge* across the Yangtse River at Nanjing.
- 8) The zoo authorities *warn tourists not to feed the animals*.
- 9) We *require the audience to leave the concert hall* immediately.
- 10) The recent economic crisis *hit Southeast Asia hard*.

4. Complete the sentences with the best choice (revision: the passive voice).

- 1) _____ to the dinner party, he went to a movie to kill time.
 A. Not to be invited B. Not having been invited
 C. Having not been invited D. Not having invited
- 2) The world's supplies of petroleum _____.
 A. have gradually exhausted
 B. are being gradually exhausted
 C. are gradually exhausting
 D. are gradually exhausted
- 3) The electricity was cut off while the film _____.
 A. was shown B. was to show
 C. was showing D. was being shown
- 4) The pen I bought yesterday _____.
 A. writes well B. is written well
 C. can't be written D. can be writing
- 5) These films _____ until the day after tomorrow.
 A. can't develop B. can develop
 C. can be developed D. can't be developed
- 6) We can't park the car here because we _____ if we do.

- A. will be fined B. will fine
C. are fined D. shall fine
- 7) It's time he _____ what has happened.
A. is told B. be told
C. tells D. was told
- 8) The house the old couple live in requires _____.
A. to paint B. being painted
C. painting D. to have been painted
- 9) If _____, water will be harmful to human life.
A. polluting B. being polluted
C. polluted D. having polluted
- 10) The young man _____ clever but dishonest.
A. thought to be B. was thought as
C. was thought being D. was thought to be

Quotations for the Lesson

Children need models rather than critics.

Joseph Joubert, 1824

As far as rearing children goes, the basic idea I try to keep in mind is that a child is a person. Just because they happen to be a little shorter than you doesn't mean they are dumber than you.

Frank Zappa, 1989

Lesson Six

Text

Culture Shock

在今天的社会里,很少有人一生只在一个地方生活,只在一种环境里活动。一个人在成长过程中,从幼儿园到小学、中学、乃至大学,不断离开自己熟悉的同伴而进入新的环境。越来越多的学子走出国门到海外求学。由于各种原因,人们更换工作单位、居住地点,到陌生的地方去求生存、求发展。环境的变化往往给人们带来各种生理的和心理的不适,甚至压力。社会学家把这种情况称之为“文化震荡”,指出这是当今社会的一种流行病,并分析了其病因、症状、过程和治愈方式。这些分析也许对于预防和治疗此病有一定的作用。

Cause and Symptoms

Kalvero Oberg

- 1 Culture shock might be called an occupational disease of people who have been suddenly transplanted abroad. Like most diseases, it has its own symptoms.
- 2 Culture shock is caused by the anxiety that results from losing all our familiar signs and symbols of social intercourse. Those signs or cues include the thousand and one ways with which we are familiar in the situation of daily life: when to shake hands and what to say when we meet people, when and how to give tips, how to go shopping,

when to accept and when to refuse invitations, when to take statements seriously and when not. These cues, which may be words, gestures, facial expressions, customs, or norms, are acquired by all of us in the course of growing up and are as much a part of our culture as the language we speak or the beliefs we accept. All of us depend for our peace of mind and our efficiency on hundreds of these cues, often without our conscious awareness.

3 Now when a person enters a strange culture, all or most of these familiar cues are removed. He or she is like a fish out of water. No matter how broad-minded or full of goodwill you may be, a series of props have been knocked from under you, followed by a feeling of frustration and anxiety. People react to the frustration in much the same way. First they reject the environment which causes the discomfort. "The ways of the host country are bad because they make us feel bad." When foreigners in a strange land get together to grumble about the host country and its people, you can be sure they are suffering from culture shock. Another symptom of culture shock is regression. The home environment suddenly takes on a tremendous importance. To the foreigner everything becomes irrationally glorified. All the difficulties and problems are forgotten and only the good things back home are remembered. It usually takes a trip home to bring one back to reality.

4 Some of the symptoms of culture shock are excessive washing of the hands; excessive concern over drinking water, food dishes, and bedding; fear of physical contact with attendants; the absent-minded stare; a feeling of helplessness and a desire for dependence on long-term residents of one's own nationality; fits of anger over minor frustrations; great concern over minor pains and eruptions of the skin; and finally, that terrible longing to be back home.

5 Individuals differ greatly in the degree in which culture shock

affects them. Although not common, there are individuals who cannot live in foreign countries. However, those who have seen people go through culture shock and on to a satisfactory adjustment can see steps in the process.

Stages of Adjustment

Raymond Zeuschner

6 Kalvero Oberg describes four stages that people go through when they experience situations that are very different from those to which they are accustomed. Examples of such situations include moving to a new city, traveling to a new country, and becoming part of a new organization, military unit or corporation.

7 Stage one is a honeymoon phase, during which the new experience is perceived to be interesting, picturesque, entertaining, and charming. You may notice several superficial differences such as music, food, and clothing, and the fresh appeal of the new experience keeps you feeling interested and positive. If you are a real tourist, you probably do not stay long enough for this phase to wear off but go on to the next new location or experience. There are people who frequently change jobs, majors, romantic partners, travel plans, clothing styles, foods, diets, or cars so that they never get very far away from the honeymoon stage of culture shock. It is very pleasant to travel and to try out and explore whatever is new.

8 When you stay in a new environment for a while, you move to stage two — the crisis stage — in which the shine wears off and day-to-day realities sink in. In a relationship, you notice annoying habits; in a new country, you find barriers to establishing connections or to learning the language beyond a few polite phrases. Suddenly, your new major includes a class or a professor you dislike. The difficulties and unpleasantness of reality replace the charming and picturesque

"honeymoon." However, if you stick with the experience and try to deal with it realistically, you will probably move to the third phase of culture shock: recovery.

9 In recovery, you learn the systems, procedures, language, or nonverbal behaviors of the new environment so that you can cope with it on the basis of some mastery, competence, and comfort. After about two weeks in London, I began to feel familiar with traveling by "tube," shopping nearly every day for groceries, paying in the correct currency, buying a newspaper, and using some phrases that are unique to English people. I had the advantage of speaking the same basic language and of sharing a great deal with the English in some broad, cultural aspects. In a country that was very different from my own, it would probably have taken me longer to move into the recovery phase.

10 Finally, the fourth, or adjustment, phase occurs when you feel that you function well and almost automatically in the new culture. You no longer need to make mental conversions of the country's money; you know where services are located and how to use them; you understand some of the customs that accompany ordinary life, and it is relatively easy for you to adjust to them. A greater enjoyment of the new experience is now possible, and you may regain some of the initial positive regard you had in the honeymoon stage. If you stay long enough on a visit from a big city to a small town, or, the other way round, you may become so well adapted to the new environment that when you return to your original home, you will again experience culture shock. For some people, it may take several days to readjust, depending on the length of time they were away. Usually, however, since you are in your home culture, your shock wears off faster than the shock that you experienced in the new culture.

Word List

shock /ʃɒk/ <i>n.</i>	冲突;休克
symptom /ˈsɪmptəm/ <i>n.</i>	症状
occupational /ˌɒkjʊˈpeɪʃənəl/ <i>adj.</i>	与职业有关的,职业的
anxiety /æŋˈzaɪəti/ <i>n.</i>	忧虑,焦虑
symbol /ˈsɪmbəl/ <i>n.</i>	象征,标志
intercourse /ˈɪntəkoʊs/ <i>n.</i>	交际,交往
cue /kju:/ <i>n.</i>	暗示;信号
gesture /ˈdʒestʃə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	手势
facial /ˈfeɪʃəl/ <i>adj.</i>	脸部的
norm /nɔ:m/ <i>n.</i>	标准
efficiency /ɪˈfɪʃənsi/ <i>n.</i>	效率
conscious /ˈkɒnʃəs/ <i>adj.</i>	自觉的;有意识的
awareness /əˈweə(r)nɪs/ <i>n.</i>	意识
broad-minded /ˈbrɔ:dˈmaɪndɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	心胸开阔的
goodwill /ˌɡʊdˈwɪl/ <i>n.</i>	善意;友好
series /ˈsɪəri:z, -rɪz/ <i>n.</i>	连续;系列
prop /prɒp/ <i>n.</i>	支柱,支撑物
frustration /frʌˈstreɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	挫折
react /rɪˈækt/ <i>vi.</i>	作出反应
reject /rɪˈdʒekt/ <i>vt.</i>	拒绝
environment /ɪnˈvaɪənmənt/ <i>n.</i>	环境
discomfort /dɪsˈkʌmfət/ <i>n.</i>	不适,不安
host /həʊst/ <i>n.</i>	主人,东道主
grumble /ˈɡrʌmbəl/ <i>vi.</i>	抱怨,发牢骚
regression /rɪˈɡresən/ <i>n.</i>	回归;倒退
tremendous /trɪˈmendəs/ <i>adj.</i>	极大的,巨大的

irrationally /ɪ'reɪʃənəli/ <i>adv.</i>	无理性地
glorify /'glɔ:rɪfaɪ/ <i>vt.</i>	美化
excessive /ɪk'sesɪv/ <i>adj.</i>	过多的, 过度的
bedding /'bedɪŋ/ <i>n.</i>	寝具
physical /'fɪzɪkl/ <i>adj.</i>	身体的
attendant /ə'tendənt/ <i>n.</i>	服务员
absent-minded /ɪæbsənt 'maɪnd- id/ <i>adj.</i>	心不在焉的
dependence /dɪ'pendəns/ <i>n.</i>	依赖
resident /'rezɪdənt/ <i>n.</i>	居民
fit /fɪt/ <i>n.</i>	突然发作
eruption /ɪ'rʌpʃən/ <i>n.</i>	出疹
longing /'lɒŋɪŋ/ <i>n.</i>	渴望, 热望
individual /ɪndɪ'vɪdʒuəl, -dʒuəl/ <i>n.</i>	个人
affect /ə'fekt/ <i>vt.</i>	影响
accustom /ə'kʌstəm/ <i>vt.</i>	使习惯于
organization /ɔ:gənəɪ'zeɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	组织
corporation /kɔ:pə'reɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	公司, 社团
honeymoon /'hʌnɪmu:n/ <i>n.</i>	蜜月
phase /feɪz/ <i>n.</i>	阶段
perceive /pə'si:v/ <i>vt.</i>	感觉; 意识到
picturesque /ɪ'pɪktʃə'resk/ <i>adj.</i>	如画的; 生动的
entertaining /ɪentə'teɪnɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	令人愉快的, 有趣的
superficial /su:pə'fɪʃəl, ɪsju:-/ <i>adj.</i>	表面的
appeal /ə'pi:l/ <i>n.</i>	吸引力
partner /'pɑ:tənə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	伙伴, 伴侣
crisis /'kraɪsɪs/ <i>n.</i>	危机
shine /ʃaɪn/ <i>n.</i>	(俚)喜爱; 迷恋
annoying /ə'noɪɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	讨厌的

establish /ɪ'stæblɪʃ/ <i>vt.</i>	建立
unpleasantness /ʌn'plezəntnɪs/ <i>n.</i>	不愉快
realistically /rɪə'lɪstɪkəli/ <i>adv.</i>	现实地;实际地
recovery /rɪ'kʌvəri/ <i>n.</i>	恢复
system /'sɪstəm/ <i>n.</i>	体制,制度
procedure /prə'si:dʒə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	办事惯例;常规
nonverbal /ɪnɒn'vɜ:bl/ <i>adj.</i>	非语言的
mastery /'mɑ:stəri/ <i>n.</i>	熟练,精通
grocery /'grəʊsəri/ <i>n.</i>	(复)食品杂货
currency /'kʌrənsɪ/ <i>n.</i>	货币
unique /ju:'ni:k/ <i>adj.</i>	独特的
aspect /'æspekt/ <i>n.</i>	方面
function /'fʌŋkʃən/ <i>v.</i>	尽职责,起作用
automatically /ɔ:tə'mætɪkəli/ <i>adv.</i>	无意识地,不自觉地
conversion /kən'vɜ:ʃən/ <i>n.</i>	转换,转化
locate /lə(ʊ)'keɪt/ <i>v.</i>	位于
accompany /ə'kʌmpəni/ <i>vt.</i>	伴随
relatively /'relatɪvli/ <i>adv.</i>	相对地
adjust /ə'dʒʌst/ <i>vt.</i>	调整
initial /ɪ'nɪʃl/ <i>adj.</i>	最初的
regard /rɪ'gɑ:d/ <i>n.</i>	看法
adapt /ə'dæpt/ <i>vt.</i>	使适应
original /ə'rɪdʒənəl/ <i>adj.</i>	原来的,最早的
readjust /rɪ:ə'dʒʌst/ <i>vi.</i>	再调整

Proper Names

Kalvero Oberg /'kælvrəu 'əubəg/ 卡尔沃罗·欧博格

Raymond Zeuschner /'reimənd 'zju:stʃnə/ 雷蒙·朱奇纳

Useful Expressions

suffer from	患有, 苦于
take on	获得; 呈现
wear off	逐渐消失
try out	试用; 试行
stick with	遵守
familiar with	熟悉
adjust to	适应
adapt oneself to	适应

Word Study

concern *vt.*

1. 关系到, 影响到; 关于

V + N

While working for government agencies, Carson read a great number of reports that *concerned the harmful effects of* pesticides.

Much of the book *concerns market economy* under socialism.

The future of our country *concerns all of us*.

You should never compromise in matters that *concern sovereignty*. (主权问题不能让步。)

2. 使关注, 有兴趣

be -ed with / about sth. ; V + oneself + with / about sth.

Foreign language students *should concern themselves with* international affairs.

As a student of Arabic (阿拉伯语), he's very much *concerned about* what is happening in the Middle East.

3. 为……操心; 使……操心

V + N; be + -ed + about / with / over; V + oneself + about / with / over

He doesn't want to find himself a job, and it begins *to concern his parents* greatly.

Investors *are much concerned about* the poor performance of the company.

She greatly *concerns herself with* her son's health.

4. Phrases:

as / so far as ... is concerned 就……而言

That was a big decision *as far as my future life was concerned*.

concern *n.* 关系; 担心, 挂念; 关心的事

Phrases:

concern over sb. / sth. 对……表示的关心或忧虑

out of concern for 出于对……的关心

notice *vt. & vi.*

1. 注意到, 觉察到

1) V; V + N

He slipped away when the host *was not noticing*.

The man sat back, and Mr. Budd *noticed his* strong,

well-kept teeth, one of which was filled with gold.

When you visit a foreign country, you *may* first *notice* several superficial differences such as music, food and clothing.

2) V + that clause; V + wh- clause

My mother *noticed that* my head fell backward whenever she tried to feed me.

She was too tired to *notice what* was happening.

3) V + N + do sth. / doing (sth.)

A neighbour *noticed a stranger slipping* out of the building and *getting* into a taxi.

2. 注意;使注意

V + N (常用于被动结构)

The young man said that he had shot at the president *to get himself noticed*.

notice *n.* 注意;通知,通告;公告

Phrases:

at short notice 在短时间之内

bring sth. to sb.'s notice 使某人注意到

come to sb.'s notice 引起某人的注意

take notice of sb. / sth. 注意到,留心到

without notice 没有事先通知

take *vt.*

1. 拿,取

V + N

Miss Winthrop glanced at the detective's face frankly, *took the envelope*, and turned it cautiously in her hand.

Agent X *took the violin* from the wall as calmly as if he were a welcome visitor.

2. 带(往某处)

V + N + prep. phrase; V + N + N

A nurse *took the tired, anxious serviceman to the bedside.*

"Are you *taking me to jail?*" asked the boy.

I *took my grandmother some fruit* when I went to see her last Sunday.

Don't forget *to take a warm coat with you.* It's very cold there.

3. 吃,喝;服用

V + N

I never *take sugar* in my tea.

The patient is too weak *to take solid food.*

The doctor told the patient *to take the tablets* twice a day.

4. 乘坐

V + N

We planned *to take a cab* to Chinatown and have our favorite food and then see a movie.

If you don't want to walk upstairs, you *can take the lift.*

5. 需要,花费

V + N; V (+ N) + N (+ to do sth.)

The journey *took two hours and a half* by train.

It *takes years of practice* to learn English well.

For some people, it may *take several days to readjust* when they return to their original home.

It *takes two to make a quarrel.* (谚语:一个巴掌拍不响。即:两个人才能吵架。)

6. 做

V + N

"I was about *to take a coffee break,*" the druggist said.

"Come with me and have a cup."

He *took a quick look* at his watch, and then sat down, waiting for his turn.

7. 接受; 选择(课程); 对待; 认为

V + N

She decided *to take the job*.

David got this crazy idea of *taking a course* somewhere down south where he could learn to drive a stock-car.

The man at the police headquarters *didn't take Mr. Budd* seriously at first when he demanded to see "somebody very important".

The relatives and friends told my mother I *should be taken* kindly, sympathetically, but not seriously since I was both mentally and physically defective.

In the U. S., it *is taken* as a sign of competence to solve a problem, or fulfill a job successfully, with rapidity.

8. Phrases:

take advantage of sb. / sth. 利用, 占便宜

take ... for ... 视……为……; 误认……为……

take sth. into one's own hands 负起……的责任

take off (飞机等) 起飞

take sb. on 雇用

take sth. on 承担(工作或责任等)

take on 呈现, 显现

take sth. off 脱掉(衣帽等)

take (sth.) over 接管, 接替, 继承

take place 发生

take part in sth. 参加

take sth. for granted 认为……是理所当然的

Notes on the Text

1. **About the text:** 本课课文《文化震荡》由两部分组成,第一部分《原因及症状》选自卡尔·沃罗·欧博格 1960 年发表的《文化震荡以及在新文化环境中的适应过程》(“Culture Shock and the Problem of Adjustment in New Cultural Environments”),第二部分《适应过程中的阶段》选自雷蒙·朱奇纳所著《今日交流》(*Communicating Today*)第 19 章“交流方式的多样化”(“Diversity in Communication”),这一部分实际上是用较为通俗的语言阐述卡尔·沃罗·欧博格文章的后一部分。课文的两部分的思路都非常清晰,使用的是通用的正式文体。

2. **Culture shock might be called an occupational disease of people who have been suddenly transplanted abroad. Like most diseases, it has its own symptoms:** 文化震荡可称为突然移居到国外的某些人的一种职业病。像大多数疾病一样,这种病也有其自身的症状。(文章一开始,开门见山地阐明文化震荡的定义,直接切入主题。)

3. **Culture shock is caused by the anxiety that results from losing all our familiar signs and symbols of social intercourse:** 文化震荡是由因失去社交活动中人们熟悉的标志和信号而引起的忧虑所造成的。(第二段分析引起文化震荡的原因,本段的关键词是 *cues*,即我们得以处理生活中各种情况的信号。没有了这些信号就会产生文化震荡。接着指出这些信号的作用,继而说明它们的具体内容,一环扣一环,深入浅出。)

result from: 由……而引起,又如:

The disease *results from* Vitamin C deficiency.

这种疾病是由维生素 C 不足而引起的。

The police decided that the accident *resulted from* drunk driving.

警察得出结论,这起事故是酒后开车造成的。

Cf. result in: 导致,引起,造成……,如:

The *Evening Messenger* has decided to offer the above reward to any person who gives information which *results in* the arrest of William Strickland.

《晚间信使报》决定向任何一位提供情况能使警方逮捕威廉·斯特里克兰的人颁发上述酬金。

4. **Those signs or cues include the thousand and one ways with which we are familiar in the situation of daily life:** 这些标志和提示包括我们熟悉的日常生活中办事的许许多多方式。

a thousand and one: 许多,又如:

Please don't interrupt. I've got *a thousand and one* things to do this morning.

请不要打搅,我今早有一大堆事要做。

They are trying in *a thousand and one* ways to save their company.

他们正千方百计挽救他们的公司。

— Everyone seems to have *a thousand and one* worries.

人人都好像有不少发愁的事。

— I suppose that's life.

生活就是这样。(即:我们对此要有思想准备,不能回避。)

5. **when to shake hands and what to say when we meet people, when and how to give tips, how to go shopping, when to accept and when to refuse invitations, when to take statements seriously and when not:** 遇到人时何时握手,又该说些什么;什么时候给小费,怎么给;怎样购物;什么时候该接受人家的邀请,什么时候该谢绝;什么情况下应该认真对待别人说的话,什么情况下又应把别人的话看成是开玩笑。(这里作者用了九个 *wh-* + 不定式结构,具体说明日常生活中的种种要处理的情

况。)

6. **These cues, which may be words, gestures, facial expressions, customs, or norms, are acquired by all of us in the course of growing up and are as much a part of our culture as the language we speak or the beliefs we accept:** 这些信号,可能是文字、姿势、面部表情、习俗或规范,在我们成长的过程中逐渐被我们接受,它们和我们使用的语言或我们所接受的信仰一样是我们文化的一部分。(注意这个由 43 个词组成的长句的结构:主语: these cues; 两个并列的谓语动词: are acquired... and are... a part; which may be... 是修饰主语的定语从句; as the language... 是比较从句,修饰 much a part of our culture。)

7. **All of us depend for our peace of mind and our efficiency on hundreds of these cues, often without our conscious awareness:** 我们每个人都是不自觉地依赖这些成百上千的信号来维持心境的平和及办事的效率。

depend on sb. / sth. (for sth.): 依靠, 依赖……而获得……, 又如:

The country *depends on* its oil-rich neighbours *for* its oil supply.

这个国家依靠其石油丰富的邻国供应石油。

The man cannot read and write, and he *depends on* TV and the radio *for* news.

这人不识字,他靠电视机和收音机获取新闻。

This ancient temple *depends on* the contributions from believers *for* its maintenance.

这座古刹靠信徒的进奉来维持。

without our conscious awareness: without our knowing it 在我们自己没有意识到的情况下。

8. **No matter how broad-minded or full of goodwill you may be, a series of props have been knocked from under you, followed by**

a feeling of frustration and anxiety: 无论你的思想如何开通, 无论你的愿望有多好, 支撑你的那些柱子一下子从你的脚下被抽掉, 你就会大有受挫之感与忧虑不安之感。

注意句子的结构: 主句为 *a series of props... under you; no matter how... maybe* 是让步从句; *followed by... and anxiety* 是过去分词作状语, 修饰主句。

介词 *from* 可以与其他介词连用, 又如:

The man pulled a pistol *from under* the pillow.

那人从枕头下面掏出一把手枪。

When I walked into the room, a cat jumped *from behind* the door.

我进屋的时候, 一只猫从门后蹦了出来。

9. in much the same way: 以差不多相同的方式。

much the same: 差不多的情况(可以独立使用, 后面也可跟一名词), 又如:

The two boys are *much the same age*.

这两个男孩子年龄差不多。

The wounded soldier is *much the same* today.

那个受伤的士兵今天情况和以前差不多。

10. When foreigners in a strange land get together to grumble about the host country and its people, you can be sure they are suffering from culture shock: 外国人要是聚集在一起发牢骚, 抱怨

所在国和当地人的种种不是, 那他们肯定是患了文化震荡症。这里 *when* 引出的是条件从句。

grumble (to sb.) about/at/over sb./sth.: *complain (to sb.) about sb./sth. in a bad-tempered way* 抱怨; 发牢骚; 挑剔, 又如:

A lot of students *grumble about* heavy reading assignments.

许多学生发牢骚说阅读量太大。

grumble 后面也可跟 *that* 从句。如:

The immigrants *grumbled that* they were treated as second-class citizens.

移民们抱怨说他们受到二等公民的待遇。

11. **The home environment suddenly takes on a tremendous importance. To the foreigner everything becomes irrationally glorified:** 这时在一个刚到外国的人的心目中,自己国家各方面的情况忽然变得无比重要。对他来说家乡的每一件事都变得不合逻辑地美好了。

take on: begin to have a particular characteristic, quality or appearance 获得;呈现,又如:

Now that it is remodelled, the house *has taken on a new look*.
经过改建,这栋房子的面目焕然一新。

After the invention of the radio, the word "broadcast" *took on a new meaning*.

收音机发明之后“broadcast”一词有了新的含义。

12. **All the difficulties and problems are forgotten and only the good things back home are remembered:** 家乡的一切困难和问题都抛到脑后,留在记忆里的全是美好的事物。

13. **It usually takes a trip home to bring one back to reality:** 只有回国一趟,才能使他们回到现实中来。(即:他们才会全面地看自己的国家,才会重新看到那里的困难和问题。)

it takes / took... to do sth.: 做……需要……, 又如:

It *takes* great courage *to do* the job.

做这工作需要勇气。

It *takes* patience *to work* under a man like my boss.

在我的老板那样的人手下工作是需要忍耐劲儿的。

bring sb. back to reality: make sb. think about the situation as it is, not as he/she would like it to be 使某人看到实际情况而不是想像现实应该是什么情况。

14. **a desire for dependence on long-term residents of one's own**

nationality: 老想依赖在当地定居已久的同胞。

15. **fits of anger over minor frustrations:** 因小小的挫折而时时发火。

16. **Kalvero Oberg describes four stages that people go through when they experience situations that are very different from those to which they are accustomed:** 卡尔沃罗·欧博格描述了人们在与他们所熟悉的情况很不同的环境中所经历的四个阶段。(注意雷蒙·朱奇纳对于引起文化震荡症的环境与卡尔沃罗·欧博格的观点略有不同。后者认为是国外环境〈suddenly transplanted abroad〉,而前者认为只要是与他们所熟悉的环境不同〈不一定是在国外〉,就会引起文化震荡症。这种看法更有普遍意义。另外两人风格也略有不同。欧博格简练,朱奇纳较通俗、具体。)

此句主句是 Kalvero Oberg describes four stages, 句子的其余部分是修饰主句宾语 four stages 的定语从句。此定语从句本身也是个复合句,其中 when 从句修饰 go through, 而 when 从句本身带有两个定语从句: that are different from those 修饰 situations, to which they are accustomed 修饰 those (代表 situations)。

be / get / become accustomed to sth: be / get / become familiar with sth. 习惯……; 熟悉……, 又如:

Soon we all *got accustomed to* Prof. Wang's way of teaching.
很快我们都熟悉了王教授的教法。

Have you become accustomed to life abroad?

你对国外的生活习惯了吗?

17. **the fresh appeal of the new experience keeps you feeling interested and positive:** 生活在一个崭新环境里的新鲜感使你对周围的一切感到新奇、持肯定的态度。

18. **If you are a real tourist, you probably do not stay long enough for this phase to wear off but go on to the next new location or**

experience: 如果你是个观光旅游者,你逗留的时间不会太长,还没有过完这个阶段,你就已经接着到了另一个地方,或是说开始体验另一种文化。

wear (sth.) off: diminish, get less 逐渐消失,又如:

The child's interest in the game soon *wore off*.

那孩子对这个游戏的兴趣很快就消失了。

The effect of the pain-killer *will wear off* in three hours.

这止疼片的效果只有 3 小时。

The thrill of being in Hainan *wore off* when it rained day after day.

一天天地下雨,呆在海南的新鲜劲儿也就没了。

for this phase to wear off 中 for 引出的名词是 wear off 的施动者,即其逻辑主语。

19. **romantic partners:** 恋爱对象。

20. **so that they never get very far away from the honeymoon stage of culture shock. It is very pleasant to travel and to try out and explore whatever is new:** 因此他们总是在进入文化震荡的蜜月阶段不久,就又开始了新的蜜月阶段。旅行是开心的,试验和探索任何新的东西也是愉快的。

这里 so that 从句是结果从句。

try out sth. (on sb.): test or use sb. / sth. in order to to see how good, effective, etc. it is 试验, 又如:

They *tried out* the new medicine *on* dogs.

他们在狗身上试验这种新药。

A number of schools *are trying out* a new approach to teaching.

好几所学校在试验一种新的教学方法。

21. **the crisis stage — in which the shine wears off and day-to-day realities sink in:** 即危机阶段,在这个阶段,美好的印象渐渐消失,你明白了必须面对日常生活中的实际问题。

the shine: 晴天;(喻)美好的事情。

day-to-day realities: 指每天都要面临的现实(如吃饭、购物等)。

sink in: be fully understood or realized 被理会,被理解,又如:

Colin paused, letting the meaning of the words *sink in*.

科林停了一下,以便大家充分理解这番话的意思。

I said hello in quite a few yards before the message *sank in* that this wasn't the thing to do.

我在好几家的院子里主动向主人打招呼之后,才明白过来他们是不愿与清洁工人打招呼的。

22. **In a relationship, you notice annoying habits:** 在与你的恋爱对象的关系方面,你注意到了令人讨厌的习惯。

23. **in a new country, you find barriers to establishing connections or to learning the language beyond a few polite phrases:** 在新到的国家里,你发现与他人建立联系时有重重障碍,你还会发现除了说几句客套话之外,学习当地语言也不容易。

两个 to + 动名词短语都修饰 barriers。

barriers to (doing) sth. : (做)某事的障碍。

beyond: apart from 除……之外。

24. **if you stick with the experience and try to deal with it realistically:** 如果你坚持下去,并且脚踏实地地处理种种不愉快的情况。

stick with sb. / sth. : (口语)继续做;继续支持,又如:

I'll stick with my idea no matter what you say.

不管你怎么说,我坚持我的看法。

25. **In recovery, you learn the systems, procedures, language, or nonverbal behaviors of the new environment so that you can cope with it on the basis of some mastery, competence, and comfort:** 在调整阶段,你去了解新环境的制度、办事的程序、语言或非语言的行为举止等;基本掌握之后,你就能处理各种问题了,也感到自如了。

nonverbal behavior 或 body language 指的是借以表达思想、态度、感情的动作、姿势、面部表情、眼神及与人交谈时应保持的距离等。肢体行为或形体语言是人们交流思想、表达感情的重要手段。不同的民族有不同的形体语言,同一动作在不同的民族中完全可能表示相反的意思,因此新到一个地方,必须了解该地居民的形体语言,否则会引起误会,甚至引起麻烦。学习外语也要了解该语言人的形体语言。

这里 so that 从句表示结果。

on the basis of: because of a particular fact or situation 由于,基于(某一事实或情况),又如:

He's recently been made public relations manager *on the basis of* his performance.

基于他不凡的业绩,他最近被任命为公关部经理。

26. **I began to feel familiar with traveling by "tube":** 我开始熟悉了乘“管道”。(英国人形象地把地铁称为“管道”,美国人刚到时不习惯。)

27. **using some phrases that are unique to English people:** (我也学会了)使用英国人特有的一些短语。

这一部分上接 feel familiar with, 与 traveling, shopping, paying, buying 等平行。

28. **I had the advantage of speaking the same basic language and of sharing a great deal with the English in some broad, cultural aspects:** 我的优势是与英国人说的是基本相同的语言,在广义的文化渊源方面也与他们有许多共同之处。

of speaking... 和 of sharing... 是两个平行的介词短语,修饰 the advantage。

29. **Finally, the fourth, or adjustment, phase occurs when you feel that you function well and almost automatically in the new culture:** 最后,在新的文化环境中你一切运转良好,近乎自如,这时你已进入第四个阶段,即适应阶段。

30. **You no longer need to make mental conversions of the country's money; you know where services are located and how to use them; you understand some of the customs that accompany ordinary life, and it is relatively easy for you to adjust to them:** 你再也不需要时时在脑子里把当地的货币换算成你自己国家的货币,你知道服务性机构的地点及怎样使用服务设施,你也进一步了解日常生活中的一些习俗,适应这些习俗对你来说相对容易。

make mental conversions of the country's money: 刚到国外时,凡涉及价钱,人们往往通过心算看看折合成自己国家的货币是多少钱,从而决定此价是高还是低。

31. **you may regain some of the initial positive regard you had in the honeymoon stage:** 你在蜜月阶段最初形成的美好印象可能会恢复几分。

32. **If you stay long enough on a visit from a big city to a small town, or, the other way round:** 如果你从大城市到小城市,或是反过来从小城市到大城市,呆的时间较长。

the other way round: (副词性短语)反过来也一样,反之亦然。
另一说法是 *vice versa*, 又如:

We help them when they have difficulties and *vice versa*.

他们有困难时我们帮助他们,反过来我们有困难时他们也帮助我们。

Thousands of people came to the gathering, husband accompanying wife, or *the other way round*.

成千上万的人参加了这次聚会,丈夫陪妻子来,或是妻子陪丈夫来。

33. **you may become so well adapted to the new environment that when you return to your original home, you will again experience culture shock:** 你有可能完全适应了新的环境,当你回国后你甚至会再次受到文化震荡。

become adapted to sth. / adapt (oneself) to sth.: become adjusted to new conditions, etc. 适应了……, 又如:

The old lady quickly *adapted herself to* life in the city.

那老太太很快就适应了城市的生活。

Your success at college partly depends on how well you *can adapt yourself to* the new environment.

在大学能否成功部分取决于你适应新环境的情况。

It took him half a year *to become adapted to* working at night.
他用了半年的时间才适应了夜间工作。

34. **For some people, it may take several days to readjust, depending on the length of time they were away:** 有些人可能要花上几天的时间来重新适应一切, 需要多长时间与他们离开的时间长短有关。
35. **Usually, however, since you are in your home culture, your shock wears off faster than the shock that you experienced in the new culture:** 不过, 因为你是回到了自己原来所属的文化环境之中, 这种震荡一般要比你在另一种文化所受的震荡消失得快。

Work on the Text

1. Answer these questions.

- 1) What is culture shock? Why does Oberg call it an occupational disease?
- 2) What is culture shock caused by?
- 3) Why do people feel anxiety in a strange culture? Why don't they have such anxiety at home?
- 4) What are the major symptoms of culture shock? How do those suffering from this disease feel about the host country?

How do they feel about their own country?

- 5) What are the minor symptoms?
- 6) What stages do people usually go through in a new environment?
- 7) Why is the first stage called the honeymoon phase? How does a person feel about a new environment in this stage?
- 8) What problems does a person have in the stage of crisis? Give examples to show that in different cases, the major problems are different.
- 9) How could a person successfully move onto the recovery stage? What does he learn about the new culture in this stage?
- 10) What are the signs which show that a person has adjusted to the new environment?
- 11) Why do some people experience culture shock again when they return to their original home?
- 12) How long does it take to readjust?

2. Look up the following words in an English-English dictionary before looking at the Word List. (You have to decide their part of speech first.)

prop (Para. 3) glorify (Para. 3) bedding (Para. 4) fit (Para. 4)
affect (Para. 5) phase (Para. 7) nonverbal (Para. 9)

3. Paraphrase.

- 1) It usually takes a trip home to bring one back to reality. (Para. 3)
- 2) Although not common, there are individuals who cannot live in foreign countries. (Para. 5)
- 3) ... the crisis stage in which the shine wears off and

day-to-day realities sink in. (Para. 8)

- 4) ... so that you can cope with it on the basis of some mastery, competence, and comfort. (Para. 9)
- 5) You no longer need to make mental conversions of the country's money... (Para. 10)
- 6) ... you may regain some of the initial positive regard you had in the honeymoon stage. (Para. 10)

4. Discuss or speak on the following topics.

- 1) What is the dictionary definition of culture shock? How would you describe culture shock in a broad sense?
- 2) Have you ever experienced culture shock? What were the symptoms? Did you finally adjust to the new environment? Did you go through the four stages of adjustment?

5. Translate the following passage into English.

留学对年轻人来说具有很大的吸引力。留学确实是一种崭新的经历,给我们提供了发现新事物的机会。但是我们也必须对可能会面临的问题有所思想准备。由于社会制度、信仰、价值观以及生活方式的不同,我们可能会受到文化震荡的困扰,难以适应新的环境。

我们通常要经历四个阶段才能习惯新的地方。这四个阶段是:蜜月阶段、危机阶段、调整阶段以及适应阶段。刚到国外的时候,我们会感到很兴奋,一切事情看起来都很奇妙。可是进入第二阶段以后,开始觉得事情并非原来想的那样好,我们就开始想家,而且有想放弃的危险。不过,只要我们坚持下去,就会克服这种震荡,适应并最终得益于这种新的文化。

Vocabulary Exercises

1. Complete the following sentences with words formed in the same way as the examples show, making changes in the spelling wherever necessary.

Examples:

nonsense 废话 non-existent 不存在的
non-smoker 不吸烟的人 non-alcoholic 不含酒精的
non-fiction (记实性的) 散文文学
non-standard 非标准
(non- + 名词/形容词/副词 → 复合名词/形容词/副词)

interference iron payment verbal violence

- 1) China pursues a strict policy of _____ in the internal affairs of other countries.
- 2) He was taken to court for _____ of taxes.
- 3) Gandhi was famous for his _____ and negotiation policy.
- 4) Body language is a form of _____ communication.
- 5) The _____ shirt cost me one hundred and fifty yuan.

2. Translate the following sentences into English.

- 1) Use the verb + noun or adj. + noun collocation.

移植器官 接受邀请 拒绝邀请 认真看待 建立关系
坚持原则 更换恋人 兑换钱币 社交约会 良好看法
面部表情 职业病 违约

- 2) Use the "useful expressions".

- (1) 医生说病人的病源于孤独和压抑。
- (2) 自从中国实施改革开放政策以来,这个城市的面貌焕然一新。

- (3) 萨拉对 18 世纪的西班牙音乐并不熟悉。
- (4) 感受文化震荡的外国人常常采取与世隔绝的态度。
- (5) 在头几个月,许多新生难以适应大学生活。
- (6) 芳芳上个月才到达澳大利亚,已经很快适应了新的环境。
- (7) 在试验中,马丁严格遵守导师定下的规则。
- (8) 只要你努力工作,虚心向别人学习,新上任的压力会逐步消除的。
- (9) 生物学家决定试用那套昂贵的设备。

3) Use *concern*, *notice* and *take*.

- (1) 我注意到她从国外回来以后举止有了很大的改进。
- (2) 第二个问题与孩子们的安全有直接关系。必须立即解决。
- (3) 你注意到林教授的新套服没有? 穿上这套衣服他看起来很帅吧?
- (4) 我想我会接受你的劝告,尽快去看医生。
- (5) 越来越多的中国人关心环保问题。
- (6) 她受伤的那条腿疼得厉害,她只好吃了一片止疼药 (pain-killer)。
- (7) 我看见他匆匆地离开了晚会。
- (8) 为了能在早上 8 点之前到达办公室,他只好乘出租车。
- (9) 你有没有注意小王是什么时候离开的?
- (10) 奥林匹克运动会每 4 年举行一次。
- (11) 带上伞,天看起来要下雨。
- (12) 修理这台电视机花了他两个小时的时间。

3. Complete the following sentences.

1) Put suitable prepositions or proverbs in the blanks.

- (1) It took her a whole year to adapt _____ the life style there.

- (2) They were very critical tourists. During their tour, some complained _____ the weather and others grumbled _____ the food.
- (3) At the dinner party, he didn't touch any sea food, believing it would result _____ high blood pressure.
- (4) The world is watching how Russia will react _____ the crisis.
- (5) He had problem translating a book on the information superhighway, and he depended a lot _____ an electronic dictionary for technical terms.
- (6) Laziness is one of the biggest barriers _____ success.
- (7) He is very concerned _____ his son's life at college because the latter has trouble getting accustomed _____ his new environment.
- (8) Life has taken _____ new meaning for the couple since the arrival of their child.
- (9) The Foreign Ministry spokesman repeated the last remark to make the message sink _____.
- (10) The problem has to be dealt _____ by joint efforts _____ the basis of mutual trust and respect.
- (11) If you have taken advantage _____ others to make money, you may have a guilty conscience.
- (12) Nobody can get everything ready _____ such short notice.
- (13) His report brought an important matter _____ our notice.
- (14) The old lady took a 100-yuan note _____ a 10-yuan one, but the shopkeeper gave her the right change.

(15) He came _____ my notice when he was speaking at a conference.

2) Choose the correct word from the brackets, putting the verbs in the correct form.

(1) We will feel hurt if friends let us down or _____ us. (refuse, reject)

(2) They still haven't _____ to my letter. (react, respond)

(3) We've had a _____ amount of rain recently. (huge, tremendous)

(4) Will the strike _____ the price of coal? (affect, effect)

(5) After she'd got over her _____ shyness, she became very friendly. (original, initial)

4. Choose the best word for each blank.

The meaning of time differs in different parts of the world. In the United States, it is not (1) _____ (customary, habitual, regular, usual) to telephone very early in the morning. If you telephone a person early in the day, while he is shaving (2) _____ (and, as well as, or, while) having breakfast, the time of the call shows that the matter is very important and requires (3) _____ (close, direct, immediate, quick) attention. The same meaning is attached (4) _____ (in, on, to, with) telephone calls made after 11 p. m. If someone receives a call (5) _____ (during, for, on, throughout) sleeping hours, he assumes it is a(n) (6) _____ (affair, happening, matter, thing) of life or death. The time chosen for the call (7) _____ (communicates, includes, means, proves) its importance.

In social life, time also (8) _____ (contains, has, occupies, plays) a very important part. Guests may feel they are not highly (9) _____ (decided, praised, regarded, thought) if the invitation to a dinner party is (10) _____ (collected, extended, gathered, provided) only three or four days before the party date. But this is not true in all countries. In other areas of the world, it may be considered foolish to make an appointment too far (11) _____ (by, in, on, to) advance because plans which are made for a date more than a week away (12) _____ (easy, intend, likely, tend) to be forgotten.

Grammar & Usage

Rhetorical Questions & Ellipsis

1. 修辞性疑问句

是用疑问句的形式表达说话人态度、感情而无需回答的疑问句。

1) 形式

(1) 一般疑问句的肯定形式(起否定陈述句的作用)

Do you think you have the right to talk to me like that? (你觉得你有权利跟我这样说话? 意思是你无权这么做。)

Is that the reason for going there alone? (这就是你单独去那儿的理由吗? 意思是这不能成为理由。)

(2) 一般疑问句的否定形式(起肯定陈述句的作用)

Don't you want to know what it is? (难道你就不想知道这是什么东西吗? 意思是你肯定想知道。)

Haven't you had enough of her complaints? (你还没受够她的抱怨吗? 意思是你已经受够了。)

(3) 特殊疑问句的肯定形式(相当于否定的陈述句)

Now that you've got a well-paid job, what else do you want? (你还要什么? 意思是你不应该再要求别的什么了。)

What difference does it make? (那有什么区别? 意思是没有区别。)

What's there to be afraid of? (有什么好怕的? 意思是完全不必害怕。)

(4) 特殊疑问句的否定形式(相当于肯定的陈述句)

Who doesn't know? (谁不知道? 意思是谁知道了。)

Why don't you quit? You can't hold out! (你为什么不要手? 你不可能坚持到底的!)

2) 用法

(1) 表示惊讶、感叹

Don't you love your own parents? (你难道不爱自己的父母吗?)

Isn't that a lovely park? (那公园真美!)

Isn't that a silly thing to do? (那么做太愚蠢了!)

(2) 表示愤怒

How dare you speak to me like that? (你居然跟我这样说话, 太不像话了!)

Why don't you shut up? (你给我闭嘴!)

(3) 表示建议或委婉的批评、责备

Why don't we have lunch in an eating place around here?

Can't you come a bit early next time?

(4) 表示邀请

Won't you sit down and have a cup of tea?

Why don't you come in and have a look?

Why don't you go to the Summer Palace with us?

用修辞性疑问句表达以上态度和感情时语气比一般陈述句要强烈。

2. 句子结构的省略

英语句子的某些成分在一定的情况下可以省略，如祈使句省略主语，比较从句省略谓语、宾语等。这里着重归纳并列句和复合句中的省略。

1) 并列句中的省略

一般说来，第二个并列从句中与第一个并列从句相同的成分通常都可省略。

My sister likes music and I (like) painting. (省略谓语)

People there will go sailing in summer and (they will go) skiing in winter. (省略主语、谓语)

Their suggestion made John happy, but (their suggestion made) Mary miserable. (省略主语、谓语)

He won an Oscar Award (奥斯卡奖) in 1976 and his wife (won an Oscar Award) in 1977. (省略谓语、宾语)

He tried to teach the bird some English, but (he did) not (teach the creature the language) very successfully at first. (省略主语、谓语、宾语)

2) 复合句中的省略

省略如果出现在主句，则多出现在句首。

(It is) No wonder she speaks such good Chinese.

(I am) Sorry to have kept you waiting.

(It's) Too bad she doesn't know anything about computers.

(You'd) Better stay where you are.

(It's a) Pity I can't go with you.

复合句中的省略多出现在状语从句中。

I'm happy as long as you are (happy).

You'll have to wash the dishes today because I won't
(wash the dishes).

Lend me some magazines as you have plenty (of maga-
zines).

If (it is) necessary, I can explain this to him.

- 3) 复合句中若有两个以上的宾语从句,则从第二个宾语从句开始 that 不能省略。

He told me (that) he enjoyed the concert very much and
that he would like to meet the conductor.

Everybody can see (that) this is an important issue and
that they cannot afford to overlook it.

- 4) 缩略状语从句

如果主句和从句的主语一致,状语从句可以省略主语以及
谓语的一部分。

When I finished, he waited as if (he was / were) expect-
ing more.

An elderly man collapsed while (he was) crossing the
street.

While (he was) recovering from his operation, David re-
newed an old interest in stock-car racing.

When (they are) ripe, the tomatoes taste delicious.

Exercises

1. Rewrite the following sentences, omitting whatever can be omitted without change of meaning.

- 1) His humour and his generosity made him a very popular man.
- 2) The tree is green both in very hot seasons and in very cold seasons.
- 3) The meat and vegetables are cut up in small pieces and they are served hot.
- 4) He said he would write me a letter soon but I don't think he will write me a letter soon.
- 5) Are you from the north of China or are you from the south of China?
- 6) He is quite satisfied with his examination result but his parents are not quite satisfied with his examination result.
- 7) After you finish the first chapter of the book, go on to read the second chapter of the book.
- 8) If it is necessary for me to stay here, then I'll stay here.
- 9) He said he was the cleverest person in the world. But everybody knows he is not the cleverest person in the world.
- 10) While he was reading the newspaper, Bob came across a strange ad.
- 11) The old man's lips moved as if he was anxious to say something.

2. Rewrite the following paragraph, omitting whatever can be omitted without change of meaning.

Dr. Albert Einstein was one of the greatest scientists of all

time, but his response to life was simple and his response to life was direct. Once when he was caught in pouring rain, he took off his hat and put it under his coat. When he was asked why he had put his hat under his coat, he simply replied that the rain would damage his hat but the rain couldn't hurt his hair. Another time he appeared in slacks (宽松长裤), a sweater, and tennis shoes at a party which was given to honour a distinguished guest. He did not mean to be disrespectful to his host or to be disrespectful to the honoured guest, for he was a very kindly person. He just didn't think the way a person dressed was important.

3. Translate the following sentences into English.

- 1) 有什么可担心的? 我们有足够的粮食和水。
- 2) 谁不知道大名鼎鼎的吉姆老爷?
- 3) 你不能再检查一遍你的试卷吗?
- 4) 难道你没听说吗? 乔治已经考上大学了。
- 5) 你没去过北京图书馆? 我真不相信!
- 6) ——你不想进来喝杯茶吗?
——谢谢。
- 7) ——要是他愿去,我能有什么办法?
——当然,你不能强迫他。
- 8) ——难道雨还没停? 已经下了 3 个小时了。
——看样子要下个没完。
- 9) 事情既然已经发生了,哭有什么用?
- 10) 难道你还不明白他的意图吗?

4. Complete these sentences with the correct form of the verbs given in the brackets (revision: tenses and voices).

- 1) I _____ (sit) in the concert listening to Bach's music this

time tomorrow evening.

- 2) It's the first time I _____ (have) to deal with this particular aspect of grammar.
- 3) I _____ (work) for two hours when he called.
- 4) Copernicus proved that the earth _____ (be) round.
- 5) I thought you _____ (not come) back yet.
- 6) Light _____ (travel) faster than sound.
- 7) The manager wants to know if they _____ (obtain) any contract yet.
- 8) As I _____ (cross) the street I stepped on a banana peel and fell heavily to the ground.
- 9) You must water these plants. Look, they _____ (die).
- 10) It _____ (get) dark and the street lights will be on in a few minutes.

Quotations for the Lesson

The wise man does no wrong in changing his habits
with the times.

Dionysius Cato

Blessed is the man who has discovered that there
is nothing permanent in life but change.

A. P. Gouthey

Lesson Seven

Text

The Model Millionaire (I)

Oscar Wilde

一个虽有英俊的相貌与潇洒的风度但没有钱的小伙子,在普遍认为漂亮不如有钱的伦敦社会,有资格谈情说爱吗?他能得到姑娘们的青睐吗?休吉就是这样一位青年,偏偏有一位美丽的姑娘愿意嫁给他。未来的老丈人对小伙子也颇为欣赏。但是若论及婚嫁,先得拿出1万英镑。对此这个性格开朗的年轻人是一筹莫展,到哪里去筹这笔巨款?那天在朋友的画室里,一个衣衫褴褛、满脸愁容的老模特打动了他的心。自己虽穷,但他仍然可怜比他更穷的人,他毫不犹豫地把兜里唯一的一个英镑悄悄地送给了那可可怜的老头。

1 Unless one is wealthy there is no use in being a charming fellow. Romance is the privilege of the rich, not the profession of the unemployed. The poor should be practical and ordinary. It is better to have a permanent income than to be attractive. These are the great truths of modern life which Hughie Erskine never realised. Poor Hughie! Intellectually, we must admit, he was not of much importance. He never said a clever or even an ill-natured thing in his life. But then he was wonderfully good-looking, with his brown hair, his clear-cut face, and his grey eyes. He was as popular with men as he

was with women, and he had every quality except that of making money. His father, on his death, had left him his sword and a history of a particular war in fifteen volumes. Hughie hung the first over his looking-glass, put the second on a shelf, and he lived on two hundred pounds a year that an old aunt allowed him. He had tried everything. He had gone on the Stock Exchange for six months; but what was a butterfly to do among bulls and bears? He had been a tea merchant for a little longer, but he had soon tired of that. Then he had tried selling dry sherry. That did not answer; the sherry was a little too dry. At last he became nothing, a delightful, useless young man with a perfect face and no profession.

2 To make matters worse, he was in love. The girl he loved was Laura Merton, the daughter of a former army officer who had lost his temper and his health in India, and never found either of them again. Laura loved him and he was ready to kiss her shoestrings. They were the handsomest couple in London, and had not a penny between them. Her father was very fond of Hughie, but would not hear of any engagement.

3 "Come to me, my boy, when you have got ten thousand pounds of your own, and we will see about it," he used to say; and Hughie looked very miserable in those days, and had to go to Laura for comfort.

4 One morning, as he was on his way to Holland Park, where the Mertons lived, he dropped in to see a great friend of his, Alan Trevor. Trevor was a painter. Indeed, few people are not nowadays. But he was also an artist, and artists are rather rare. Personally he was a strange, rough fellow, with a freckled face and red, rough beard. However, when he took up the brush he was a real master, and his pictures were eagerly sought after. He had been very much attracted by Hughie at first, it must be admitted, entirely on account of his

personal charm. "The only people a painter should know," he used to say, "are people who are beautiful, people who are an artistic pleasure to look at, and restful to talk to. Men who are well-dressed and women who are lovely rule the world — at least they should do so." However, after he got to know Hughie better, he liked him quite as much for his bright, cheerful spirits, and his generous, careless nature, and had asked him to come to his studio whenever he liked.

5 When Hughie came in he found Trevor putting the finishing touches to a wonderful life-size picture of a beggar-man. The beggar himself was standing on a raised platform in a corner of the room. He was a wizened old man with a wrinkled face and a sad expression. Over his shoulder was thrown a rough brown coat, all torn and full of holes; his thick boots were old and patched; and with one hand he leant on a rough stick, while with the other he held out his battered hat for money.

6 "What an amazing model!" whispered Hughie, as he shook hands with his friend.

7 "An amazing model?" shouted Trevor at the top of his voice; "I should think so! Such beggars are not met with every day. Good heavens! What a picture Rembrandt would have made of him!"

8 "Poor old fellow!" said Hughie, "How miserable he looks! But I suppose, to you painters, his face is valuable."

9 "Certainly," replied Trevor, "you don't want a beggar to look happy, do you?"

10 "How much does a model get for sitting?" asked Hughie, as he found himself a comfortable seat.

11 "A shilling an hour."

12 "And how much do you get for your picture, Alan?"

13 "Oh, for this I get two thousand."

14 "Pounds?"

- 15 "Guineas. Painters, poets, and doctors always get guineas."
- 16 "Well, I think the model should have a percentage," cried Hughie, laughing; "they work quite as hard as you do."
- 17 "Nonsense, nonsense! Why, look at the trouble of laying on the paint alone, and standing all day in front of the picture! It's easy, Hughie, for you to talk, but I tell you that there are moments when art almost reaches the importance of manual work. But you mustn't talk; I'm very busy. Smoke a cigarette, and keep quiet."
- 18 After some time the servant came in, and told Trevor that the frame-maker wanted to speak to him.
- 19 "Don't run away, Hughie," he said, as he went out, "I will be back in a moment."
- 20 The old beggar-man took advantage of Trevor's absence to rest for a moment on a wooden seat that was behind him. He looked so miserable that Hughie pitied him, and felt in his pockets to see what money he had. All he could find was a pound and some pennies. "Poor old fellow," he thought to himself, "he wants it more than I do, but I shan't have much money myself for a week or two"; and he walked across the studio and slipped the pound into the beggar's hand.
- 21 The old man startled, and a faint smile passed across his lips. "Thank you, sir," he said, "thank you."
- 22 Then Trevor arrived, and Hughie left, blushing a little at what he had done. He spent the day with Laura, was charmingly blamed for giving away a pound, and had to walk home.

Word List

millionaire /ˌmɪljəˈneə(r)/ *n.* 百万富翁

wealthy /'welθɪ/ <i>adj.</i>	富有的
romance /rə(ʊ)'mæns/ <i>n.</i>	浪漫故事
profession /prə'feʃən/ <i>n.</i>	职业
unemployed /ˌʌnɪm'plɔɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	失业的
permanent /'pɜ:mənənt/ <i>adj.</i>	永久的; 固定的
attractive /ə'træktɪv/ <i>adj.</i>	有吸引力的
ill-natured /ɪl'neɪtʃəd/ <i>adj.</i>	脾气坏的
wonderfully /'wʌndəfʊli/ <i>adv.</i>	令人惊叹地, 极其
good-looking /gʊd'lʊkɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	好看的, 漂亮的
clear-cut /ˌkliː'kʌt/ <i>adj.</i>	轮廓分明的, 清晰的
sword /sɔ:d/ <i>n.</i>	剑
volume /'vɒljʊ:m/ <i>n.</i>	卷; 册
looking-glass /'lʊkɪŋɡlɑ:s/ <i>n.</i>	镜子
stock /stɒk/ <i>n.</i>	股票; 股份
exchange /ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ/ <i>n.</i>	交易; 交易所
butterfly /'bʌtəflaɪ/ <i>n.</i>	蝴蝶; 时髦的人; 见异思迁的 人
sherry /'ʃerɪ/ <i>n.</i>	雪利酒
delightful /dɪ'laɪtful(ʊ)l/ <i>adj.</i>	令人愉快的, 可爱的
engagement /ɪn'geɪdʒmənt/ <i>n.</i>	订婚
rare /reə(r)/ <i>adj.</i>	罕见的, 稀少的
freckled /'frekəld/ <i>adj.</i>	长雀斑的
brush /brʌʃ/ <i>n.</i>	画笔
eagerly /'i:gəli/ <i>adv.</i>	热切地
artistic /ɑ:'tɪstɪk/ <i>adj.</i>	艺术的
restful /'restfəl/ <i>adj.</i>	平静的
well-dressed /ˌwel'drest/ <i>adj.</i>	衣着讲究的
finishing /'fɪnɪʃɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	最后的, 结束的
touch /tʌtʃ/ <i>n.</i>	(最后修饰的)一笔, 笔画
life-size /ˌlaɪf'saɪz/ <i>adj.</i>	与真人一样大小的

beggar-man /'begəməɪn/ <i>n.</i>	男乞丐
beggar /'begə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	乞丐
wizened /'wɪznd/ <i>adj.</i>	干瘪的; 干枯的
wrinkled /'rɪŋkəld/ <i>adj.</i>	布满皱纹的
patched /'pætʃɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	打补丁的
battered /'bætəd/ <i>adj.</i>	破的
astonishing /ə'stɒnɪʃɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	令人惊讶的
shilling /'ʃɪlɪŋ/ <i>n.</i>	先令
guinea /'ɡɪni/ <i>n.</i>	几尼(等于 1.05 英镑的币值单位); 1663—1812 年英国发行的一种金币
manual /'mænjuəl/ <i>adj.</i>	手工的
pity /'pɪti/ <i>vt.</i>	怜悯, 同情
studio /'stjuːdiəʊ/ <i>n.</i>	画室; 照相馆; 电影制片厂
slip /slɪp/ <i>vt.</i>	悄悄放入
startle /'stɑːtl/ <i>v.</i>	吃惊; 惊愕
blushing /'blʌʃɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	脸红

Proper Names

Oscar Wilde /'ɒskə(r) 'waɪld/	奥斯卡·王尔德
Hughie Erskine /'hjuːɪ 'ɜːskɪn/	休吉·厄斯金
Laura Merton /'lɔːrə 'mɜːtən/	劳拉·默顿
Holland Park /'hɒlənd 'pɑːk/	荷兰公园
Alan Trevor /'ælən 'trevə(r)/	艾伦·特里沃
Rembrandt /'rembrənt/	伦勃朗

Useful Expressions

be popular with	受欢迎
be tired of	厌倦
on account of	因为
give away	捐献
go to sb.	求助于
live on	靠……充饥
be sought after	受欢迎
wouldn't hear of	反对
see about sth.	考虑
blame... for	归咎于

Word Study

find *vt. & vi.* (一般不用于进行式)

1. (偶然) 发现, 看到

V + N; V + N + adj. / prep. phrase. ; V + N + doing

The girl *found a purse* on her way to school and handed it to a policeman.

The man woke up cold and sick, and *found himself lost*.

He was very surprised to *find himself in hospital*.

They found *the young Marine wading* through some marshes in a military exercise.

When Hughie came in, he *found Trevor putting the finishing touches* to a wonderful life-size picture of a beggar-man.

2. (经过努力) 找到, 发现

1) V + N; V + N + N; V + N + for + N; V + N + adj.

They examined his bed and *found food* under his

blanket.

When Andersen arrived in Copenhagen, he went to see as
many important people as he could *find*.

Hughie *found himself a comfortable seat* and sat down.

No sure cure for AIDS has been found yet.

2) V + that clause

Jim *found that* chemical treatment couldn't reduce his
pain.

3. 发觉,感到

V + N (+ to be) + N / adj. ; V + that clause

I find her easy to get on with.

You could tell from their faces and their eyes that they *found*
the joke funny.

Those coming from lands where time is looked upon differently
may *find the pace of life* in the U. S. *to be one of their*
difficult adjustments in both business and daily life.

I find that the book is not as good as we expected.

4. 设法找到(时间或金钱等)

V + N

They managed *to find enough money* for the project.

How did you *find time* to read so much?

5. Phrases:

find sth. out (经过研究或努力)发现,查出,找出

find sb. out 发现某人做错事、说谎等

find oneself 发现自己的天赋、真实的能力、性格或愿望等

find one's way (to ...) 发现(到某处的)途径

talk *vt. & vi.*

1. 讲,说,说话

V

Tracy's mother Cory knew from the way the doctors *talked* that there was little hope.

2. (与某人)谈论(某事), 交谈, 讨论

V; V + N; V(+ to / with + sb.) + about / on + N

They *talked* for an hour, and not once did anyone speak of the reason for the German's visit.

They *talked about fiddle tunes and the fiddlers* that Pappy and the old man had known here.

On the night of December 8, 1992, Tracy got off work and stood in the pizza shop's parking lot *talking to friends*.

3. (用某种语言)说

V + N

She *talks French* at work to communicate with her French boss.

4. Phrases:

talk business 谈公事, 正事

talk nonsense 胡说八道

talk sb. into doing sth. 说服某人做某事

talk sb. out of doing sth. 说服某人不做某事

talk sth. over with sb. 与某人商量某事

talk of (doing) sth. 谈到, 谈论

talk *n.* 讲演; 交谈; 会谈; 谈论

get *vt. & vi.*

1. 得到, 获得, 取

V + N; V + N + N; V + N + for + N

"Do you need someone to go to the store to *get milk or something?*" asked the boy.

The detective went to a desk, addressed an envelope, *got a sheet of paper* and placed it inside, and sealed the envelope.

When Bob reached Inspector Hamelin's office, the police had already *got the information*.

Before the druggist had *quite* finished his long story, the coffee pot had finished its task and the druggist briefly interrupted *to get the coffee for them*.

He said, "Wait a moment. I'll *get you paper and a pen*."

2. 到达, 抵达

V; V + to + N

While the nurse did what she had to do, the Marine smoked a cigarette — his first since he *got to the hospital*.

When she *got to the door*, she dragged the boy inside, down a hall and into a room at the back of the house.

City people appear always to be hurrying *to get* where they are going, restlessly seeking attention in a store, elbowing others as they try to complete their errands.

3. 使……变换位置

V (+ N) + prep. phrase /adv.

The director asked him *to get off the stage*.

After a while, she *got up* and opened the door.

Every morning, as Cory *gets in her car* for work, she says good morning to Tracy.

He *got a dictionary down* from the bookshelf to look up a word.

4. 变得, 使……成为, 变得

V (+ N) + adj. / -ed

It's *getting late*. I'm afraid I must be leaving.

A reserved person is one who seldom *gets excited*.

They *get the curtains washed* once a month.

He *couldn't get his car started*, and so had to go to work by bus.

The woman reminded her son *not to get his trousers dirty*.

5. 使……做……,使……发生

V + N + to do sth.; V + N + doing sth.

Mother tried without success *to get me to repeat the names of the different animals and flowers in the pictures*.

Can you *get the machine working* properly?

6. Phrases:

get into an argument with sb. 与某人争吵

get off (the bus, train, etc.) 下(车等)

get on (the bus, train, etc.) 登上(汽车等)

get on (with sb.) (和某人)相处融洽

get on (with sth.) 继续(做……)

get rid of sb. / sth. 消灭,摆脱,除掉

Notes on the Text

1. **About the author:** 奥斯卡·王尔德(1854—1900), 英国作家、诗人,他提倡“为艺术而艺术”,是 19 世纪英国唯美主义的主要代表人物。王尔德认为“艺术家是美丽事物的创造者”,文学作品无所谓道德不道德,只有写得好坏之分。这种唯美主义的观点是针对“为金钱而艺术”的观点提出来的。他强调艺术的纯粹,认为思想和语言均为艺术的工具,善与恶都是艺术家的素材。他的这种艺术观点反映了 19 世纪末的颓废风气,后来随着王尔德等代表人的去世而衰落。王尔德追求形式、结构上的新奇,作品多以严谨、机智、巧妙取胜,他的主要作品有童话《快乐王子集》、喜剧《认真的重要》、《少奶奶的扇子》和长篇小说《道林·格雷的肖像》等。

2. **About the text:** 《模范富翁》是王尔德著名的短篇小说,篇幅不长,却体现了他的艺术观及他的作品严谨、机智和巧妙的风格。

课文在基本不损害原文的风格的原则下经过适量的简化。本课课文大体可分为两部分：

- 1) 前五段以第三人称的叙述者直接介绍三个人物,从外貌到性格或观点,不时还夹杂着叙述者对人物或时世风趣的评论。读这一部分时我们要注意字里行间的含义以及作者借介绍人物对时尚的挖苦。在写作技巧方面,王尔德的文字干净利落,决无废话;类似的经历用不同的方式表达,决无枯燥之感;他还常常使用修辞学中的反差(对照法),用 and, or 或 but 把风马牛不相及或意思相反的词、短语或事实捏在一起,或以巧取胜,或形成鲜明的对比。
- 2) 后一部分的篇幅以对话为主,让人物把自己直接展现在读者的面前,进一步介绍人物的观点或性格。

课文的句子结构并不复杂,也无许多长句,学生的注意力应放在句子的含义以及用词的巧妙之上。

3. **Unless one is wealthy there is no use in being a charming fellow:**

一个人要是没有钱,仅有魅力毫无用处。

小说的一开头的三句话是故事的叙述者认为的真理(当然是反语),所以用的是一般现在时,同时这既是针对主人公休吉·厄斯金而言,也是作者对时世的委婉的讽刺。接着第四句话就指出休吉从来就不明白现代生活的这些道理。

there / it is no use /good (in) doing sth.: 做……是没有用的。

4. **Romance is the privilege of the rich, not the profession of the unemployed:** 具有浪漫色彩的爱情是有钱人的专利,而不是失业者的职业。(the privilege of the rich 与 the profession of the unemployed 形成鲜明的对照,注意下面相似的排比。)

5. **These are the great truths of modern life which Hughie Erskine never realised:** 这是休吉·厄斯金从未认识到的极为重要的道理。(great truths 是反语,主人公不谙世理,虽不富裕,有时甚至捉襟见肘,但活得潇洒,正是作者所欣赏的作风。)

6. **Poor Hughie! Intellectually, we must admit, he was not of**

much importance: 时运不佳的休吉! 我们必须承认,从智力来说,他确实平平常常。

of much importance / significance, etc. : very important / significant, etc. 。

7. **He never said a clever or even an ill-natured thing in his life:** 他一辈子既没有说过一句俏皮的话,也没有讲过伤人的话。(他从来没有说出过令人难忘的话。)

8. **He was as popular with men as he was with women, and he had every quality except that of making money:** 他在男士和女士中间人缘都很好。除了赚钱的才能之外,他别的才艺样样都有。

as he was with women: as he was (popular) with women.

popular with / among: liked, admired or enjoyed by, 讨……喜欢的,受……欢迎的,又如:

This young teacher is very *popular with* the students.

这位年轻的教师很受学生的欢迎。

He is a very competent lawyer, but *not very popular with* his fellows.

他是个能力很强的律师,但在同行中间人缘不太好。

Roller-blading is *very popular among* young people in the city.

滚轴溜冰在城市青年中很流行。

except that of making money: except the quality of making money.

9. **Hughie hung the first over his looking-glass, put the second on a shelf, and he lived on two hundred pounds a year that an old aunt allowed him:** 他把父亲的第一件遗物挂在他的镜子上方,另一件放在一个架子上,依靠一位老姨妈一年提供的两百英镑维持生活。(此句的意思是:他没有从他的父亲那里得到遗产,仅有的两件遗物只能当摆设。)

live on: 靠……生活,又如:

He didn't see why I should want to leave home when I had enough money to *live on*.

我挣的钱够花,为什么还要离开家,他很不理解。

10. **He had gone on the Stock Exchange for six months:** 他曾经搞过6个月的股票买卖。

go on: 从事(某种职业)。

此句一连列举了主人公尝试过的三种职业,均以失败告终。注意作者使用了不同的表达方式来描述他的三种职业,也用不同的表达方式说明其失败的原因。

11. **but what was a butterfly to do among bulls and bears?:** 可是,一个干事无长性的人在行家当中遨游股市,又能有何作为?

bulls: 认为股价要上涨而买进的股票投机者。

bears: 认为股价要回落而卖出的股票投机者。

此处 bulls and bears 指有经验的股票投机者。

(Cf. a bullish market: 牛市,股价上涨;a bear market: 熊市,股价回落。)

注意此句用 butterfly, bulls 和 bears 三个以 b 开头的既代表动物又表示人的词,并以一个修辞性的疑问句巧妙地说明主人公为什么股票生意失败。

12. **but he had soon tired of that:** 可是他对此很快就感到厌倦了。

tire of: 厌倦,厌烦,又如:

His interest in the stock exchange soon wore off, and he *tired of* the business.

他对股票交易的兴趣很快消失,对此感到厌倦。

The old man never *tires of* teaching others what they don't know.

那位老人诲人不倦。

13. **That did not answer:** 那(卖干即无甜味的雪利酒)也没有奏效。

answer: provide a solution 解决问题的办法。

14. **At last he became nothing, a delightful, useless young man with**

a perfect face and no profession: 最后他一事无成,落得没有职业,只有一张完美的脸蛋,成了一个可爱的窝囊废。(注意对照法的运用:delightful 与 useless, a perfect face 与 no profession 形成对照。)

第一段介绍了主人公休吉·厄斯金的基本情况:他智力一般,长相极好,也有人缘,但就是不会赚钱。读者对他的印象只可能是不好不坏。开头的描述是为了突出他后来的所作所为。学生可以参见以前所学的课文描写主人公亨利·格朗德时所用的技巧。

15. **To make matters worse, he was in love:** 更糟糕的是,他爱上了一位姑娘。

这里放在句首的不定式短语表示结果,而不是表示目的。

make matters / things worse: 使原本就尴尬、不妙、甚至危险的状况更糟糕,又如:

The breadwinner of the family was laid off a month ago; the fact that his wife is going to have another baby *has made matters worse*.

这个家庭挣钱的人一个月之前失业了,他的妻子又马上要生孩子了,这真是雪上加霜。

The earthquake left half the villagers homeless; the storm that followed *made things worse*.

地震毁了村里一半人的房屋,随之而来的暴雨使他们的处境更加困难。

故事的叙述者用这句话证明“Romance is the privilege of the rich, not the profession of the unemployed”。

16. **had lost his temper and his health in India, and never found either of them again:** 在印度脾气变坏了,身体也垮了,从此二者均无改进。

lose one's temper 是习语,意思是“发脾气”、“生气”,lose one's health 是一般的动词与名词的搭配。习语的意思不能用 $1+1=2$

的方式得出,因此 *lost his temper* 的意思不可分解。这里作者故意让习语中的 *lose* 兼有该词的一般意思,是一种俏皮的用法。

Cf. *keep one's temper*: 捺住性子,不让脾气发作。

作者提及此人的脾气与身体暗示休吉·厄斯金在婚姻面前的另一个必须逾越的障碍。

17. **he was ready to kiss her shoestrings**: 他甚至愿意吻她的鞋带。
(指休吉·厄斯金很爱劳拉。)

18. **They were the handsomest couple in London, and had not a penny between them**: 他俩是伦敦最漂亮的一对,但两人一文不名。(这对金童玉女似的恋人,竟无分文,这又是个反差。)

between: 共同,一起,合作,又如:

They opened a small bookstore between them.

他们俩合伙开了一家小书店。

This couple have quite a lot in common between them.

这对夫妇有许多共同之处。

During the years, they have saved 20,000 yuan between them.

这些年来他们俩共积攒了两万元。

19. **Her father was very fond of Hughie, but would not hear of any engagement**: 她父亲很喜欢休吉,但是不允许他们订婚。

not hear of: *not permit* 不允许,又如:

The young man wanted to learn to fly an airplane, but his mother wouldn't hear of it.

那青年想学习驾驶飞机,他的母亲却不让他学。

The marathon runner's coach will not hear of her shifting to 100-meter dash.

那位马拉松运动员的教练不允许她改行去搞 100 米短跑。

20. **Come to me, my boy, when you have got ten thousand pounds of your own, and we will see about it**: 小伙子,等你有了 1 万英镑的时候再来找我谈这件事吧。

see about: deal with 处理, 解决, 又如:

The tap is leaking; we must find a plumber *to see about* it.

水龙头关不紧, 老漏水, 我们应该找个水工来修一修。

All the students have to be informed about the change. *Would you see about* the matter?

这一变更必须通知到所有学生。你去办这件事, 好吗?

21. **he dropped in to see a great friend of his, Alan Trevor:** 他顺便去看看他的一个好朋友艾伦·特里沃。

drop in: 顺便或偶然访问或到某地, 又如:

Drop in whenever you come to see your parents.

你来看你父母时, 顺便到我这里来坐坐。

While waiting for the bus, he found himself in front of a small shop; he *dropped in* to buy some chewing gum.

等公共汽车时, 他发现面前有个小店, 就顺便进去买些口香糖。

本段介绍艾伦·特里沃, 他的长相与休吉·厄斯金形成鲜明的对照; 作者通过艾伦·特里沃的口表达了他唯美主义的观点。

22. **Indeed, few people are not nowadays:** 现在几乎没有什么人不是画家。(注意作者的讽刺口吻: 画家满天飞, 到处都是。)

23. **But he was also an artist, and artists are rather rare:** 不过他也是艺术家, 而艺术家却不多见。

24. **Personally he was a strange, rough fellow, with a freckled face and red, rough beard:** 他本人长得又怪又糙, 一脸的雀斑, 一把蓬乱的红胡子。

此处 personally 的意思是 as a person, 作为个人, 含义是 not as an artist, 又如:

Personally she is a very charming girl, but intellectually she is below average.

她是一个很有魅力的女孩子, 但是智力在中等以下。

personally 还常常置于句首表示 as far as I am concerned, 就我

个人而言。如：

Personally, I don't like the film.

我本人并不喜欢这部电影。

艾伦·特里沃其貌不扬与休吉·厄斯金的漂亮长相形成反差。

25. **However, when he took up the brush he was a real master, and his pictures were eagerly sought after:** 不过一拿起画笔,他就成了大师级的艺术家,他的作品是人们殷切追求的对象。(艾伦·特里沃的长相和他的艺术造诣又形成了一个反差。)

seek (after): 寻求,追求。

26. **"The only people a painter should know," he used to say, "are people who are beautiful, people who are an artistic pleasure to look at, and restful to talk to":** 他过去常说:“画家只应该结识那些长得漂亮的人,看到他们是一种艺术享受,和他们谈话你感到轻松、悠然。”

27. **However, after he got to know Hughie better, he liked him quite as much for his bright, cheerful spirits, and his generous, careless nature:** 不过对休吉有了进一步的了解之后,他对休吉的乐观的精神与他那慷慨大方、不斤斤计较、大大咧咧的性格也同样很喜欢。

此句后面省略了 *as for his personal charm*。(这里作者开始深入揭示休吉性格中大方、善良的一面。)

28. **he found Trevor putting the finishing touches to a wonderful life-size picture of a beggar-man:** 他看到特里沃在给一幅和真人一样大小的、精彩的乞丐图进行最后的润饰。

put / add the finishing touches (to sth.): 完成(某件事)最后的细节;对……进行最后的修饰或润色,又如:

She got a few buttons and *added the finishing touches to* the dress.

她有了几个纽扣,那件连衣裙终于完工了。

She went over what she had written and *put the finishing*

touches to the essay.

她把所写的东西又看了一遍,并对全文进行了最后的润色。
life-size: (艺术作品)与实物一样大小的。

29. **Over his shoulder was thrown a rough brown coat, all torn and full of holes; his thick boots were old and patched; and with one hand he leant on a rough stick, while with the other he held out his battered hat for money:** 他的肩膀上搭着一件粗糙、破烂不堪的棕色外套,他那厚厚的旧靴子上也打了补丁,他用一只手倚着一根手杖,用另一只手拿着他的破帽子讨钱。
over his shoulder was... 是倒装句;all torn and full of holes 是主语 a rough brown coat 的补足语。

30. **"What an amazing model!" whispered Hughie, as he shook hands with his friend:** “真是个令人惊奇的模特!”休吉和朋友握手时低声说。

31. **"An amazing model?" shouted Trevor at the top of his voice; "I should think so! Such beggars are not met with every day..."**: “你说他是个令人惊奇的模特?”特里沃高声叫了起来。“可不是!这样的叫花子可不是天天能碰得上的……”

注意两人对 amazing 一词的理解不同:休吉感到那乞丐的样子十分可怜,令他同情,而特里沃的潜台词是:“你知道这个模特是谁?是欧洲的首富!这样的模特你能天天见到吗?”他高声叫,也许是故意让富翁听到。

32. **What a picture Rembrandt would have made of him!**: 伦勃朗要是活着,用他当模特能画出一幅绝妙的画来!

make a picture of sb.: 将某人画下来。

Rembrandt: 伦勃朗(1606—1669),著名荷兰画家,擅长运用明暗对比,讲究构图的完美,尤其善于表现人物的神情和性格特征,作品有群像油画《夜巡》、素描《老人坐像》等。

33. **"A shilling an hour":** “每小时一先令。”

shilling: 先令,1971年以前英国货币单位。一英镑为20先令,

一先令为 12 便士。1971 年以后,取消了先令,一英镑为 100 便士。

34. **guineas**: 几尼,1663 年英国发行的一种金币,等于 21 先令,1813 年停止流通;后仅指等于 21 先令即 1.05 的币值单位。

35. **I think the model should have a percentage**: 我觉得模特也应分成。(画家应将一定比例的佣金给模特。)

36. **I tell you that there are moments when art almost reaches the importance of manual work**: 说真的,有时艺术与体力活一样重要。

I tell you / I can tell you / I'm telling you: 用来强调已经说的或后面要说的话,又如:

I'll never do such a thing, *I tell you!*

我绝对不会做这种事!

I'm telling you, Mary, I'm not going to stand in your way if you want to marry George.

玛丽,你要是真想和乔治结婚,我决不会阻挠。

37. **He looked so miserable that Hughie pitied him, and felt in his pockets to see what money he had**: 他看起来十分痛苦,休吉怜悯他,伸手摸摸衣兜里有多少钱。

feel (about / around) (for sb. / sth.): (用手、脚或棍子去)寻找……,又如:

He *felt* in his briefcase *for* a pen.

他在公文包里找一枝笔。

In the dark, he *felt around for* the switch.

在黑暗中他用手摸来摸去寻找开关。

The blind man *felt* along the wall *for* the staircase.

那盲人沿墙摸索着找楼梯。

38. **slipped the pound into the beggar's hand**: 悄悄地将那一英镑放到乞丐的手中。

slip: put sth. somewhere, esp. quickly, quietly or secretly.

39. The old man startled, and a faint smile passed across his lips:

那老头一下子挺起身来,嘴角露出一丝微笑。(对于休吉的举动老头没有思想准备,他的一丝微笑表示对自己化装的效果感到得意。)

startle (up): jump up suddenly.

40. He spent the day with Laura, was charmingly blamed for giving

away a pound, and had to walk home: 这天他后来一直和劳拉在一起,他给了别人一英镑,自己不得不走回家,为此受到劳拉娇柔的嗔怪。

对于劳拉几乎没有任何具体的描述,但仅此两个词 charmingly blame 把她的性格勾画了出来。她心疼休吉走回家所以责怪他,但她性格温柔,即使是责备也娇媚无比、让人舒服。

be blamed for (doing) sth.: 因……而受到责备。

Work on the Text

1. Answer these questions.

- 1) What do you learn about Hughie Erskine in the opening paragraph (his appearance, character, financial situation, etc.)?
- 2) What did he do that made things worse for him? Who was he in love with?
- 3) Why wouldn't the girl's father allow them to marry? Wasn't he fond of Hughie?
- 4) Who was Alan Trevor? He was a good painter, wasn't he?
- 5) Why was he much attracted by Hughie?
- 6) What was Trevor doing when Hughie went to his studio to see him one day?
- 7) Describe the model (his clothes, the expression on his face

and his pose (为画而摆的姿态).

- 8) What feeling did he arouse in Hughie?
- 9) Why did Hughie ask his friends how much a model got for his job? How much did Erskine get for the picture? What did Hughie say about the model's pay?
- 10) What did Hughie do when his friend was away? Why was a pound a lot of money for him?
- 11) The old beggar wasn't prepared for this, was he? Why did he smile?
- 12) How did Hughie feel about his act of kindness? Why did Laura blame him?

2. Look up the following words in an English-English dictionary before looking at the Word List. (You have to decide their part of speech first.)

permanent (Para. 1) profession (Para. 1) feel (Para. 20) slip (Para. 20) startle (Para. 21) blushing (Para. 22)

3. Paraphrase the following.

- 1) Romance is the privilege of the rich, not the profession of the unemployed. (Para. 1)
- 2) Intellectually, we must admit, he was not of much importance. (Para. 1)
- 3) ... but what was a butterfly to do among bulls and bears? (Para. 1)
- 4) That did not answer; the sherry was a little too dry. (Para. 1)
- 5) ... we will see about it. ... (Para. 3)
- 6) ... he liked him as much for his bright, cheerful spirits, and his generous, careless nature. (Para. 4)

4. Discuss or speak on the following topics.

- 1) What do you learn about Hughie Erskine?
 - (1) Appearance
 - (2) Failure in making a success of his life
 - (3) Financial situation
 - (4) Kindness of spirit
- 2) What do you learn about Alan Trevor, Laura Merton and her father?

5. Describe Hughie Erskine in about 130 words.

You can use this outline:

- 1) He is a charming and good-looking young man.
- 2) He is not a businessman.
- 3) He has a very kind heart.

Vocabulary Exercises

1. Complete the following sentences with words formed in the same way as in the examples, putting in a hyphen where necessary.

Examples:

well-grounded 有根有据的	ill-advised 不明智的
well-kept 保存良好的	well-informed 消息灵通的
so-called 所谓的	dimly-lit 光线暗淡的

(副词或形容词 + 过去分词 → 复合形容词)

adj. / adv.: new highly poorly well wide
verb: bear dress praise spread write

- 1) There was a(n) _____ rumour about Henry's birth.
- 2) When I looked out of the window, I saw a(n) _____

woman enter the house across the street.

- 3) That _____ film turned out to be a failure.
- 4) TV stations like to invite _____ actors and actresses on their talk shows.
- 5) I wouldn't read this _____ article for a second time.

2. Translate the following.

1) Use the verb + noun or adj. + noun collocation.

实现美梦	大发脾气	失去记忆	寻求安慰
来根香烟	保持安静	怜悯某人	统治世界
证券交易	等身画像	手工劳动	恶意的玩笑
忧伤的表情	褴褛的衣衫	淡淡的笑容	赚钱
股市	股东		

2) Use the "useful expressions".

- (1) 模范护士海伦工作既讲效率又有耐心,严格却富有爱心,深受小病人人们的喜爱。
- (2) 部队断了粮,只能靠野果和树皮(tree bark)充饥。
- (3) 因售后服务好,奇迹(the Legend)牌洗衣机销路很旺。
- (4) 由于那部电影大获成功,它的插曲也很受欢迎。
- (5) 杨教授搬家时,把许多书给了学生。
- (6) 乔治喜欢把自己的过失归咎于别人。
- (7) 仅仅过了半年,他就厌倦了公司职员的工作。
- (8) 我的教授不许我在圣诞节期间在实验室工作。
- (9) 我现在不能作出任何承诺,但是我会考虑这件事的。
- (10) 他破产了,只得求助于朋友的资助。

3) Use find, talk and get.

- (1) 在我桌上我发现了一个寻呼机。是你的吗?
- (2) 平安到达后请给我来个电话。
- (3) 我已经替你找到了一套带有家具的公寓。
- (4) 关于如何改善雇员的工作条件,他们谈了几个小时。

- (5) 你去超市时能帮我买两个柯达胶卷吗?
- (6) 我发现住在乡下是一种很有趣的经历。
- (7) 你得想办法找人把漏水的龙头修好。
- (8) 我到家,发现爷爷在自言自语。
- (9) 老师告诉他他儿子在考试中作弊,他很生气。
- (10) 同事们到达之前,他就把一切都准备好了。
- (11) 医生们发现每天喝点酒的人要比那些从不喝酒的人健康。
- (12) 光说没有用,咱们还是开始干吧!

3. Complete the following sentences.

1) Put suitable prepositions or adverbs in the blanks.

- (1) To finish the job today, we'll have to depend _____ ourselves. Everybody else is busy.
- (2) It must be pointed _____ that this matter is _____ great importance to us.
- (3) The singer is very popular _____ young people _____ Southeast Asia.
- (4) He was very fond _____ the small town and went there _____ a monthly basis.
- (5) We must improve our programme. Otherwise, the viewers will get tired _____ watching the same old stuff.
- (6) She is so shy that she blushes _____ every word a stranger says to her.
- (7) One should never take advantage _____ other people's misfortune.
- (8) He always blames others _____ anything he himself has done wrong.
- (9) We have to use that money wisely because that's all we

live _____ for the next three months or so.

(10) As I was driving to the pool with my sister-in-law and our children, I got _____ an argument _____ a teenager who was driving fast and tailing our car.

(11) She found it difficult to get rid _____ the habit of eating between meals.

(12) The boy talked his parents _____ allowing him to visit Shanghai by himself.

2) Choose the correct word from the brackets.

(1) In many parts of the world the only _____ water supply lies below the ground. (continuous, permanent)

(2) These wild flowers are so _____ that I want to do whatever I can do to save them. (rare, scarce)

(3) Thank you for a _____ evening. (delightful, cheerful)

(4) Everyone was _____ at how calm and relaxed she was before her first public speech. (surprised, astonished)

(5) What are you doing out here all _____? (alone, lonely)

4. Choose the best word for each blank.

There are many explanations (1) _____ (about, as, for, on) why UFOs visit the earth. The most popular one is that they (2) _____ (may, should, would, must) contain visitors from other planets. To (3) _____ (fly, make, run, use) such an aircraft, the builders must (4) _____ (develop, discover, get, produce) different forms of aviation(飞行), because they seem to fly much faster than normal aircraft. The UFOs, it

is believed, (5) _____ (can, may, would, must) contain scientists from other planets who are studying life on earth. It is even believed that several (6) _____ (alike, same, similar, such) aircraft may have landed on earth, and some of these space visitors may be living among us.

But there are also less (7) _____ (fantastic, interesting, reasonable, unbelievable) explanations available. (8) _____ (Although, As, Like, So) some sightings (看到) of UFOs are difficult to explain, most can be explained quite easily. In many (9) _____ (cases, examples, occasions, ways) the observers might have made a mistake. They might have seen a weather balloon or an aircraft. Or the light they saw in the sky might have been light from the ground (10) _____ (copied, reflected, returned, shown) onto the clouds. (11) _____ (But, However, Otherwise, Therefore), the exact cause of many sightings still remains a (12) _____ (mystery, question, problem, secret).

Grammar & Usage

Object Complement

补充说明及物动词宾语,使句子的意思完整的句子成分叫宾语补足语。宾语补足语一般说明宾语的行为或所处的状况,多放在宾语之后。

1. 名词、形容词、介词词组作宾语补足语

They named the ship *Elizabeth*. (名词)

The class elected him *monitor*. (名词)

I found the film *very interesting*. (形容词)

We consider him *capable*. (形容词)

The secretary was left *in the dark* about this plan. (介词词组)

I'd like to find everything *in its proper place* when I come back. (介词词组)

2. 动词不定式、分词作宾语补足语

What did you tell her *to do*? (不定式)

Let me *have a try*. (不带 to 的不定式)

You can hear her *play the piano* every afternoon. (不带 to 的不定式)

It's difficult to make yourself *understood* if you don't know their language. (过去分词)

I think you should have your teeth *checked* regularly. (过去分词)

Hughie found Trevor *putting* the finishing touches to a wonderful life-size picture of a beggar-man. (现在分词)

They found him *lying* in the street, unconscious. (现在分词)

I'm sorry to have kept you *waiting*. (现在分词)

3. as + 名词 / 形容词 / 分词作宾语补足语

He seemed to regard it *as his own achievement*. (名词)

Let's take him *as an example*. (名词)

The newspaper describes the performance *as first-class*. (形容词)

Her teacher spoke of her *as gentle, kind and hardworking*. (形容词)

You mustn't think of me *as being rude to you*. (分词词组)

Please tell the story *as seen by the main character*. (分词词组)

Exercises

1. Point out the object complement in the following and translate the sentences into Chinese.

- 1) I wish you a happy journey.
- 2) Shall I paint the wall light blue?
- 3) The October frost turned the leaves yellow and red.
- 4) The plan struck him as very practical.
- 5) The student wanted the teacher to explain it again.
- 6) You have to have your luggage weighed here.
- 7) We should look upon our children as our friends.
- 8) Jane wears her hair very long.
- 9) The director appointed the young woman sales manager.
- 10) Many people nowadays think of travel as travel by plane.

2. Translate the following sentences into English, using object complement.

- 1) 我今天必须让人给我修电脑。
- 2) 你为什么劝她去做那件事?
- 3) 妈妈发现孩子在自行车上熟睡着。
- 4) 我没注意到他在大厅等我。
- 5) 他们把我们当贵宾招待。
- 6) 他自我介绍说他是从英国来的音乐家。
- 7) 孩子们总把他们的父母看成是世界上最了不起的人。
- 8) 他努力想说明自己的观点。

3. Combine the following sentences, using nominal clauses (revision: noun clauses).

Example: Will she take the job? I don't think so.

I don't think she will take the job.

- 1) She is still alive. It is sheer luck.
- 2) Whose house are we in now? I am not sure.
- 3) You are leaving. It's a pity.
- 4) Your assumption (假想) is not well-founded. The assumption is that things will improve.
- 5) Why did he do such a stupid thing, intelligent as he is? I believe nobody knows.
- 6) Is it worthwhile to buy this painting? I don't know.
- 7) Who will take over the position as the president of the university and when? That is the point.
- 8) What made him do a thing like that? I can't imagine it.
- 9) How is the plan going to be carried out? Let me tell you.
- 10) Who's won the first prize? It'll soon be announced.

4. Translate the following sentences into English, using noun clauses.

- 1) 没有人问我们谁该来干这个工作。
- 2) 他最喜欢的事情就是跟人家开玩笑。
- 3) 家就是你的家人和朋友在的地方。
- 4) 你最喜欢哪个候选人就投哪个候选人的票。
- 5) 不管是谁跟你说的这件事,都是在撒谎。
- 6) 我会不会来参加讨论,那是另一回事。

Quotations for the Lesson

Kindness is a language which the deaf can hear and the blind can read.

Mark Twain

Kindness is a hard thing to give away. It keeps coming back to the giver.

Ralph scott

Lesson Eight

Text

The Model Millionaire (II)

Oscar Wilde

当休吉得知那老乞丐原来是欧洲少有的巨富,十分懊丧;听说朋友把自己为婚事发愁的隐私也告诉了那老头,性格随和的他也动怒了。次日,富翁派人来访,休吉断定他是代表主人来向他讨个歉意;没想到老头解决了他的燃眉之急……

1 That night Hughie went to a club about eleven o'clock, and found Trevor sitting by himself in the smoking room drinking.

2 "Well, Alan, did you finish the picture all right?" he said, as he lit his cigarette.

3 "Finished and framed, my boy!" answered Trevor; "and, by the way, that old model you saw has become very fond of you. I had to tell him all about you — who you are, where you live, what your income is, what hopes you have —"

4 "My dear Alan," cried Hughie, "I shall probably find him waiting for me when I go home. But, of course, you are only joking. Poor old fellow! I wish I could do something for him. I think it is terrible that any one should be so miserable. I have got heaps of old clothes at home — do you think he would care for any of them? Why, his rags were falling to bits."

5 "But he looks splendid in them," said Trevor. "I should never want to paint him in a frock coat for anything. What you call rags I call romance. What seems poverty to you is charm to me. However, I'll tell him of your offer."

6 "Alan," said Hughie seriously, "you painters are a heartless lot."

7 "An artist's heart is his head," replied Trevor; "and besides, our business is to show the world as we see it, not to make it better. And now tell me how Laura is. The old model was quite interested in her."

8 "You don't mean to say you talked to him about her?" said Hughie.

9 "Certainly I did. He knows all about the cruel father, the lovely Laura, and the ten thousand pounds."

10 "You told the old beggar all about my private affairs?" cried Hughie, looking very red and angry.

11 "My dear boy," said Trevor, smiling, "that old beggar, as you call him, is one of the richest men in Europe. He could buy all London tomorrow. He has a house in every capital, has his dinner off gold plate, and can prevent Russia going to war when he wishes."

12 "What on earth do you mean?" cried Hughie.

13 "What I say," said Trevor. "the old man you saw today in the studio was Baron Hausberg. He is a great friend of mine, buys all my pictures and that sort of thing, and gave me a commission a month ago to paint him as a beggar. What do you expect? It is the whim of a millionaire. You know these rich men. And I must say he looked fine in his rags, or perhaps I should say in my rags; they are an old suit I got in Spain."

14 "Baron Hausberg!" cried Hughie. "Good heavens! I gave him a pound!" and he sank into an arm-chair the picture of dismay.

15 "Gave him a pound!" shouted Trevor and he burst into a roar of

laughter. "My dear boy, you'll never see it again. His business is with other men's money."

16 "I think you ought to have told me, Alan," said Hughie in a bad temper, "and not have let me make such a fool of myself."

17 "Well, to begin with, Hughie," said Trevor, "It never entered my mind that you went about giving money away in that careless manner. I can understand your kissing a pretty model, but your giving money to an ugly one —, no! Besides, when you came in I didn't know whether Hausberg would like his name mentioned. You know he wasn't in full dress!"

18 "How stupid he must think me!" said Hughie.

19 "Not at all. He was in the highest spirits after you left; kept laughing to himself and rubbing his old wrinkled hands together. I couldn't understand why he was so interested to know all about you; but I see it all now. He'll invest your pound for you, Hughie, pay you the interest every six months, and have a wonderful story to tell after dinner."

20 "I'm an unlucky devil," said Hughie. "The best thing I can do is to go to bed; and, my dear Alan, you mustn't tell anyone. I shouldn't dare to show my face if people knew."

21 "Nonsense! It shows your kindness of spirit, Hughie. And don't run away. Have another cigarette, and you can talk about Laura as much as you like."

22 However, Hughie wouldn't stay, but walked home, feeling very unhappy, and leaving Alan Trevor helpless with laughter.

23 The next morning, as he was at breakfast, the servant brought him a card on which was written, "Monsieur Gustave Naudin, for M. le Baron Hausberg." "I suppose he has come for an apology," said Hughie to himself; and he told the servant to bring the visitor in.

24 An old gentleman with gold glasses and grey hair came into the room and said, in a slight French accent, "Have I the honour of speaking to Monsieur Erskine?"

25 Hughie bowed.

26 "I have come from Baron Hausberg," he continued. "The Baron —" he continued. "The Baron —"

27 "I beg, sir, that you will offer him my sincerest apologies," stammered Hughie.

28 "The Baron," said the old gentleman with a smile, "has commissioned me to bring you this letter"; and he held out a sealed envelope.

29 On the outside was written, "A wedding present to Hugh Erskine and Laura Merton, from an old beggar," and inside was a cheque for ten thousand pounds.

30 When they were married Alan Trevor was the best man, and the Baron made a speech at the wedding breakfast.

31 "Millionaire models," remarked Alan, "are rare enough; but model millionaires are rarer still!"

Word List

frame /freɪm/ *v.*

给……设框

heap /hi:p/ *n.*

堆

rag /ræg/ *n.*

(复)破旧衣服

frock coat

19 世纪男子所穿的一种方领角的长外衣

poverty /'pɒvəti/ *n.*

贫穷

offer /'ɒfə(r)/ *n.*

提供之物

heartless /'hɑ:tlɪs/ *adj.*

无情的,残酷的

reform /rɪ'fɔ:m/ <i>vt.</i>	改革, 改变
private /'praɪvɪt/ <i>adj.</i>	私人的
whim /wɪm/ <i>n.</i>	怪念头儿, 奇想
suit /s(j)uɪt/ <i>n.</i>	套装
baron /'bærən/ <i>n.</i>	男爵; 巨头, 大亨
astonished /ə'stɒnɪʃt/ <i>adj.</i>	吃惊的
roar /rɔ:(r)/ <i>n.</i>	吼叫
dress /dres/ <i>vt.</i>	穿衣
unlucky /ʌn'lʌkɪ/ <i>adj.</i>	倒霉的
devil /'devl/ <i>n.</i>	魔鬼
monsieur /mə'sjɜ:(r)/ <i>n.</i>	先生(用于法国男士人名前)
apology /ə'pɒlədʒɪ/ <i>n.</i>	道歉
slight /slaɪt/ <i>adj.</i>	轻微的
bow /baʊ/ <i>vi.</i>	鞠躬
stammer /'stæmə(r)/ <i>vt.</i>	结结巴巴地说

Proper Names

Baron Hausberg /'bærən 'hausbæg/	霍斯勃格男爵
Russia /'rʌʃə/	俄罗斯
Monsieur Gustave Naudin /mə'sjɜ: 'gustɑ:v 'nɔ:ɪn/	古斯塔夫·诺丁先生

Useful Expressions

have the honour of ...	有幸做……
care for	愿意要;愿意做
fall/break to bits	变得或摔得粉碎
mean to do...	有意做……
not...for anything	绝不
burst into	爆发出;突然闯入
make a fool of	出洋相
to begin with	首先
in high spirits	兴致勃勃
it never entered one's mind	……从未想到……
that...	

Word Study

see *vt.* & *vi.*

1. 看,看见

- 1) V + N; V + N + do / doing sth.

The Marine said, "I never *saw him* in my life."

Slowly he followed the river with his eyes and *saw it emptying* into a shining sea.

At Nevins Street Station, Brooklyn, I *saw a lady preparing* to get off at Atlantic Avenue Station.

One day they *saw him put* a lot of bread under his shirt.

- 2) V + N + adj. / done

I never *saw him so angry*.

They were looking for a witness who *saw the old man knocked* down by a motor cycle.

2. 懂得, 了解, 明白

V; V + N; V + wh- clause ; V + that clause

— Press this button if you want to turn the VCD on.

— I *see*.

He can't *see the advantages* of living in the country.

She didn't watch the boy to *see if* he was going to run now.

Let us *see how* dictionaries are made and *how* the editors arrive at definitions.

My father didn't *see why* I should want to leave home when I had enough money to live on.

We can *see that* he is not happy today. Something unpleasant must have happened.

3. 会见, 接见; 看望; 看(医生); 看(电影)

V + N

I'm glad to *see you* again.

The manager was very busy and *saw the visitor* for only ten minutes.

He caught a bad cold, but he refused to *see a doctor*.

Would you like to *see a film* with me tonight?

4. 陪送(某人至某处)

V + N + prep. phrase

The host and hostess *saw the guests to* the gate.

5. Phrases:

see about doing sth. 考虑; 照料, 照顾; 处理

see into sth. 调查, 了解

see sb. off (给某人)送行

see that 设法做到

see to sth. 负责, 留意, 照料

See that the children wash their hands before dinner.

tell *vt.*

1. 告诉,对……说,讲

- 1) V + N; V + N (+ N) (+ about + N); V + N + to + N (+ about + N)

Hans *told a tale* so vividly that you could see and hear toy soldiers and toy horses galloping.

Andersen's tales are a poet's way of *telling us the truth about* ourselves.

Mr. Budd *told his story to an important-looking officer*.

A reserved person never *tells you anything about* himself.

She *told the boy about* her work in a hotel beauty shop that stayed open late. She told him what the work was like.

- 2) V + N + that clause; V + N + wh- clause; V + N + wh- + to do sth.

I *told Professor Agassiz that* I had enrolled my name in the Scientific School as a student of natural history.

Mr. Grayson said, "I merely *told my managers which* salesmen I wanted for Oklahoma and the cost of the various drills."

She *told me how* remarkable Jim has been in complaining so rarely despite his constant pain.

Men and women always believe that they can *tell others what to do and how to think*.

2. 命令(某人)做……,吩咐

- V + N (+ to do sth.)

Back in Mr. Grayson's office, the detective *told him to ask* Miss Winthrop to take some dictation the next morning at 9.45.

The manager *told his secretary to arrange* an appointment with Mr. Black, an important customer of the company.

3. 辨别, 识别

V + N (+ from + N); V + that clause; V + wh- clause

The students were asked to *tell the difference* between the two words.

He is too young to *tell right from wrong*.

We *could tell from her smile that* she suspected nothing.

The dying man was too sick to *tell whether or not* the Marine was his son.

4. Phrases:

tell sb. / sth. apart 辨别

tell one's fortune 算命

to tell the truth 说实话

You can never tell. / You never can tell. 说不准。

show *vt. & vi.*

1. 拿……给人看; 向……说明

V + N + N; V + N + to + N; V + N + what / how to do sth.

Andersen's father *showed him a white, woman-like figure* among the frost patterns.

He *showed his ID to the guard* at the entrance.

My mother *showed me how to use* the microwave oven.

"I will *show you what to do* with it, Chris." My mother said.

2. 表现出, (感情等)流露出来

V; V (+ N) + N; V + N + to + N; V + wh- clause

Her sorrow *showed* in her eyes.

She was young, with a fair, calm face that *showed a certain*

strength.

When the boy nearly ran us off the road, I turned around and glared at him to *show my disapproval* and *my concern* for our safety.

Jim *has shown remarkable courage* in the way he has faced his disease and his dying.

Rules are the essence of sport, and sportsmanship is the ability to practice a sport according to its rules, while also *showing generosity to one's opponent* and *good temper* in defeat.

She put on a smile when she saw us — she didn't want to *show how* upset she was.

3. 放映, 展出 (多用于被动结构)

V + N

A new American film *was shown* on campus yesterday.

The paintings of a modern abstract painter *will be shown* at the gallery next month.

4. 带领……去某处

V + N + N; V + N + to / in / out / around, etc.

The host *showed the kids her beautiful garden* after dinner.

The receptionist *showed the guests to their rooms*.

5. 表明, 证明, 说明

V + N; V + that clause; V + wh- clause; V + N (+ to be) + N / adj.

The figures *show an increase of half a million* in unemployment since May.

Jim *is showing me that* his style of dying will be no different from his style of living.

Copernicus *showed that* far from being the center of the universe, the Earth is just one of many small worlds.

A good dictionary must contain many examples that *show how*

words are used.

He *showed himself* (to be) an honest person.

6. 显示,展示;告诉;指出

V + N; V(+ N) + wh- clause

The city directory *showed no such return address* as the advertiser had left.

He drew a map to *show (me) where* his office was.

7. Phrases:

show sb. around (a place) 带某人参观(某地)

show off 炫耀,卖弄自己

show one's face 露面,出面

show oneself 出现,显露(本性等)

show up(非正式)出席,出现

show *n.* 展览会;表演,演出;电影;节目;显示,表示;样子,外表

Phrases:

on show 陈列着,展示着,展览着

make a show of (doing) sth. 炫耀,卖弄,装样子

Notes on the Text

1. **About the text:** 这是故事的第二部分,学习这部分要注意以下几点:

- 1) 故事的情节主要通过休吉和特里沃的对话来展开。王尔德的剧作以幽默、俏皮的对话著称,这一特点在此也可略见一斑。学生应通过人物的对话,深入了解他们的性格特征。特里沃的话表现出他深谙人情世故,作者仍然通过他的口表达自己的艺术观;休吉则是怎么想就怎么说,使人感到他就像一块未经刻意雕琢、晶莹透彻的玉石,显露出他那纯真、自然的本性。

- 2) 故事的情节充满了“意外”，如模特的身份、富翁对休吉“善举”的回报(就连特里沃也没有想到)、故事的结局(恰好与故事开头所提的“道理”相反)等等。这些“意外”看似难以预料，却在情理之中。
- 3) 语言平易，为我们提供了大量有用的短语，尤其是口头常用的表达方式。
- 4) 故事给我们提供了极好的练习口语的素材，学生可就此故事进行大量的口头活动，如复述、介绍人物、评论人物和故事的结局等。

2. found Trevor sitting by himself in the smoking room drinking:

看到特里沃独自坐在吸烟室饮酒。

smoking room: (俱乐部内)为吸烟的成员所设饮酒、谈话的场所。

此处 drinking 是现在分词，作状语修饰 sitting...。在英语里 drink 后面如果不跟任何表示饮料的名词，则表示饮酒，试比较下列例句中 drink 的意思：

— Would you like some sherry?

您想喝点雪利酒吗？

— No thanks. I *don't drink*.

谢谢，我不喝酒。

Xiao Han neither smokes nor *drinks*.

小韩既不抽烟，也不喝酒。

He *drinks too much*.

他饮酒太多。

He was so thirsty that he *drank two bottles of mineral water*.

他太渴了，喝了两瓶矿泉水。

3. “Well, Alan, did you finish the picture all right?”: “艾伦，你的画画完了吗？”

all right: in a satisfactory manner; satisfactorily(副词)以满意的方式；(形容词)令人满意的，又如：

Are you getting along *all right* with your college friends?

你和大学里的朋友关系还行吗?

I think her performance is quite *all right*.

我觉得她的表演相当令人满意。

all right 在不同的场合用不同的语调表达不同的意思,学生要根据上下文确定其意思。

4. **I shall probably find him waiting for me when I go home. But, of course, you are only joking:** 我回到家没准会看到他在等我呢。不过,你只不过是开玩笑罢了。(休吉责备特里沃不应该把住址告诉乞丐,怕乞丐到他家里去找他,继而他觉得他的朋友不可能把自己的地址告诉那乞丐。)

5. **Poor old fellow! I wish I could do something for him:** 哎,那老头真可怜,我真希望我能帮帮他。(休吉的确有一副好心肠,他不再追问朋友是否真的把他的一切告诉了那乞丐,却立刻想起了那老头如何可怜。)

6. **I think it is terrible that any one should be so miserable:** 一个人居然会那么悲惨真是太不幸了。

此处 *should* 表示“可能会”。

7. **do you think he would care for any of them?:** 你觉得他愿意要几件?

care for / care to do sth.: (用于否定句或疑问句,前面常用 *would*) 愿意要……;愿意做……,又如:

Would you care for some more coffee?

您想再来点咖啡吗?

If you'd care to go on a trip to Hawaii, I'll arrange everything for you.

你要是想去夏威夷旅行,我会为你安排。

8. **Why, his rags were falling to bits:** 唉,他的衣服就要成碎片了。

fall: begin to be sth. (系动词) 开始变成……,又如:

fall asleep 睡着
fall ill 生病
fall silent 静了下来
fall victim 成了受害者

to bits: into small pieces 成了碎片, 又如:

She tore the letter *to bits* without even reading it.

那封信她没有看就撕成了碎片。

The ancient book fell *to bits* as soon as it was taken out of the grave.

那部古书一拿出坟墓之后就成了碎片。

9. "But he looks splendid in them," said Trevor: "不过他穿着那身衣服看起来棒极了," 特里沃说。

10. I should never want to paint him in a frock coat for anything: 他要是身着长礼服, 我说什么也不会画他。

not / never... for anything: (口语) 决不, 肯定不, 又如:

The old man wouldn't leave his home village *for anything*.

那老人死活也不肯离开自己的家乡。

This time I wouldn't give in *for anything*.

这回我决不妥协。

The man said that he would *never* sell that Rembrandt painting *for anything*.

那人说他决不会卖掉那幅伦勃朗的作品。

此处 should 表示 certainty, 肯定。

11. What you call rags I call romance. What seems poverty to you is charm to me: 你称为破衣烂衫之物我看成是浪漫情怀, 你眼里的贫困是我心目中的魅力。

what you call rags 是个名词从句, 作主句中 call 的宾语, romance 是宾语的补足语。名词从句 what seems poverty to you 是第二个句子的主语。(注意作者用不同的方式表达类似的内容。)

12. **you painters are a heartless lot:** 你们画家真是一帮铁石心肠的人。

lot: (口语) 一群具有相同特征的人, 又如:

The Grounds were a handsome *lot*.

格朗德一家人长得都很帅。

Luckily for me, Mother and Father held out against the *lot* of them.

父亲和母亲没有听从这帮人的劝告, 这对我来说是十分幸运的。

13. **An artist's heart is his head:** 艺术家的心肠是他的头脑。(艺术家受理智而不受感情的支配。heart 代表感情, head 代表理智。)

14. **our business is to show the world as we see it, not to make it better:** 我们的任务是反映客观世界, 而不是美化世界。(这几句话都反映了王尔德的艺术观点。)

15. **You don't mean to say you talked to him about her?:** 你不会真的跟他谈起了劳拉吧?

用陈述句的语序加问号构成的一般疑问句用升调, 表示问话的人想对方确认他的话, 又如:

You are a writer?

你是个作家吧? (问话人认为对方是作家, 想得到确认。)

You are not going to Dalian with the rest of your family?

你不和你家里的人一起去大连吧?

mean to say: admit readily 愿意承认(一般用于疑问句), 又如:

Do you *mean to say* you've given up your job?

你真的是放弃了你的那份工作?

You *don't mean to say* you hit her?

你当真打了她?

16. **that old beggar, as you call him, is one of the richest men in Europe:** 你称为老乞丐的那个人是欧洲的大富翁。

as you call him: 插入主句中的定语从句, as 是关系代词, 代表 old beggar, 在从句中作宾语 him 的补足语。as 作关系代词往往表示整个主句。如:

The situation in the country, *as* the president has pointed out, is improving.

正如总统所指出的那样, 这个国家的形势一天天好起来。

17. What on earth do you mean?: 你到底是什么意思?

on earth / in the world: 口语中与 what, where, who, why, how 连用以加强语气。

18. He is a great friend of mine, buys all my pictures and that sort of thing: 他是我的好朋友, 买我所有的作品等等。

that sort / kind of thing: 类似的其他事情, 又如:

In the summer camp, the children go swimming, play games, *that sort of thing*.

孩子们在夏令营游泳、玩游戏等。

Participants in the short-term course attend lectures, have discussions, *that sort of thing*.

短训班的学员听课、讨论以及进行其他类似的活动。

19. gave me a commission a month ago to paint him as a beggar: 一个月之前他给了我一笔佣金, 叫我把他画成个乞丐。

20. It is the whim of a millionaire. You know these rich men: 这当然是百万富翁一时心血来潮的怪念头, 你知道这帮阔老爷是会做这种事的。

21. he sank into an arm-chair the picture of dismay: 他跌坐进一把扶手椅, 一幅惊恐的模样。

the picture of dismay 在句中作主语 he 的补足语。

the picture of health / innocence / despair, etc.: look very healthy, etc. 看起来很健康/无辜/绝望等, 又如:

Wearing rags and holding out his hat for money, the old model was *the picture of misery*.

身着破衣烂衫,伸出帽子讨钱,这老模特的模样十分悲惨。

With flowers in his hands and dozens of former students around him, the old man is *the very picture of happiness and content*.

手捧鲜花,被几十个以前教过的学生簇拥着,那位老人简直是幸福和满足的化身。

22. he burst into a roar of laughter: 他放声大笑起来。

burst into: 放声(大笑、高唱、痛哭),又如:

He *burst into tears* when he heard the news.

听到那消息后,他放声大哭。

As soon as Mr. Adams entered, his Chinese colleagues *burst into singing*: "Happy birthday to you!"

亚当斯先生一进来,他的中国同事就高唱起来:“祝你生日快乐!”

23. you'll never see it again. His business is with other men's money: 你的那一英镑是拿不回来了,他做的是别人的钱的生意。(前一句话是开玩笑,后一句指他是银行家或是经营投资公司。)

24. "I think you ought to have told me, Alan," said Hughie in a bad temper, "and not have let me make such a fool of myself": “艾伦,你为什么不早告诉我?”休吉生气地说。“你不应该让我出丑。”

ought to have done sth.: 表示过去应该做而没有做的事(有责备的含义)。

make a fool of oneself: 因干愚蠢的事而出丑,又如:

At the party, he drank too much, and *made a fool of himself*.

在聚会时,他喝酒太多,闹出不少笑话。

If you go to the funeral in this dress, you'll *make a fool of yourself*.

你要是穿这件连衣裙去参加葬礼,你会出丑的。

25. to begin with: 首先(用来引出要讲的第一点或是最重要的一点)。

26. It never entered my mind that you went about giving money away in that careless manner: 我真没想到你会这样随便乱给别人钱。

that 从句是主语, it 为形式主语。

it never entered my mind / head that: (口语)我从未想到……
(表示惊讶), 又如:

It never entered my mind that the much admired TV star was a secret agent.

我没有想到那位倍受崇拜的电视明星居然是个间谍。

go about sth. / doing sth.: 做;着手做, 又如:

It's a difficult job. I don't know how to *go about it*.

这工作很棘手,我还不知道该怎么着手去做。

How *is* the family *going to going about getting* the money for the boy's operation?

这家人怎么着手去为那男孩子筹集手术费?

give sth. away: 白给;赠送, 又如:

He *gave a lot of his books away* to people who need but cannot afford them.

他把不少的藏书送给了那些需要但买不起这些书的人。

27. I can understand your kissing a pretty model, but your giving money to an ugly one —, no!: 你要是亲吻一个漂亮的模特我能理解, 不过给一个丑陋的模特钱, 真不能理解!

28. You know he wasn't in full dress!: 你是知道的, 他当时穿着可是不雅观。

in full dress: 礼服, 正式场合的穿着(此处指有身份的人一般穿戴的衬衫、西服领带等)。

29. He was in the highest spirits after you left; kept laughing to

himself and rubbing his old wrinkled hands together: 你走之后,他的心境极佳,不断对自己大笑,一个劲地搓他那布满皱纹的双手。

in high spirits: 情绪、心境很好。

laughing to oneself: 对自己乐。

类似的短语如: **talk to oneself** 自言自语; **think to oneself** 自思自量。

- 30. He'll invest your pound for you, Hughie, pay you the interest every six months, and have a wonderful story to tell after dinner:** 他会用你的那一英镑去投资,每六个月给你付一次利息,茶余饭后把这件奇闻趣事当故事讲给别人听。(这里特里沃是在善意地取笑休吉,和他开玩笑,那位百万富翁究竟会如何回报那一英镑他也没有想到。)

- 31. However, Hughie wouldn't stay, but walked home, feeling very unhappy, and leaving Alan Trevor helpless with laughter:** 可是,休吉再也呆不下去了,他满面愁容走回了家,把艾伦·特里沃乐得喘不上气来。

helpless with: unable to control a strong feeling one has 控制不住强烈的情感,如大笑、大怒、绝望等。

- 32. a card on which was written, "Monsieur Gustave Naudin, for M. le Baron Hausberg":** 写有“霍斯勃格男爵先生之代表古斯塔夫·诺丁先生”的一张名片。

on which... 为定语从句,修饰 card。

for sb.: on behalf of sb. 作为……的代表,又如:

Let me say a few words *for* my school.

让我代表我的学校说几句话。

M 是 Monsieur 的缩写,le 是法语的一个冠词,相当于英语的 the。

- 33. Have I the honour of speaking to Monsieur Erskine?:** 您是厄斯金先生吗?

have the honour of doing sth. : (正式)荣幸……,又如:

I am very happy *to have the honour of speaking* to you today.
今天我有幸给你们讲话十分高兴。

At the conference, I *had the honour of meeting* a number of
writers I admire.

会上我很荣幸地见到几位我所崇敬的作家。

34. **has commissioned me to bring you this letter:** 委托我把这封信交给您。(这是很正式的说法,一般我们说:“... has given me the task of bringing you this letter.”)

35. **On the outside was written, “A wedding present to Hugh Erskine and Laura Merton, from an old beggar,” and inside was a cheque for ten thousand pounds:** 信封上写着:“休·厄斯金与劳拉·默顿新婚志喜。一老乞丐贺”,信封内是一张1万英镑的支票。

注意两个并列句均为倒装句。

Hugh 是常见的男性名字, Hughie 是其昵称,特别正式场合一般不用昵称。

36. **“Millionaire models,” remarked Alan, “are rare enough; but model millionaires are rarer still!”**: “百万富翁的模特实已罕见,”艾伦说,“不过模范百万富翁更是凤毛麟角了!”

这最后一句话,作者又借画家之口,用一双关键词 model (兼有“模特”与“模范”、“楷模”的意思),巧妙地点出了故事的主题思想。百万富翁要画家将其画成可怜兮兮的乞丐,竟意想不到地引起一个青年的同情与施舍,青年人的滴水之恩,引来了“老乞丐”的厚礼相报,其人其事令人耳目一新;善良青年自己的生活捉襟见肘,却将最后一个英镑毫不犹豫地给了一个素不相识的乞丐,此举值得称道。什么叫富?家产万贯,却一毛不拔,非富;拥有良田万顷,却为富不仁,更非富有;无论你的财产是多,还是少,只要乐于给予,才是真正富有。

Work on the Text

1. Answer these questions.

- 1) What did Trevor tell Hughie when they met at the club that night?
- 2) What did Hughie say that showed he felt very sorry for the old man? What did he offer to do?
- 3) What did Trevor say that made Hughie think that artists were heartless?
- 4) How did Hughie feel when he learned that his friend had told the beggar all about Laura and her father?
- 5) The old model wasn't really a beggar, was he? Who was he?
- 6) What did Trevor say about Baron Hausberg?
- 7) What did Trevor think of Hughie's giving the Baron a pound? Why had Trevor never expected that Hughie would give money to an ugly old model?
- 8) Why hadn't Trevor told his friend who the model was in the studio?
- 9) Why did Hughie feel ashamed of what he had done when he learned who the model was? What did he think the Baron might think of him?
- 10) Why did Trevor believe that the Baron was not offended by Hughie's act? What did he say?
- 11) What did the Baron send a servant to Hughie for? What did Hughie think he had come for?
- 12) Were you surprised by the ending of the story? Why /why not?

2. Look up the following words in an English-English dictionary before looking at the Word List. (You have to decide their part of speech first.)

frame (Para. 3) offer (Para. 5) heartless (Para. 6)

commission (Para. 13) whim (Para. 13) stammer (Para. 27)

3. Paraphrase the following.

- 1) What seems poverty to you is charm to me. (Para. 5)
- 2) ... you painters are a heartless lot. (Para. 6)
- 3) ... our business is to show the world as we see it, *not* to make it better. (Para. 7)
- 4) ... leaving Alan Trevor helpless with laughter. (Para. 22)
- 5) "Millionaire models," remarked Alan, "are rare enough; but model millionaires are rarer still!" (Para. 31)

4. Discuss or speak on the following topics.

- 1) What is the dictionary definition of a millionaire? What is a model millionaire according to Alan Trevor, the artist? Who is the model millionaire in the story?
- 2) Do you agree with the artist's idea about model millionaires?

5. Write a summary of the story in about 150 words with a one-sentence comment at the end.

You can use this outline:

- 1) Who was Hughie Erskine?
- 2) What act of kindness did he perform one day?
- 3) What did this act result in?

Vocabulary Exercises

1. Complete the following sentences with words formed in the same way as in the examples.

Examples:

useful 有用的 eventful 多事的 beautiful 美丽的

joyful 令人高兴的 hopeful 有希望的 forgetful 健忘的

(名词/少量动词 + -ful) → 形容词

careful 一车的量 spoonful 一勺的量 glassful 一玻璃杯的量

cupful 一杯 handful 一把 houseful 一屋子

(名词 + -ful → 名词)

arm care help mouth room success
--

- 1) He only ate a few ____ of food and then left home in a hurry.
- 2) She believes that it is possible for a woman to have both a(n) ____ career and a happy family life.
- 3) Susan returned with a(n) ____ of books.
- 4) If you had been more ____, you wouldn't have made so many mistakes.
- 5) He has been very ____ to his wife in all ways.
- 6) When he burst in, he found a(n) ____ of people talking excitedly.

2. Translate the following.

- 1) Use the verb + noun / adj. or adj. + noun collocation.

点燃香烟 装上镜框 一堆旧衣 变成碎片 情绪饱满

自言自语 支付利息 捧腹大笑 真诚道歉 满脸通红

发表演说 搓手 私事

2) Use the "useful expressions".

- (1) 愿意和我一起步行上山吗?
- (2) 在地震中,我心爱的瓷瓶从橱柜里掉下来,摔得粉碎。
- (3) 德国人入侵后,我的老师死也不肯再教德文了。
- (4) 在他们父亲的葬礼上,兄弟两个人为死者的钱财争论不休,当众出丑。
- (5) 这份报告第一论点不明确,第二论据也不充分。
- (6) 在他最后的日子,吉米虽然很虚弱,却依旧情绪饱满。
- (7) 汤姆无意伤害你,他只是实话实说罢了。
- (8) 当三位世界著名男高音 (tenors) 出现在舞台上时,整个音乐大厅爆发出掌声。
- (9) 在牛津大学当访问学者时,他有幸会见了不少的大科学家。
- (10) 休吉叫了起来:“我绝对没有想到那老模特是个百万富翁。”

3) Use *see*, *tell* and *show*.

- (1) 我看了看四周,但在黑暗里我什么也看不见。
- (2) 他把这些年来所搜集的珍贵邮票拿给朋友们看。
- (3) 我不明白你是什么意思。你为什么不告诉我真相?
- (4) 她教了我好几次怎样使用这台新洗衣机,可我记不住。
- (5) 他告诉我他第二天不能来开会,他要照顾生病的母亲。
- (6) 这家人刚搬到这个镇子来的时候,那位母亲叫孩子们天黑以后不要外出。
- (7) 他坚持把我送到公共汽车总站。
- (8) 下星期天这部电影还要在电视上重播。
- (9) 老师可以看得出吉姆对他的分数不是很高兴。

- (10) 导游把客人们领去看鲁迅出生的那个房间。
 (11) 许多城里人分不清水稻苗(rice seedlings)和杂草。
 (12) 他摇了摇头,公开表示了他与经理的观点不同。

3. Complete the following sentences.

1) Put suitable prepositions or adverbs in the blanks.

- (1) If you'd told me earlier about it, I wouldn't have made a fool ____ myself in front of so many people.
 (2) He was ____ a bad temper and shouted ____ me ____ the top of his voice.
 (3) Would you care ____ more coffee?
 (4) The heavy rain prevented us ____ catching the last train.
 (5) He said he was very interested ____ doing business ____ China.
 (6) Let me tell you about my work and experience in Paris ____ a fashion model.
 (7) ____ hearing the news, he sank ____ the sofa and burst ____ tears.
 (8) The old lady decided to give ____ her collection of rare stamps.
 (9) Every time I pass through the garden, I see the same old man collecting used plastic bags all himself.
 (10) What ____ earth are you laughing at? I think he looks smart ____ his new suit.
 (11) He had promised to see me _____ at the airport, but he didn't show _____.
 (12) I'll show you _____ the house after lunch.
 (13) The two brothers look very much alike, and many of their neighbours have trouble telling one _____ the

other.

(14) She wasn't at all popular with her fellow students because she was always trying to show _____ her wealth.

(15) If you can't see _____ the matter, please let me know.

2) Choose the correct word from the brackets.

(1) Unfortunately, there's nothing we can do to _____ the situation. (change, reform)

(2) Don't tell anyone else what I've told you; it's _____. (private, secret)

(3) She looked as _____ as a picture in her long white dress. (pretty, handsome)

(4) He always wore an expensive grey _____ and a dark red tie to go with it. (clothing, suit)

(5) This building is the _____ example of its type. (greatest, finest)

4. Choose the best word for each blank.

Cigarette smoking is considered dangerous to one's health. It's illegal to sell cigarettes to young people in some countries. Mr. Johnson, a tobacco seller, therefore, always asks his customers, if they are very young, whom the cigarettes are bought (1) _____ (by, for, to, with).

One day, a little girl whom he had never seen before, walked (2) _____ (boldly, heavily, hesitatingly, nervously) into his shop and (3) _____ (asked, commanded, demanded, ordered) twenty cigarettes. She had the (4) _____ (enough, exact, large, some) amount of money in her hand and seemed very (5) _____ (ashamed, fond, glad, sure) of herself.

Mr. Johnson was so (6) _____ (annoyed, pleased, surprised, worried) by her confident manner that he forgot to ask her who she was buying the cigarettes for, and only asked what kind of cigarettes she wanted. The girl replied (7) _____ (patiently, readily, slowly, softly) and handed him the money. While he was giving her the cigarettes, Mr. Johnson said laughingly that (8) _____ (as, for, though, while) she was so young she should hide the packet in her pocket in (9) _____ (case, consequence, fear, time) a policeman saw it. Nevertheless, the little girl didn't seem to find this very funny. Without (10) _____ (even, ever, little, some) smiling she took the packet and walked towards the door. Suddenly she stopped, turned round, and looked steadily at Mr. Johnson. There was a moment of silence and the tobacco-seller (11) _____ (considered, doubted, expected, wondered) what she was going to say. All at once, in a clear, (12) _____ (firm, humble, joking, weak) voice, the girl declared, "My dad is a policeman," and with that she walked quickly out of the shop.

Grammar & Usage

The Predictive

The Subject Complement

1. 表语置于系动词后,构成主语 + 系(动词) + 表语结构

1) 名词词组、形容词词组和介词词组作表语

She is *a very responsible teacher*. (名词词组)

This is *the right place for the meeting*. (名词词组)

He is *the right man to go to Moscow and negotiate with*

the Russian leaders. (名词词组)

The dish *smells good*. (形容词)

The answer is *absolutely correct*. (形容词词组)

The book is *easy for adults*. (形容词词组)

He was *eager to please everybody*. (形容词词组)

It was indeed *a terrible thing to happen*. (形容词词组)

Your room is *on the third floor*, Sir. (介词词组)

I'll be *at home* all day Friday. (介词词组)

2) 不定式结构作表语

Shakespeare says, "To die is *to sleep*."

Our next step is *to try out this drug on animals*.

Our suggestion is *to develop high-tech products*.

The question is *where to get the money and how to organize the work*.

An artist's business is *to show the world* as he sees it, not *to make it better*.

The boy's ambition is *to become a scientist* when he grows up.

What I want is *to call off* the meeting immediately.

注意 be + to do 不一定是系表结构,这一结构常常用来表示命令或安排。

You *are to wear* uniforms at work. (命令)

The plane *is to take off* at 8.30 p.m. (安排)

3) 动名词和分词词组作表语

What I like most is *going window shopping* with my mother. (动名词词组)

His favourite sport is *playing football*. (动名词词组)

The door remained *locked* for a whole day. (分词)

The man looked *disappointed* when he was stopped at the entrance. (分词)

注意:过去分词作表语时,起形容词作用,没有被动的意思。

He was too *excited* to be able to take part in the contest.

4) 代词作表语

It's *me*.

This room is *yours*; the next one is *mine*.

Don't worry. It's *nothing* serious.

5) 名词从句作表语

Their idea is *that we should build another school in this district*.

The fact is *that I can't do much about this*.

This is *how he managed to get everything done in such a short time*.

That's *why I'd left my mum and dad in the North, and came to London*.

2. 主语补足语是在句中补充说明主语状况的成分

在主语 + 谓语 + 主补结构中谓语表示主语的行为,主补表示主语的状况。

1) 谓语为不及物动词

die, return 和 be born 后面可跟形容词或名词作补语。

He died *young*. (形容词)

He died *a hero*. (名词)

They were born *poor*. (形容词)

She was born *a slave*. (名词)

Andersen returned *a world-famous writer*. (名词)

一般不及物动词后只能跟形容词或过去分词作主语补足语。

The students walked home *proud and satisfied*.

2) 谓语为及物动词时可由形容词或过去分词作主语补足语。

He gazed at her *speechless*.

She stared at the box *wide-eyed*.

She looked at her exercise-books *tired and sleepy*.

She read his letter *heart-broken*.

He turned to look at me, *obviously angry*.

The window was found *tightly shut*.

- 3) 带有宾语补足语的句子变成被动语态时, 宾语补足语则变成了主语补足语。

He was found *a very boring man*. (名词)

The ship was called *Elizabeth*. (名词)

The meat is cooked *rare* (嫩). (形容词)

The door was kicked *open*. (形容词)

Xiao Wang was elected *President of the Students' Association*. (名词)

The patient was told *not to take too much salt*. (不定式词组)

The tap was left *running all night*. (分词词组)

The residents were urged *to leave the dangerous house immediately*. (不定式词组)

Exercises

1. Complete the following sentences with the infinitive form or participle form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1) To kill rare animals is _____ (damage) the balance of nature.
- 2) After a hard day's work, the men went home _____ (exhaust).
- 3) Everything in the room was left _____ (untouch) until the police arrived.

- 4) Best sellers may not be ideal _____ (use) in the classroom.
- 5) Seeing is _____ (believe), as the saying goes.
- 6) I believe John is the best person _____ (do) the job.
- 7) To give a child whatever he wants is _____ (spoil) him.
- 8) The poor girl's wish is _____ (have) a pair of warm shoes.
- 9) These poor children were made _____ (copy) the text twenty times after school.
- 10) His hobby is _____ (collect) stamps.
- 11) Parents often get _____ (annoy) when their children keep arguing and pestering.
- 12) All the blacks refused to take the buses in the city. They were _____ (leave) empty.

2. Translate the following sentences into English, using the link verb + predictive structure or subject complements.

- 1) 他太急于求成。
- 2) 人们普遍认为许多下岗妇女的最大弱点就是缺少信心。
- 3) 大家高兴地发现(to everybody's delight),一切都很正常。
- 4) 这就是我对他投了反对票的原因。
- 5) 我们认为这是一个危险的步骤。
- 6) 玛丽的的问题就是她从不愿自己独立做事情。
- 7) 我的位置在中国,那里正处在现代化过程中,急需有决心、有知识的人。
- 8) 这就是我在西藏的所见所闻,令人深受鼓舞。
- 9) 伽利略不体面地(in disgrace)离开家乡,多年以后他回来时是一位倍受敬仰的科学家。
- 10) 克里斯的母亲坚信,她的儿子生来残疾,但不是生来白痴。

3. Complete the following sentences according to the hint given.

- 1) I didn't go to New York because I wasn't granted a visa.
The reason _____.
- 2) Who will take care of my house when I am away?
The problem _____.
- 3) He was given the scholarship because of that.
That's why _____.
- 4) Where can I get the book?
What troubles me _____.
- 5) Has John arrived yet?
His first question _____.
- 6) You do not learn anything from your mistakes.
The only embarrassment _____.
- 7) He was breathless when he climbed to the top floor.
He reached the top floor _____.
- 8) The teacher told the children to keep away from those poisonous plants.
The children were told _____.
- 9) It is very difficult to find a good salesman.
A good salesman is _____.
- 10) Who left these instruments uncovered in the sun?
These instruments were _____.

4. Put in the correct form of the words in the brackets (revision: participles).

- 1) Last night I was awakened by the _____ (deafen) sound of an explosion.
- 2) Do you think Chinese will become a _____ (universally accept) language?
- 3) I don't like _____ (hard-boil) eggs at all.

- 4) John Smith is a(n) _____ (experience) detective and has solved many murder mysteries.
- 5) I'm afraid there are some _____ (conflict) ideas concerning your proposal.
- 6) After a whole month's practice, the _____ (long-await) moment has come at last.
- 7) We Chinese people, also _____ (call) the off-spring of the dragon, can never be defeated.
- 8) The painting, _____ (belong) to an ancient family, was sold at the auction.
- 9) The disease, usually _____ (find) in big cities, can now be cured with Chinese herbs.
- 10) _____ (cook) in tomato sauce, this fish tastes delicious.

Quotations for the Lesson

A man is rich according to what he IS, not according to what he HAS.

author unknown

The rich are not always godly, but the godly are always rich.

Samuel Johnson

Riches are not an end of life, but an instrument of life.

Henry Ward Beecher

Lesson Nine

Text

Only Three More Days

William L. Shirer

第二次世界大战结束已经五十多年,但是这场人类有史以来最大的灾难,至今仍然给人们留下许多值得反思的问题,仍然是影视、文学、艺术作品热衷于挖掘的题材。经受了这场战争的人不会忘记那个年代,也希望今天的年轻人牢记这场战争给人们的教训,不让历史重演。从这个意义上来说,60年代出版并风靡世界的《第三帝国的兴亡》的作者如何在纳粹分子鼻子底下携带大量珍贵资料大模大样登上德国航空公司的班机逃离柏林的故事,仍然具有现实意义。

- 1 My Berlin diary for December 2 was limited to four words.
- 2 "Only three more days!"
- 3 Next day, December 3: "... The Foreign Office still holding up my passport and exit visa, which worries me. Did my last broadcast from Berlin tonight."
- 4 "Berlin, December 4: Got my passport and official permission to leave tomorrow. Nothing to do now but pack."
- 5 There was one other thing to do. For weeks I had thought over how to get my diaries safely out of Berlin. At some moments I had thought I ought to destroy them before leaving. There was enough in

them to get me hanged — if the Gestapo ever discovered them.

6 The morning I got my passport and exit visa I realized I had less than twenty-four hours to figure out a way of getting my Berlin diaries out. I again thought of destroying them, but I wanted very much to keep them, if I could. Suddenly, later that morning, the solution became clear. It was risky, but life in the Third Reich had always been risky. It was worth a try.

7 I laid out the diaries in two big steel suitcases I had bought. Over them I placed a number of my broadcast scripts, each page of which had been stamped by the military and civilian censors as passed for broadcast. On top I put a few General Staff maps I had picked up from friends. Then I phoned the Gestapo Headquarters. I had a couple of suitcases full of my dispatches, broadcasts and notes that I wanted to take out of the country, I said. As I was flying off early the next day, there would be no time for Gestapo officials at the airfield to go over the contents. Could they take a look now, if I brought them over; and if they approved, put a Gestapo seal on the suitcases so I wouldn't be held up at the airport?

8 "Bring them over," the official said.

9 After I hung up, I had some more doubts. Wasn't I tempting fate: how could these hard-nosed Nazi detectives help but smell out the diaries beneath my broadcasts? That would be the end of me. Maybe I had just better begin to flush them down the toilet. On the other hand . . . I calculated that the secret police would seize the General Staff maps. That's why I had put them there on top. Customs officials always felt better if they found something in your bags to seize, and so would these Gestapo officials.

10 Then they would look at the layers of my broadcast scripts and I would point to the censors' stamps of approval on each page. That would make a Gestapo official sit up and take notice. It would give

me prestige in his eyes, or at least make me less suspect, foreigner though I was. I was going to gamble on their inspection ending there, before they dug deeper to my diaries. The feared Gestapo, I knew, was really not very efficient.

11 Everything at Gestapo headquarters worked out as I had planned. The two officials who handled me seized at once my General Staff maps. I apologized. I had forgotten, I said, that I had put them in. They had been very valuable to me in reporting the army's great victories. I realized I shouldn't take out General Staff maps.

12 "What else you've got here?" one of the men said, putting his paw on the pile of papers.

13 "The texts of my broadcast," I said, ". . . every page, as you can see, stamped for approval by the High Command and two ministries."

14 Both men studied the censors' stamps. I could see they were impressed. They put their hands in a little deeper, each man now looking into a suitcase. Soon they would reach the diaries. I now wished I had not come. I felt myself beginning to sweat. I had deliberately got myself into this jam. What a fool!

15 "You reported on the German army?" one of the agents looked up to ask.

16 "All the way to Paris, " I said. "A great army it was, and a great story for me. It will go down in history!"

17 That settled everything. They put half a dozen Gestapo seals on my suitcases. I tried not to thank them too much. Outside, I called a taxi and drove away.

18 The last entry I would ever make in my diary from Hitler's Berlin:

19 December 5. —It was still dark and a storm was blowing when I left for the airport this morning . . .

20 As my taxi drove to the airport I wondered if my plane could take off in such weather. If the flight was canceled it might mean I would have to stay for weeks.

21 At the customs there was literally a herd of officials. I opened the two bags with my personal belongings, and after pawing through them two officials chalked a sign of approval on them. I noticed they were from the Gestapo. They pointed to the two suitcases full of my diaries.

22 "Open them up!" one of them said rudely.

23 "I can't," I said. "They're sealed — by the Gestapo."

24 I felt grateful that there were at least a half-dozen seals. The two officials talked in whispers for a moment.

25 "Where were those bags sealed?" one of them snapped.

26 "At Gestapo Headquarters," I said.

27 This information impressed them. But still they seemed suspicious.

28 "Just a minute," one said. His colleague picked up the phone at a table behind them. Obviously he was checking. The man hung up, walked over to me, and without a word chalked the two suitcases. I was free at last to get to the ticket counter to check my luggage.

29 "Where to?" a Lufthansa man asked.

30 "Lisbon," I said.

31 The thought of the German airline delivering my diaries to me safely in Portugal, beyond the reach of the last German official who could seize them, extremely pleased me.

32 The airport tower kept postponing the departure of our plane. I went to the restaurant and had a second breakfast. I really was not hungry. But I had to do something to relieve the tension. I started to glance at the morning papers I had bought automatically on arriving at the airport.

33 “I don’t have to read any of this trash anymore!” I thought.

34 Before the end of this day, when we would arrive in Barcelona, I wouldn’t have to put up with anything anymore in the great Third Reich. The sense of relief I felt was tremendous. I had only to hold out this one more day, and the whole nightmare for me would be over, though it would go on and on for millions of others.

35 We had survived the Nazi horror and its mindless suppression of the human spirit. But many others, I felt sadly, had not survived — the Jews above all, but also the Czechs and now the Poles. Even for the great mass of Germans who supported Hitler, I felt a sort of sorrow. They did not seem to realize what the poison of Nazism was doing to them.

Word List

passport /'pɑ:spɔ:t/ <i>n.</i>	护照
exit /'eksɪt, 'egzɪt/ <i>n.</i>	出去, 离去
visa /'vi:zə/ <i>n.</i>	签证
permission /pə'mɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	许可, 准许
solution /sə'lu:ʃən/ <i>n.</i>	解决方法
risky /'rɪskɪ/ <i>adj.</i>	冒险的
stamp /stæmp/ <i>vt.</i>	盖章于
civilian /sɪ'vɪljən/ <i>adj.</i>	平民的; 民用的
censor /'sensə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	(书刊、报纸、电影等的) 审查官
dispatch /dɪ'spætʃ/ <i>n.</i>	急件; 快信
airfield /'eəfi:ld/ <i>n.</i>	机场
approve /ə'pru:v/ <i>vt.</i>	批准; 认可
seal /si:l/ <i>n.</i>	印章
tempt /tempt/ <i>vt.</i>	冒……风险

hard-nosed /'hɑ:d'nəʊzd/ <i>adj.</i>	(口)精明的;执拗的,倔强的;
flush /flʌʃ/ <i>vt.</i>	冲洗
calculate /'kælkjuleɪt/ <i>vt.</i>	估计,确信
customs /'kʌstəmz/ <i>n.</i>	(复)海关
prestige /pre'sti:ʒ/ <i>n.</i>	威望,声望
suspect /sə'spekt/ <i>adj.</i>	令人怀疑的
gamble /'gæmbəl/ <i>vi.</i>	孤注一掷;赌
inspection /ɪn'spekʃən/ <i>n.</i>	检查
ministry /'mɪnɪstri/ <i>n.</i>	部
entry /'entri/ <i>n.</i>	条目,项目
cancel /'kænsəl/ <i>vt.</i>	取消
belongings /bɪ'lɔ:ŋɪŋz/ <i>n.</i>	(复)财产;所有物
chalk /tʃɔ:k/ <i>vt.</i>	用粉笔写、画
rudely /'ru:dli/ <i>adv.</i>	粗暴地
half-dozen /'hɑ:fdʌzən/ <i>adj.</i>	半打,六个
snap /snæp/ <i>vi.</i>	历声地说
airline /'eəlaɪn/ <i>n.</i>	航空公司;航线
safely /'seɪfli/ <i>adv.</i>	安全地
postpone /'pəʊst'pəʊn/ <i>vt.</i>	推迟;延搁
departure /dɪ'pɑ:tʃə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	离开,出发
survive /sə'vaɪv/ <i>vt.</i>	经历……后仍然活着,残存
horror /'hɒrə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	恐怖
mindless /'maɪndlɪs/ <i>adj.</i>	愚蠢的;没头脑的
suppression /sə'preʃən/ <i>n.</i>	压制,镇压

Proper Names

William L. Shirer /'wɪljəm el 威廉·L·希雷
'ʃaɪə(r)ə/

Gestapo /ge'stɑ:pəu/	盖世太保(纳粹德国时期的秘密警察)
Third Reich /'θɜ:d 'raɪf/ n.	(德意志)第三帝国(指希特勒统治下的德国)
General Staff /'dʒenərəl 'stɑ:f/	参谋部
Nazi /'nɑ:tsɪ/	纳粹
High Command /'haɪ kə'mɑ:nd/	统帅部;最高指挥官
Lufthansa /'luft,hænsə/	(德国)汉莎航空公司
Lisbon /'lɪzbən/	里斯本
Portugal /'pɔ:tju:gl,-tʃu-/	葡萄牙
Barcelona /ɪbə:sl'ləʊnə/	巴塞罗那
Jew /dʒu:/	犹太人
Czech /tʃek/	捷克人
Pole /pəʊl/	波兰人
Hitler /'hɪtlə(r)/	希特勒
Nazism /'nɑ:tsɪzəm/	纳粹主义

Useful Expressions

limit... to	仅限于
hold up	中断
figure out	搞清楚,想清楚
lay out	摊开
smell out	察觉
sit up (and take notice)	(口)吃惊,吓一跳;警觉
get oneself into	卷入
all the way	一路上
put up with	忍受
work out	结果

Word Study

put *vt.*

1. 放;使……在……

V + N + prep. phrase / adv.

She *put the heavy shopping bag down* to open the door.

He *put the small sack into his pack*, rose to his feet and staggered on.

He sat down and allowed the barber *to put a cloth about his neck*.

The druggist plunged in an electric coffee pot, found two cups and *put them on a table*.

It's time *to put the children to bed*.

His family decided *to put him in the hospital*.

2. 使处于某种状态

V + N + prep. phrase

The scandal *put the republicans in an awkward situation*.

The economic crisis *put quite a number of banks out of business*.

The business of the college is not only to train you, but *to put you in touch* with what the best human minds have thought.

3. 表达,说;写下;翻译

V + N + prep. phrase / adv.

Would you *put your name and address here*?

The genius of Andersen is that he *put so much of everyday life into the wonder of his fairy tales*.

Andersen's fairy tales *have been put into different languages*.

As an experienced debater, he *put his arguments briefly and clearly*.

It's hard *to put that sort of feeling into words*.

4. 用于各种引申意义

V + N + prep. phrase

When a man is going to do something foolish he prefers, if possible, *to put the responsibility on to someone else*.

Government officials *should put the interests of the state above their own*.

Don't put any more pressure on him.

These retired people *put much of their time and energy into voluntary work*.

5. Phrases:

put sth. down 镇压; 写下, 记下

put sth. into practice 付诸实践

put sth. off 延期, 推迟

put sth. on 穿上, 戴上; 增加(体重等); 装出(样子); (戏剧等) 上演

put sb. up 推荐

put sth. up 举起; 修建; 张贴

put up with sb. / sth. 忍受

hold *vt.*

1. 抓住, 握住, 拿着; 拥抱

V + N + adj.; V + N + adv. / prep. phrase

All through the night the young Marine sat there in the dimly-lit ward, *holding the old man's hand* and offering words of hope and strength.

Before saying goodbye, they *held each other tight* for a long time.

Mother *held the slate steady* for me.

The guests *held handkerchiefs* to their eyes, but their tears were tears of laughter, not sadness.

The detective picked up the receiver of Miss Winthrop's phone and *held it to his ear* a moment.

2. 举行(多用于被动结构)

V + N

A great dinner was held in Andersen's honour.

The Fourth World Conference on Women was held in 1995 in Beijing.

3. 控制;抑制;吸引

V + N

A sudden feeling of joy *held her*.

She *held her breath* and slipped into the room.

Their excellent performance *held the attention* of the audience.

4. 容纳

V + N

The stadium *can hold 2,000 people*.

The album *holds all my photos*.

5. 拥有(若干比例的股份),占有(职位);持有(观点等)

V + N

The family *holds 2,000 IBM shares*.

He *has held the position* of president of the company for 10 years.

We think everyone is entitled *to hold opinions* different from those of other people.

6. Phrases:

hold sb. / sth. down 控制,镇压,制止,阻止

hold sth. in 抑制(感情等)

hold sth. out 伸出(手等)

hold out 坚持,维持

hold sth. up 耽搁,耽误;使停顿;使停滞

pick *vt.*

1. 摘(花或果实等),摘取

V + N; V + N + N; V + N + for + N

Often he stopped to *pick some small berries* and put them into his mouth.

He *picked her a small bunch of wild flowers*.

He *picked the biggest apple* for his mother.

2. 挑选,选取

V + N; V + N (+ to do) / prep. phrase

Many people *picked 9/9/1999* for their wedding.

He *has been picked to represent his firm* in New York.

He *has been picked as a representative* of his firm in New York.

3. Phrases:

pick and choose 仔细挑选

pick out sb. / sth. 选择;(从多数中)找出,分辨出;了解,领会

pick sth. up 拾起;(不经意)学会;(偶尔)买;(开车)去接或取

Notes on the Text

1. **About the author:** 威廉·L·希雷(1904—),美国记者、作家。生于芝加哥,大学毕业后从事新闻事业,任《芝加哥论坛报》(*The Chicago Tribune*)巴黎版记者以及哥伦比亚广播公司(CBS News)驻巴黎记者。作为驻柏林记者,他很早就感觉到纳粹主义对世界和平的威胁,离开柏林后于1941年出版了《柏林日

记》(*Berlin Diary*),反映在希特勒统治下柏林的内部情况。战后他继续为杂志、报纸及电视台写报道。1960年出版了《第三帝国的兴亡》(*The Rise and Fall of the Third Reich*),此书深刻揭露了纳粹分子犯下的令人发指的滔天罪行,译成包括汉语的许多文字,并荣获美国国家图书奖。他的其他主要著作有《“俾斯麦”号的沉没》(*The Sinking of Bismarck*, 1962),《20世纪行程》(*Twenty Century Journey*, 1976),《噩梦年代》(*The Nightmare Years*, 1984)。

2. About the text: 《在柏林最后的3天》选自作者的《柏林日记》,课文经过删减。

本文有以下几个特点:

- 1) 文章由作者在柏林的最后3天的日记的简略记载串联起来:
 - (1) 12月2号日记的四个词突出了时间的紧迫;
 - (2) 12月3号的日记反映了作者因扣发他的护照与签证而担心;
 - (3) 12月4号拿到护照和签证后开始设法把日记带出德国,由此引出了与盖世太保的一番斗智,这是课文的核心部分;
 - (4) 5号离开柏林之前的虚拟日记记下了清晨去机场时的恶劣天气,预示他的前面还有险情,但最后一切化险为夷,他怀着复杂的心情离开了柏林。
- 2) 本文不是客观记载历史事实的文件,而是以个人的亲身经历与感受记录了作者在希特勒统治下的柏林最后3天的生活,既生动又深刻,虽然没有具体揭露纳粹分子的罪行,却能引起读者对他们的痛恨。
 - (1) 作者用相当的篇幅描写他的思想活动,包括思想斗争,同时也详尽地记录了他与盖世太保的周旋,两种叙述交叉进行。作者表面所说的和他的实际想法形成鲜明的对照。

(2) 作者对纳粹德国尤其是盖世太保的憎恨和鄙视不是通过破口大骂而发泄的,而是通过比喻和反语等修辞手段从字里行间表现出来的,因而更加深刻。如把纳粹主义比成是毒物(the poison of Nazism);描写盖世太保用 paw(爪)而不用 hand, pawing(用爪去摸)与 smell out(嗅出)将他们与动物等同起来;用 trash 指纳粹报纸;用 great(反语)一词来挖苦纳粹第三帝国等等。

3. My Berlin diary for December 2 was limited to four words: 我 12 月 2 日的柏林日记只有四个词。

be limited to: 仅限于,限制在……范围之内,又如:

His stay in the city *is limited to* 4 days a month.

他每个月在这座城市只可停留 4 天。

Their reading *is limited to* computer science and telecommunications.

他们阅读的范围仅限于计算机科学与(远距离)电讯。

4. The Foreign Office still holding up my passport and exit visa, which worries me. Did my last broadcast from Berlin tonight: 外交部仍然压着我的护照和出境签证,真叫人担心。今晚在柏林进行了最后一次广播。

注意日记体的特点。写日记的目的一般是记录下对自己来说比较重要的事件,只要自己能看明白就行,所以往往用省略句。第一句省略了谓语动词的一部分 is,第二句主语 I 省略。日记中的 I 经常省略,又如第四段中的 Got my passport and official permission to leave tomorrow。有时主语和动词全省略,如(I had) Nothing to do but pack。

hold up: 使延误,阻止,又如:

The storm *held up* our flight for 40 minutes.

那场暴风雨使我们的航班延误了 40 分钟。

They *had been held up* on the road by an accident so they

were late.

他们在路上因一起车祸而耽误了时间,因此迟到了。

I do hope my application for leave *won't be held up* too long.

希望我请假的申请尽早批下来。

which worries me 是定语从句,关系代词 which 代表整个主句的意思,又如:

He said he was busy, *which* was true.

他说他很忙,这倒是真的。

James Watt watched a steaming kettle for quite a while,
which rather annoyed his aunt.

詹姆斯·瓦特楞着看那冒气的水壶看了好长一段时间,这使他的姑妈很恼火。

- 5. For weeks I had thought over how to get my diaries safely out of Berlin:** 几个星期以来我一直在考虑如何安全地把我的日记弄出柏林。

think sth. over / think over what, when, how, etc.: consider sth. carefully before reaching a decision(决定之前)仔细考虑,又如:

I hope you'll *think the matter over*. It's a big decision to take.

希望你仔细考虑这件事,这可是个重大的决定。

He lay in bed, *thinking over what* to do next.

他躺在床上琢磨下一步该怎么办。

get (sth. / sb.) out of: move (sth. / sb.) out of 把……弄出来,又如:

The fire brigade managed to *get all the children out of* the burning building.

消防队员们把所有的孩子从那栋正被熊熊大火吞没的楼房救了出来。

We must get these rare animals out of the place before the

flood.

我们必须赶在洪水到来之前把那些珍稀动物撤走。

The door wouldn't open, and five people *couldn't get out of* the lift.

门打不开了,有五个人在电梯里出不来。

6. **There was enough in them to get me hanged — if the Gestapo ever discovered them:** 要是盖世太保发现了我的日记,那里面有足以把我送上绞刑架的内容。

the Gestapo: 臭名昭著的纳粹德国时期的秘密警察,希特勒镇压、残害进步人士及犹太人的工具,罪恶昭彰。

to get me hanged, 修饰 enough。绞刑是纳粹德国时期实施死刑的重要方式。

7. **Suddenly, later that morning, the solution became clear:** 那天上午晚些时候,办法突然明朗了。

8. **It was risky, but life in the Third Reich had always been risky. It was worth a try:** 这个办法要冒很大的风险,不过在第三帝国生活本身就是冒险,因此这个办法值得一试。

the Third Reich: 第三帝国(1933.1—1945.5),德国纳粹政权的正式名称,即继承神圣罗马帝国(第一帝国)和德意志帝国(第二帝国)的意思。神圣罗马帝国(8世纪—1806)为传统的欧洲政治组织,从10世纪中期直至德意志帝国结束德国历代君主均称神圣罗马帝国皇帝。1871—1918年的德意志帝国为表明它继承中世纪帝国常称为第二帝国;出于同样的理由,希特勒称他的纳粹德国为第三帝国。

9. **Over them I placed a number of my broadcast scripts, each page of which had been stamped by the military and civilian censors as passed for broadcast:** 在日记的上面我放了一些广播稿,这些广播稿的每一页都盖有军方和文职新闻检查官的印章以示予以通过,可以广播。

which had been... 是定语从句,修饰 a number of my broadcast

scripts。

as passed for broadcast 作主语 each of which 的补足语。在相应的主动语态的句子里则作宾语的补足语。请比较下列例句：

The censors stamped the scripts *as passed for broadcast* .

检查官在稿子上盖了章批准广播。

The president signed his application for retirement *as approved* .

校长在他的申请书上签了字批准他退休。

His application for retirement was signed by the president *as approved* .

他的退休申请书校长签字予以批准。

as 后面可跟名词、形容词、分词等。

- 10. On top I put a few General Staff maps I had picked up from friends:** 在最上面我放了几张我从朋友那里搞到的总参谋部使用的地图。

pick up: 得到,弄到;买到,又如:

—Where *did you pick up* that nice little mobile phone of yours?

你从哪里买到你那个漂亮的小手机?

—It goes with my job.

我工作单位发的。

Mr. Jones *picked up* a few valuable stamps in that small shop.

琼斯先生在那个小店买到几张很有价值的邮票。

Cf. So we were in our twenty-first night adrift — the night in which the tramp *Croton* finally *picked us up* .

原来我们已经进入了第二十一夜的海上漂流,也就是后来“克洛顿”货船把我们从海上救起的那天夜里。

- 11. there would be no time for Gestapo officials at the airfield to go over the contents:** 机场的盖世太保不会有时间检查箱子里装

的东西。

12. **Could they take a look now, if I brought them over; and if they approved, put a Gestapo seal on the suitcases so I wouldn't be held up at the airport?**: 我要是现在拿过去他们能否检查一下? 如果他们觉得没有问题,能否在箱子上打上盖世太保的印章,以免我在机场耽搁?(这是两个特殊的间接疑问句,用的是疑问句的语序,但没有引号。这种叙事方法简练、生动,在文学作品中常见。)

第二句中动词 put 前省略了 could they。so (that) 引出目的从句。

13. **Wasn't I tempting fate**: 我这不是在拿性命开玩笑吗?(作者打完电话又开始犹疑起来。)

tempt fate / providence: take a risk 冒险,玩命,又如:

The bike brakes don't work. If you ride downhill, you'll be *tempting fate*.

这辆自行车的闸不灵了。你要是骑它走下坡,那你就是玩儿命。

14. **how could these hard-nosed Nazi detectives help but smell out the diaries beneath my broadcasts?**: 那些精明的纳粹侦探怎么可能不嗅出广播稿下面的日记呢?(他们只要往下一翻,还能看不到我的日记吗?)

can't help but do sth.: 不可避免会做……;忍不住做……,又如:

He *can't help but reject* the offer if there are strings attached.
如果有附带条件,他不可能不拒绝。

We *couldn't help but laugh* when we heard his story.
听了他的故事,我们忍不住大笑起来。

smell sth. / sb. out: 嗅出,(口语)探出,又如:

The dog *smelt out* drugs in the suitcase.
那狗闻出了箱子里的毒品。

This legendary detective is said to be able to *smell out* murderers.

据说那个传奇式的侦探能嗅出杀人犯。

15. **that would be the end of me:** 那我就完了。

16. **Maybe I had just better begin to flush them down the toilet:** 或许我最好还是现在就动手,把日记扔进马桶冲掉。

17. **I calculated that the secret police would seize the General Staff maps:** 我估计秘密警察会没收那些军用地图。

18. **Customs officials always felt better if they found something in your bags to seize, and so would these Gestapo officials:** 海关官员要是能在你的旅行袋里找到什么能没收的东西总会感到高兴,盖世太保的官员也会是这样。

something to seize: 指未经许可非法携带出关或入关的物品。

19. **the layers of my broadcast scripts:** 那一摞摞的广播稿。

20. **That would make a Gestapo official sit up and take notice:** 那些印章会一下子引起任何一个盖世太保的注意。

make sb. sit up (and take notice): (口语)使……吃惊,使……吓了一跳;使警觉,引起……的注意,又如:

The strange noise *made all of us sit up and take notice.*

那奇怪的声音使我们都警觉起来。

A few strange personal ads in the paper *made Bob Sugg sit up and take notice*, and he helped *smell out* a series of burglaries.

报纸上几则蹊跷的个人启事引起了鲍勃·萨格的注意,他协助(警方)查出了一系列入室盗窃案。

21. **It would give me prestige in his eyes, or at least make me less suspect, foreigner though I was:** 尽管我是外国人这也会让他对我刮目相看,至少也能减少他对我的猜疑。

it 指上句所提的内容(他们对那些印章注目)。

suspect *adj.*: 信不过的;可疑的。

foreigner though I was: though I was a foreigner, 是正式的用法。

22. **I was going to gamble on their inspection ending there, before they dug deeper to my diaries:** 我要把宝押在他们的检查到此为止上, 而不再往下翻到我的日记。

gamble on sth. / doing sth.: 希望成功而冒着失败的危險做……, 又如:

He called for another vote, *gambling on getting* more support.

他要求再举行一次投票, 冒着失败的危險寻求更多人的支持。

You shouldn't *gamble on the supply of spare parts arriving* promptly.

你可不能把賭注全押在零件能立即到位这一点上。

在这个句型中, gamble 后面的动名词表示的是主语的行为 (如 getting more support), 如果不是就需要在动名词的前面加上一个名词短语或代词作其逻辑主语, 如 their inspection 和 the supply of spare parts. 它们的行为分别是 ending 和 arriving.

23. **The feared Gestapo, I knew, was really not very efficient:** 我知道那些令人畏惧的盖世太保并非真的很能干。(注意挖苦的口吻。)

24. **Everything at Gestapo headquarters worked out as I had planned:** 在秘密警察总部, 一切都按照我的计划顺利进行。

work out: develop in a specific way 按……发展; 产生结果; 成功, 又如:

Their experiment *worked out* differently.

他们实验产生了不同的结果。

Things *did not work out* as well as we expected.

情况的发展不如我们预料的那样好。

Their marriage *did not work out*.

他们的婚姻并不成功。

25. **They had been very valuable to me in reporting the army's great victories. I realized I shouldn't take out General Staff maps:** 这些地图对我报道军队的伟大胜利非常有用。我认识到我不应该把军用地图带出德国。(对付盖世太保作者采用了两个手法,一是假意赞扬,二是主动“认错”,二者均十分奏效。)

26. **every page, as you can see, stamped for approval by the High Command and two ministries:** 你看,每一页都盖有最高指挥部和两个部门的批准印章。

every page stamped... 在 every page 与 stamped 之间省略了 has been。

the High Command: the Supreme Command of the German Armed Forces 德国武装力量最高指挥部的简称。

27. **They put their hands in a little deeper, each man now looking into a suitcase. Soon they would reach the diaries:** 他们两人把手往深处伸去,一人检查一个箱子,很快他们就会摸到日记。

each man now looking into a suitcase 为独立主格分词结构。

28. **I felt myself beginning to sweat. I had deliberately got myself into this jam. What a fool!:** 我觉得我浑身开始冒汗,我这是自投罗网,真是个大傻瓜!

be / get (oneself) into a jam: (使自己)处境困境或尴尬。

29. **"All the way to Paris, " I said. "A great army it was, and a great story for me. It will go down in history!":** “一直追踪报道到巴黎。”我说。“真是一支了不起的军队,对我来说是极好的新闻素材。这支军队的业绩将会载入史册。”(又是一番假意赞扬的话使情况有了转机。)

all the way / the whole way: during the entire journey; during the whole period of a time 一路上;自始至终,又如:

In order to catch the 8.20 bus, he ran *all the way* to the stop.

为了赶 8 点 20 分那趟公共汽车,他一口气跑到车站。

The defendant kept silent *all the way* through the trial.

被告在审判过程中自始至终没有开口。

make / go down in history: 载入史册,又如:

Marco Polo *made history* by visiting and reporting on China in the 13th century.

马可·波罗在 13 世纪访问了中国并报道了中国的情况,因而创造了载入史册的事迹。

This is a battle that will go down in *military history*.

这一战役将载入军事史册。

30. **The last entry I would ever make in my diary from Hitler's Berlin:** (要是我在希特勒统治的柏林最后写了一则日记的话) 我会这样写。(在柏林的最后一天,天不亮作者就出发去机场,他没有记日记。)

I would ever make... 虚拟语气。这是个定语从句,修饰 the last entry.

31. **Obviously he was checking:** 很明显他是在与盖世太保总部核实。

32. **I was free at last to get to the ticket counter to check my luggage:** 我终于没事了,可以去托运行李了。

be free to do sth.: 不受限制做……;得到允许做……,又如:

All students who have returned from abroad *are free to come and go*.

从海外归国的留学生来去自由。

In this family the children *are free to decide* what they would like to do.

在这个家庭里孩子们可以自由决定做自己想做的事。

33. **"Where to?" a Lufthansa man asked:**“目的地?”一个汉莎航空公司的工作人员问道。

Lufthansa: 指 1926 年成立的德国汉莎航空公司。该公司于

1945 年战争结束时停止营业,1951 年正式清理。其继承公司——汉莎航空公司于 1953 年 1 月在科隆成立,由当时的西德联邦政府、德意志全国铁路公司和北莱茵—威斯特伐伦州合办,此后又接纳私人投资。

34. **The thought of the German airline delivering my diaries to me safely in Portugal, beyond the reach of the last German official who could seize them, extremely pleased me:** 由汉莎这个德国航空公司把我的日记平安地给我送到葡萄牙,再也没有任何德国军官可以没收了,想到这里我感到万分得意。

the (very) thought of (doing) sth. : (表示“想到……引起某人的强烈的情感”)一想到……,又如:

The very thought of going home filled him with warmth.

想到回家他感到浑身温暖。(going home 表示 he 的行为。)

The very thought of his aging parents living alone made him sad.

一想到他年迈的双亲自己单过他感到难受。(living alone 不是 he 的行为,而是 his parents 的行为。)

beyond the reach of sb. / sb.'s reach: 手所够不到的地方;超越……的职权、控制、能力等,又如:

All dangerous things should be placed beyond children's reach.

一切危险品都要放在孩子们够不到的地方。

Finally he found salesmanship was beyond his reach.

最后他终于发现他搞不了推销。

35. **I started to glance at the morning papers I had bought automatically on arriving at the airport:** 我开始浏览到达机场时无意买的那些晨报。

glance at / over / through: read sth. quickly or not thoroughly 浏览,又如:

Would you glance at the newspaper story about the event?

你把关于那个事件的这篇新闻报道浏览一遍好吗？

I've just glanced through the book, and think it's worth being translated into Chinese.

我把这本书浏览了一遍，觉得值得翻译成汉语。

36. **"I don't have to read any of this trash anymore!" I thought:** 我想：“我再也不必读这些陈词滥调了！”

this trash 这里指纳粹德国的报纸宣传希特勒的纳粹思想、德国军队的“伟大胜利”等等。

在柏林期间，为了了解动态，为了从字里行间捕捉信息，作者不得不阅读这些报纸。

37. **I wouldn't have to put up with anything anymore in the great Third Reich:** 我再也不必忍受那个伟大的第三帝国的一切了。和上句一样，作者连用两个 any 或以 any-开头的词，表示强调。great 一词是纳粹报纸用得最多、最滥的词，这里是反语。

38. **I had only to hold out this one more day, and the whole nightmare for me would be over, though it would go on and on for millions of others:** 我只要再把这一天忍过去，噩梦就会过去了，可是对于千千万万的人来说，噩梦还要继续下去。

这里 and 引出的从句表示结果。

on and on: without stopping 没有停顿，又如：

The rain went *on and on*, as if it would never stop.

雨没完没了地下着，好像永远也不会停止似的。

39. **but also the Czechs and now the Poles:** 还有捷克人，现在又加上波兰人。

德国纳粹军队 1938 年侵占了捷克的苏台德，1939 年占领捷克全境，同年入侵波兰。

40. **Even for the great mass of Germans who supported Hitler, I felt a sort of sorrow. They did not seem to realize what the poison of Nazism was doing to them:** 即使是对众多支持希特勒的德国人我也感到某种悲哀。他们似乎并没有认识到纳粹主义这个毒

物对他们的蛊惑。

Adolf Hitler: 阿道夫·希特勒(1889.4.20—1945.4.30), 纳粹德国元首, 第二次世界大战的头号战犯, 1933 年任总理, 1934 年后称元首, 对内实行法西斯专政, 对外进行侵略和扩张, 发动了第二次世界大战。他命令在欧洲建立起许多灭绝人类的集中营, 在德国和德军占领区估计有 450 万至 550 万犹太人惨遭杀害, 其他民族死于他的屠刀之下者也不计其数。在苏军攻打柏林之际, 他于 1945 年 4 月 30 日凌晨自尽。

Work on the Text

1. Answer these questions.

- 1) What year do you think the text focuses on? Why was the author in Germany?
- 2) What made it necessary for him to leave? How do you know?
- 3) Why were the author's diaries so important? Why do you think he kept them in the first place? What do you think was there in them that would have got him hanged?
- 4) How did he pack his two suitcases? Why did he put a few General Staff maps on the top layer?
- 5) What did he put right under the maps? How did he expect the Gestapo to react to the stamps on the texts of his broadcasts?
- 6) Why did he phone the Gestapo Headquarters? What was his plan? What did the success of the plan depend on? Why was the plan risky? Why did he decide to try it, knowing the risk?
- 7) Which two tactics did he use at the Gestapo Headquarters?

Why did his plan work out as he had planned?

- 8) How did he manage to go through the customs at the airport? Why did one of the officials phone Gestapo Headquarters?
- 9) How did he feel when he was through with the customs?
- 10) How do you know that the author was very worried when the airport tower kept postponing his flight? What would happen if the plane couldn't take off?
- 11) How does the author describe life in Germany under the Nazis? How does he describe Nazism? How does he describe his own life there?
- 12) Whom does the author say he feels sorry for? Why does he even feel sorry for the Germans?

2. Look up the following words in an English-English dictionary before looking at the Word List. (You have to decide their part of speech.)

solution (Para. 6) dispatch (Para. 7) calculate (Para. 9)
censor (Para. 14) belongings (Para. 21) horror (Para. 35)

3. Paraphrase.

- 1) There was enough in them to get me hanged. . . (Para. 5)
- 2) That would make a Gestapo official sit up and take notice. (Para. 10)
- 3) It would give me prestige in his eyes, or at least make me less suspect, foreigner though I was. (Para. 10)
- 4) I had deliberately got myself into this jam. (Para. 14)
- 5) It will go down in history! (Para. 16)

4. Discuss or speak on the following topics.

- 1) How did the author manage to get his diaries out of Nazi Germany?
 - (1) Why were his diaries important? Why did he keep them in the first place?
 - (2) How did he decide to fool the Gestapo?
 - (3) Why was his plan risky?
 - (4) Why did it work?
- 2) Which of the following adjectives do you think best describes a journalist's work? Sacred, honorable, exciting, dangerous, profitable, disgusting? Explain with an example why you think so.

5. Write a detailed outline of the text.

You are expected to follow the same steps as you did in writing an outline of the text in Lesson 2.

Vocabulary Exercises

1. Complete the following sentences with words formed in the same way as in the examples.

Examples:

blue-eyed 蓝眼睛的 fair-haired 金发的
narrow-minded 心胸狭窄的 three-legged 三条腿的
good-mannered 有礼貌的 double-faced 两面派的
(形容词 / 数词 + 名词 + -ed → 复合形容词)

adj. / num.: broad cold kind medium one
noun: blood heart mind side size

- 1) I think his opinion on businessmen is _____.
- 2) This _____ Chinese-English dictionary is very helpful in my studies.
- 3) Hughie is a(n) _____ young man; he gave the only pound he had to a poor old man.
- 4) William Strickland is a(n) _____ murderer who killed his own aunt.
- 5) Talking with _____ people is a real pleasure.

2. Translate the following sentences.

1) Use the verb + noun or adj. + noun collocation.

取消航班 得到许可 值得一试 缓和紧张 以身冒险
 盖上印章 如释重负 送报/牛奶 扣押某物 入境签证
 出境签证 交通堵塞 个人物品 冲马桶

2) Use the "useful expressions".

- (1) 一场隧道大火使进城的交通中断了近一个星期。
- (2) 我把地图摊在地上,查找去拉萨的路线。
- (3) 通过仔细研究报纸上的广告,小鲍勃察觉出一个大盗窃阴谋。
- (4) 一座桥的倒塌引起地方官员的警觉,并促使他们决定视察所有正在兴建的桥梁。
- (5) 沿路直至山顶,都可以看到美丽的粉红色杜鹃花(azalea)在盛开。
- (6) 每个人都在关注那个地区形势,看其如何发展。
- (7) 工人们工厂的糟糕管理和低效率难以容忍。
- (8) 此楼的内装修只准在白天进行。
- (9) 他费力地想弄清楚名首字母 N.E. 指的是什么。
- (10) 我来到游泳池,没想到却同一个粗鲁的年轻人争吵起来。

3) Use *put*, *hold* and *pick*.

- (1) 只要付钱,游客们可以在这个公园里自由采摘水果。
- (2) 那位白人妇女右臂抱着一个婴儿,左手提着一个旅行袋。
- (3) 如果你设身处地为他想想,你就会理解他的选择了。
- (4) 她因为太激动了,无法把自己的思绪用言语表达出来。
- (5) 我们要挑选 12 位高中生参加下一届国际奥林匹克数学竞赛(the International Maths Olympic).
- (6) 要求所有考生(examinee)都把自己的编号而不是姓名写在答案纸上。
- (7) 在这个职位我已干了 5 年,我说什么也不会辞职的。
- (8) 昨天咱们买的那些书你放到哪儿了?
- (9) 我觉得一条船容纳不下我们这些人,还是租两条吧。
- (10) 这是你的错,你怎么能把责任(blame)推到别人身上?
- (11) 这次全国图书展销会将在 10 个城市举行。

3. Complete the following sentences.

1) Put suitable prepositions or adverbs in the blanks.

- (1) The boy was late for class because he was held _____ by traffic jams.
- (2) I'm afraid he has already left _____ Hong Kong.
- (3) He couldn't figure _____ a solution _____ the problem, so he came to me _____ advice.
- (4) I'm going to pick _____ my mail on my way home.
- (5) After that, he never gambled _____ the horses.
- (6) Marshall Liu Bocheng's name will go _____ in China's military history.
- (7) What he has done _____ his own child makes all

his neighbours very angry.

- (8) In the mountains the criminal thought he was _____ the reach of the police; it never entered his mind that they were waiting for him right there.
- (9) In the stillness of the night, I heard some people talking _____ whispers.
- (10) My parents can never put up _____ rude behaviour from shop assistants.
- (11) Unable to put _____ the hot weather, he finally bought an air conditioner.
- (12) If you wish to get the most out of college, you must put the time message _____ practice.
- (13) Never put _____ till tomorrow what you can do today.
- (14) I finally picked _____ three books on Egyptian religion from a pile on the shelf.
- (15) He put the details _____ in his notebook so that he could retell the story.

2) Choose the right word from the brackets.

- (1) She is always _____ to help the poor. (interested, eager)
- (2) They don't _____ music after 10.30 at night. (approve, allow)
- (3) There is a reason to _____ that the death occurred between 6.30 and 7 o'clock last night. (doubt, suspect)
- (4) You need a very _____ production manager. (effective, efficient)
- (5) This was one of the most _____ lessons I learned. (valuable, worthy)

4. Choose the best word for each blank.

As so often happened in committees of this kind, one man, young Thomas Jefferson, did all the work. Jefferson was well (1) _____ (done, informed, known, taught) in such matters. He was also a skilled writer who had already written several important papers (2) _____ (about, in, on, with) political subjects. Jefferson accepted the work gladly and set (3) _____ (off, on, out, to) at once to write what he called an "expression of the American mind". He worked for two full days on the famous (4) _____ (article, book, document, paper) (5) _____ (generally, officially, publicly, usually) known after this time (6) _____ (as, for, like, such) the Declaration of Independence.

The Declaration was made (7) _____ (from, into, out, up) of three parts. The first part (8) _____ (concerned, dealt, described, told) the justice of a revolution when a government takes away from its people certain basic rights. The second part (9) _____ (listed, named, quoted, provided) a series of acts proving that George III (10) _____ (be, been, is, was) a poor king. The third part was a ringing declaration of independence; it also called (11) _____ (into, to, up, upon) the members of the Congress to (12) _____ (build, defend, fight, love) the young nation with their lives, their fortunes and their honor. The Declaration was finally (13) _____ (adapted, adopted, declared, used) by the Continental Congress on July 4, 1774.

Grammar & Usage

Adjectives (I)

1. 形容词用来说明人、物、事等的性质、特点、类别

We have survived the Nazi horror and its *mindless* suppression of the human spirit. (性质)

I opened the two bags with my *personal* belongings. (类别)

A *great* army it was, and a *great* story for me. (特点)

The sherry was a little too *dry*. (性质)

Unless one is *wealthy* there is no use in being a *charming* fellow. (性质, 特点)

But then he was wonderfully *good-looking*, with his *brown* hair, his *clear-cut* face, and his *grey* eyes. (特点)

At last he became nothing, a *delightful*, *useless* young man with a *perfect* face and no profession. (性质)

2. 形容词在句子中作定语、表语以及(主语或宾语的)补足语

The sense of relief I felt was *tremendous*. (表语)

Hughie looked very *miserable* in those days. (表语)

Personally he was a *strange*, *rough* fellow, with a *freckled* face and *red*, *rough* beard. (定语)

Hughie wouldn't stay, but walked home, feeling very *unhappy*, and leaving Alan Trevor *helpless* with laughter. (表语, 宾补)

His eyes kept watching me, *narrow and dangerous*. (主补)

3. 形容词句型

1) 形容词 + 介词词组

Laura's father was very *fond of* Hughie, but would not

hear of an engagement.

Humans are *capable of* great mutual compassion, love, and tenderness.

Consequently, *bereft of* cultural heroes, we have latched onto cultural icons.

Unless a certain amount of time is allowed to elapse, it seems in their eyes as if the task being considered were not *worthy of* proper respect.

类似的词组还有: afraid of, ashamed of, (un)aware of, full of, guilty of, innocent of, sure of, tired of, true of 等。

They were very *valuable to* me in reporting the army's victories.

The little girl felt *close to* the birds and plants and animals.

Children may become *insensitive to* the needs and feelings of others.

Overindulgence can be *harmful to* children.

The process of dying involves fewer and fewer choices *available to* us.

Life is *dear to* all.

类似的词组还有: accustomed to, connected to, devoted to, familiar to, related to, similar to, unique to 等。

常用于形容词之后的介词还有: about, at, for, in, with 等。

I am often *uncertain about* whether to give in to many of my children's requests.

Don't get trapped by the first thing you find yourself *good at*.

One hundred years ago, people became *famous for* what they had achieved.

When you're boss-man in command and *responsible for* the rest...

After you teach yourself one subject, you become much more *confident about* your ability to teach yourself.

Those signs or cues include the thousand and one ways which we are *familiar with*.

Older people have grown up in a world very *different from* yours.

2) 形容词 + 不定式

(1) 名词或代词作主语

Many parents are *unable to stand up* to their children's unreasonable demands.

You are *bound to vacillate* at times.

Our team is *sure to win*.

They're *unwilling to go* with us.

It's *likely to rain* tomorrow.

A careless person is *not fit to do* the work.

以上这类形容词几乎总是与不定式连用。

还有一些表示人的情绪或愿望的形容词既可与不定式连用也可与介词词组或名词从句连用。

The boy is *afraid to go* out after dark.

I'm *glad to see* you in my country.

He's *ashamed to tell* you what really happened.

I'm *sorry to break* the news to you.

另有一类形容词与含有被动意思的不定式连用,说明主语的情况。

The material is *easy to wash*.

He is *difficult to get along with*.

Apple grown here are *nice to eat*.

Alan Trevor believed that the only people a painter

should know were people who were *nice to look at* and *restful to talk to*.

形容词前可加 *too*, 后可加 *enough*。

You're *too pretty* to be so heavy.

He thinks he is *old enough* to manage his own affairs.

(2) 不定式作主语的两形式

(a) It is + adj. (+ for sb. / sth.) + to do sth.

常用于此句型的形容词有: *common, dangerous, difficult, easy, important, (un)necessary, (im)possible* 等。

(b) It is + adj. + of sb. to do sth.

常用于此句型的形容词有: *brave, careless, clever, generous, good, kind, mean, stupid, wise* 等。

It was very *important* for the writer to get his diaries out of Berlin.

Was it *possible* for the writer to get his diaries out of Berlin safely?

It is *difficult* for media celebrities to pass through a crowd without being recognized.

It was *stupid* of the Gestapo to like flattery.

It was very *kind* of Hughie to give his only pound to the old model.

3) 形容词 + 名词从句

许多形容词可用于此句型, 如 *afraid, angry, anxious, aware, certain, confident, glad, happy, pleased, proud, sad, sorry, sure, surprised, unaware* 等。

Hughie was *surprised that* the old model was a millionaire.

He felt terribly *sorry that* he had given the millionaire a pound.

He was *afraid that* the millionaire would think him foolish.

名词从句也可作主语。

It is too bad *that you missed your flight*.

It seems possible *that peace will be restored in that country by the end of the year*.

Exercises

1. Complete these sentences, using suitable adjectives.

- 1) My own tongue was _____ enough to stop my throat.
- 2) It was _____ of you to come to meet me at the airport.
- 3) I'm _____ to tell you that your proposal has been turned down.
- 4) Cultural icons are _____ to define.
- 5) I don't think it's _____ to learn a foreign language well within three months. If someone says he can do that, don't believe him.
- 6) Our new manager is very _____ to get along with, so he is pretty popular.
- 7) It was _____ of her to have left her purse in the taxi.
- 8) What questions are foreign visitors _____ to ask the first time they come to China?
- 9) If you're wrong, don't be _____ to admit your error.
- 10) If he promised to come, he's _____ to show up.

2. Complete these sentences using correct prepositions.

- 1) The subject seems to be familiar _____ the audience.

- 2) My sister is an all-round sportswoman. She is good _____ running, swimming, and surfing (冲浪).
- 3) What should we do to be worthy _____ the age we live in?
- 4) As head of the team, he knew full well that he was responsible _____ every member of the expedition.
- 5) After a 4-week trial, the jury found the defendant guilty _____ first-degree murder.
- 6) He felt guilty _____ not spending enough time with his family.
- 7) Young Newton was curious _____ everything unknown _____ him.
- 8) My friend Jim is never satisfied _____ what he's achieved. He keeps setting himself new goals.
- 9) It took him several years to become accustomed _____ the heat in Wuhan.
- 10) I think these math problems are too difficult _____ seven-year-old kids.

3. Translate the following into English, using adjective patterns.

- 1) 我很高兴又一次在中国见到您。
- 2) 很抱歉这事我们无能为力。
- 3) 这消息好得叫人难以置信。
- 4) 您亲自到机场来给我们送行真是太感谢了。
- 5) 对 50 年来国家取得的成就我们感到自豪。
- 6) 善于独立思考的学生不好教,但往往很有前途。
- 7) 对人们的私生活好奇是不地道的。
- 8) 如果你不愿意为人们的幸福作出贡献,你就退出吧。
- 9) 对于一个年轻人来说负责这个大项目确实是勉为其难。

10) 谁有可能成为下届学生会主席?

4. Complete the sentences with the best choice (revision: comparison).

- 1) Since life is short and the world is wide, _____ you start exploring it _____.
A. the early, the better B. the quicklier, the better
C. the sooner, the better D. the quick, the better
- 2) Soon enough the time will come when you are too tired to move _____ the terrace of the best hotel.
A. farther than B. farthest in
C. far away D. more farther than
- 3) More people go abroad nowadays than ever before, and never has travel, particularly among the young, been _____ strongly encouraged.
A. much B. greatly
C. less D. more
- 4) I'm afraid this shirt is too tight for me. May I have a _____ one?
A. large B. larger
C. more large D. very large
- 5) He is determined to get _____ of the profit than he has been offered.
A. ten percent more B. ten more percent
C. more ten percent D. as much as ten percent
- 6) It must be John. Who else would _____ he does?
A. work hard as B. be working as hard as
C. do harder work than D. work harder than
- 7) Don't worry. This question is of the _____ importance of all.

- A. less B. little
C. least D. best
- 8) You are asking for too much. I'm afraid you have to get the work done with _____ money and _____ people.
A. less, fewer B. much, many
C. little, few D. more, more
- 9) I thoroughly enjoyed the concert last night. It was _____ entertaining than I had expected.
A. far B. very much
C. far more D. very more
- 10) Of the three teachers who are teaching us this semester, Mrs. Wang is _____.
A. more patient B. very patient
C. patient D. the most patient

Lesson Ten

Text

The Washwoman

I. B. Singer

一个年近八旬、瘦小的老妇人，不愿增加儿子和社会的负担，一不乞讨，二不进孤老院，顽强地靠为他人洗衣维持生活。经她洗熨过的衣物又干净又平整；一旦收了活儿，即使是大病一场她也要完成自己的职责，冒着大雪严寒也要让洗熨好的衣物尽快物归原主。这个尽职的洗衣妇体现了人类的优秀的品质，她那衰弱的身躯体现了人类坚韧不拔的意志，她那粗糙的双手创造出了光辉灿烂的人类文明。有谁比她更平凡？但谁比她更崇高？

1 Our home had little contact with Gentiles. But there were the Gentile washwomen who came to the house to fetch our laundry. My story is about one of these.

2 She was a small woman, old and wrinkled. When she started washing for us, she was already past seventy. Most Jewish women of her age were sickly, weak, broken in body. But this washwoman, small and thin as she was, possessed a strength that came from generations of peasant ancestors. Mother would count out to her a bag of laundry that had accumulated over several weeks. She would lift the heavy bag, load it on her narrow shoulders, and carry it the long way home. It must have been a walk of an hour and a half.

3 She would bring the laundry back about two weeks later. My mother had never been so pleased with any washwoman. Every piece of laundry was as clean as polished silver. Every piece was neatly ironed. Yet she charged no more than the others. She was a real find. Mother always had her money ready, because it was too far for the old woman to come a second time.

4 Washing clothes was not easy in those days. The old woman had no tap where she lived, but had to bring in the water from a pump. For the clothes and bedclothes to come out so clean, they had to be scrubbed thoroughly in a washtub, rinsed with washing soda, soaked, boiled in an enormous pot, starched, then ironed. Every piece was handled ten times or more. And the drying! It had to be hung in the attic.

5 She could have begged at the church door or entered a home for the poor and aged. But there was in her a certain pride and love of labor with which many Gentiles have been blessed. The old woman did not want to become a burden, and so bore her burden.

6 The woman had a son who was rich. I no longer remember what sort of business he had. He was ashamed of his mother, the washwoman, and never came to see her. Nor did he ever give her any money. The old woman told this without bitterness. One day the son was married. It seemed that he had made a good match. The wedding took place in a church. The son had not invited the old mother to his wedding, but she went to the church and waited at the steps to see her son lead the "young lady" to the altar. . .

7 The story of the faithless son left a deep impression on my mother. She talked about it for weeks and months. It was an insult not only to the old woman but to all mothers. Mother would argue, "Does it pay to make sacrifices for children? The mother uses up her last strength, and he does not even know the meaning of loyalty."

8 That winter was a harsh one. The streets were icy. No matter how much we heated our stove, the windows were covered with frost. The newspapers reported that people were dying of the cold. Coal became dear. The winter had become so severe that parents stopped sending children to school.

9 On one such day the washwoman, now nearly eighty years old, came to our house. A good deal of laundry had accumulated during the past weeks. Mother gave her a pot of tea to warm herself, as well as some bread. The old woman sat on a kitchen chair trembling and shaking, and warmed her hands against the teapot. Her fingers were rough from work, and perhaps from arthritis, too. Her fingernails were strangely white. These hands spoke of the stubbornness of mankind, of the will to work not only as one's strength permits but beyond the limits of one's power.

10 The bag was big, bigger than usual. When the woman placed it on her shoulders, it covered her completely. At first she stayed, as though she were about to fall under the load. But an inner stubbornness seemed to call out: No, you may not fall. A donkey may permit himself to fall under his burden, but not a human being, the best of creation.

11 She disappeared, and mother sighed and prayed for her.

12 More than two months passed. The frost had gone, and then a new frost had come, a new wave of cold. One evening, while Mother was sitting near the oil lamp mending a shirt, the door opened and a small puff of steam, followed by a gigantic bag, entered the room. I ran toward the old woman and helped her unload her bag. She was even thinner now, more bent. Her head shook from side to side as though she were saying no. She could not utter a clear word, but mumbled something with her sunken mouth and pale lips.

13 After the old woman had recovered somewhat, she told us that

she had been ill. Just what her illness was, I cannot remember. She had been so sick that someone called a doctor, and the doctor had sent for a priest. Someone had informed the son, and he had contributed money for a coffin and for the funeral. But God had not yet wanted to take this soul full of pain to Himself. She began to feel better, she became well, and as soon as she was able to stand on her feet once more, she began her washing. Not just ours, but the wash of several other families, too.

14 "I could not rest easy in my bed because of the wash," the old woman explained. "The wash would not let me die."

15 "With the help of God you will live to be a hundred and twenty," said my mother, as a blessing.

16 "God forbid! What good would such a long life be? The work becomes harder and harder... my strength is leaving me... I do not want to be a burden on anyone!" The old woman crossed herself, and raised her eyes toward heaven.

17 Fortunately there was some money in the house and Mother counted out what she owed. Then she left, promising to return in a few weeks for a new load.

18 But she never came back. The wash she had returned was her last effort on this earth. She had been driven by an indomitable will to return the property to its rightful owners, to fulfill the task she had undertaken.

19 And now at last her body, which had long been supported only by the force of honesty and duty, had fallen. Her soul passed into those spheres where all holy souls meet, regardless of the roles they played on this earth, in whatever tongue, of whatever religion. I cannot imagine paradise without this Gentile washwoman. I cannot even imagine a world where there is no reward for such effort.

Word List

washwoman /'wɒʃwʊmən/ <i>n.</i>	(美)洗衣妇 (英 washerwoman /'wɒʃəwʊmən/)
laundry /'ləʊndrɪ/ <i>n.</i>	待洗的衣服
sickly /'sɪklɪ/ <i>adj.</i>	多病的, 不健康的
ancestor /'ænsɛstə(r), -sɪs-/ <i>n.</i>	祖先, 先辈
accumulate /ə'kju:mjələt/ <i>v.</i>	积累
polished /'pɒlɪʃt/ <i>adj.</i>	打磨亮的
neatly /'ni:tli/ <i>adv.</i>	整洁地
iron /'aɪən/ <i>vt.</i>	熨烫
find /faɪnd/ <i>n.</i>	发现物 (尤指有价值 and 贵重之物)
bedclothes /'bedkləʊðz/ <i>n.</i>	(复)被褥, 寝具 (床单、毯子等)
scrub /skrʌb/ <i>vt.</i>	用力擦洗
washtub /'wɒʃtʌb/ <i>n.</i>	洗衣盆, 洗濯盆
rinse /rɪns/ <i>vt.</i>	以清水冲洗
washing /'wɒʃɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	洗衣服用的, 清洗用的
soda /'səʊdə/ <i>n.</i>	苏打
soak /səʊk/ <i>vt.</i>	浸湿, 泡
drying /'draɪɪŋ/ <i>n.</i>	凉干
aged /'eɪdʒɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	年老的
bless /bles/ <i>v.</i>	为……祝福, 使幸福
burden /'bɜ:dn/ <i>n.</i>	负担
bear /beə(r)/ <i>vt.</i>	负担, 承担
bitterness /'bɪtənɪs/ <i>n.</i>	痛苦, 悲伤
altar /'ɔ:lta(r)/ <i>n.</i>	圣坛
faithless /'feɪθlɪs/ <i>adj.</i>	背信弃义的, 不忠实的
insult /ɪn'sʌlt/ <i>n.</i>	侮辱

sacrifice /'sækrɪfaɪs/ <i>n.</i>	牺牲
harsh /hɑːʃ/ <i>adj.</i>	艰苦的, 恶劣的
icy /'aɪsɪ/ <i>adj.</i>	结冰的
heat /hiːt/ <i>vt.</i>	加热
dear /dɪə(r)/ <i>adj.</i>	昂贵的
severe /sɪ'vɪə(r)/ <i>adj.</i>	严酷的
teapot /'tiːpɒt/ <i>n.</i>	茶盖
arthritis /ɑː'θraɪtɪs/ <i>n.</i>	关节炎
strangely /'streɪndʒli/ <i>adv.</i>	奇怪地, 异常地
stubbornness /'stʌbənɪs/ <i>n.</i>	坚定, 坚强
donkey /'dɒŋki/ <i>n.</i>	驴子
creation /kriː'eɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	创作; 创作物
puff /pʌf/ <i>n.</i>	(空气、烟雾等的) 一股
gigantic /dʒaɪ'ɡæntɪk/ <i>adj.</i>	巨大的
unload /ʌn'ləʊd/ <i>vt.</i>	卸下, 放下
utter /'ʌtə(r)/ <i>vt.</i>	说, 讲
priest /priːst/ <i>n.</i>	教师, 神父
Himself /hɪm'self/ <i>n.</i>	上帝
wash /wɒʃ/ <i>n.</i>	洗濯物
blessing /'blesɪŋ/ <i>n.</i>	祝福
good /ɡʊd/ <i>n.</i>	利益, 好处
cross /krɒs/ <i>vt.</i>	用右手在胸前划十字
indomitable /ɪn'dɒmɪtəbl/ <i>adj.</i>	不可征服的, 不屈的
property /'prɒpəti/ <i>n.</i>	财产
rightful /'raɪtful(ʊ)/ <i>adj.</i>	合法的
fulfill /fʊl'fɪl/ <i>vt.</i>	完成
undertake /ʌndə'teɪk/ <i>vt.</i>	承揽, 接受
sphere /sfɪə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	范围, 领域
holy /'həʊli/ <i>adj.</i>	神圣的
tongue /tʌŋ/ <i>n.</i>	语言

paradise /'pærədəis/ *n.*

乐园

Proper Names

I. B. Singer /aɪ bi: 'sɪŋgə/

I·B·辛格

Gentile /'dʒɛntaɪl/

非犹太人

Useful Expressions

have contact with

与……联系

count out

数出

be blessed with

具有

use up

用完

beyond the limits

越出, 超出(范围、限度)

live to be

活至……

from side to side

左右(摇摆)

as though

似乎

send for

请来

speak of

表达

regardless of

不顾

Word Study

cover *vt.*

1. (用东西等)遮盖, 覆盖

V + N(+ with + N)

No matter how much we heated our stove, the windows *were*

covered with frost.

The streets outside *were* all *covered with snow.*

2. 掩盖, 隐瞒

V + N

He spoke loudly *to cover his nervousness.*

3. 涉及, 包括; 处理

V + N

You don't have enough time *to cover all your duties*, so you get worried.

The task of writing a dictionary begins with reading *huge amounts of the literature of the period or subject* that the dictionary is to *cover.*

4. 走完(一段路程); 看完(若干页书); 够付费用

V + N

They expected *to cover 30 miles more* by sunset.

The novel was so interesting that he *covered more than 100 pages* at one sitting (一口气).

She had to work part time *to cover her expenses* at the university.

5. Phrases:

cover sth. up 整个蒙上或包上; 隐瞒; 包庇

cover for sb. 代替某人工作或履行职责等

cover *n.* 遮盖物, 套子, 盖子; (书的)封面, 书皮

fall *vi.*

1. 落下, 跌落; (树叶等)降落; (雨、雪等)落下

V

The radio *fell off* the desk and broke.

When a strong wind blew the leaves *fell* from the tree like raindrops.

The snow kept *falling* all night.

2. (头发、幕等)垂下,垂落

V

The girl's hair *fell* around her shoulders in golden curls.

Suddenly the baby's hand reached out and grasped one of the dark curls that *fell* about his mother's neck.

When the curtain *fell*, the audience burst into loud applause.

3. 倒下,掉下,跌倒

V

A donkey may permit himself *to fall* under his burden, but not a human being, the best of creation.

When Tracy jumped up on the hood of a friend's car, he lost his balance and *fell*.

He held the wolf with his teeth and killed it, then he *fell* on his back and slept.

The picture *has fallen* behind the desk and I can't reach it.

4. (温度或价格等)下降,跌落;(风)减弱

V

The temperature *will fall* at night.

China's birth rate *has been falling* steadily since 1978.

5. 变成,进入……状态

V + adj.

When Colin finished, the group *fell silent*.

In the middle of the movie, my younger son Sean *fell asleep*.

6. (夜幕等)降临

V

The man walked on and on until darkness *fell*.

7. Phrases:

fall behind sb. 落后于,输给别人

fall on sb. / sth. (任务等)落到;(目光)落到

fall behind with sth. 拖欠(房租或付款等)

fall into sth. (突然)掉入;变成某种状态;养成(坏习惯等);属于(某种类别)(注意不可说“fall off from”或“fall off of”。)

fall *n.* (美)秋天;落下;降落;跌倒;(物价或价格的)下降;降雨量;降雪量

pass *vt. & vi.*

1. 通过,穿过;经过

V; V + prep. phrase; V + N

The crowd moved back to let the firefighters *pass*.

Previously, men like Gould and Harriman, whose names everyone knew, *could* easily have *passed through* a crowd without being recognized.

On her way from work, she *has passed* a big department store many times but never walked in.

2. (时间等)流逝;度过(时光)

V; V + N

Eleven days *passed*, days of cold and rain.

More than two months *passed*, and we heard no news about the woman.

Once more the bow danced across the strings; and so another hour *passed* quickly.

We will never forget *the day* we *passed* with Tracy's parents Cory and Bill.

3. (考试等)合格;通过(考试等);让……通过(考试等)

V; V + N

I hear the exam will be very hard. I don't think I will be able to *pass*.

Of fifty students, only half *passed* in the chemistry examination.

The teacher decided *to pass* him on account of his progress.

4. (法案或建议等)通过,通过(法案或建议等)

V; V + N

The bill finally *passed* after a long discussion.

The government will soon *pass new laws* concerning environment protection.

5. 把……递给,传递

V (+ N) + N; V + N + to + N

Would you *pass the pepper*, please?

Pass me today's People's Daily, would you?

Xiao Gao *passed the ball to Xiao Han*, who kicked it into the goal.

6. Phrases:

pass by (时间)流逝

pass by sb. / sth. 通过,经过

pass sth. down 把……传给后代,当作遗产给予

pass sth. on to sb. 传递(物品);传授(知识等);传染(疾病)

pass sth. out 分发

Notes on the Text

1. **About the author:** 辛格(1904—1991),美国犹太小说家,出生于波兰华沙,1935年移居美国,为纽约一家犹太人办的报纸当记者,1943年加入美国籍。他曾用意第绪语(现代犹太人使用的语言)写作,被认为是以纽约为基地、用意第绪语写作的最后一位作家,也是最伟大的一位。他的作品哲理性很强,但文风干净利落;他作品中的人物看起来极为普通,没有惊人的壮举,但他却使得读者感到这些人个个都是英雄;他的不少作品反映了老年人的孤独。辛格的主要作品包括《卢布林的魔术师》、

《奴隶》和短篇小说集《傻瓜吉姆佩尔和其他故事》等。他获1978年诺贝尔文学奖。

2. **About the text:**《洗衣妇》如同辛格的许多其他短篇小说一样,取材于他年轻时亲身经历的事件。在学习这篇课文时,请注意以下几个特点:

- 1) 他的文风朴实无华,但充满了对他笔下人物的感情。他对其作品中主人公洗衣妇的刻画由表及里,对她外表一笔带过,接着重点描写她的活儿如何干净利索,再接着揭示她的精神力量和她的美德,尤其是她那“春蚕到死丝方尽”的工作态度。随着他对她的认识一步步地加深,他的感情也步步升华,由怜悯到同情到敬佩。通篇没有使用华丽的辞藻来讴歌主人公,而是让事实说话。
- 2) 由于辛格的作品富有哲理,我们应该透过作品中极为普通的人和他们极为普通的事迹悟出深刻的人生真谛。小说的主人公是一个再普通不过的老妇人,她靠为别人洗衣为生,她的遭遇令人感到十分可怜。但是她却不认为自己可怜,而是展示惊人的毅力和责任心。通过她,作者赞颂的是人类独立自主的精神,坚韧不拔的意志,对自己承担的任务一丝不苟的态度。
- 3) 辛格善于运用烘托和对照的手法来刻画主人公的特征:以犹太妇女的体弱多病烘托她的坚韧的体魄;以她那不仁不孝的儿子烘托她伟大的母亲情怀;以寒冷的天气烘托她坚强的意志;用她瘦小的身躯对照她肩上的大包;用她外形的老朽(old and wrinkled, even thinner, more bent)对照她内在的精神力量。
- 4) 本篇无语法结构上的难句,但有一些内涵丰富的句子,我们应深刻领会它们的含义。
- 5) 关于小说中的宗教色彩,只消看成是人物背景的一部分,无需深究;至于天堂之说反映了作者对于老妇人以及所有心灵纯洁的人的美好祝愿。

3. **Our home had little contact with Gentiles:** 我们家和犹太人之外的人来往极少。

Gentile: 犹太人把本民族之外的人统统称为 Gentile。由于历史上的原因,犹太人失去自己的家园,散居在世界各地。也因历史原因他们受到歧视,形成了本民族的凝聚力。即使在本世纪初,他们中许多人与居住地的其他民族也来往很少。

4. **Most Jewish women of her age were sickly, weak, broken in body:** 大多数像她那般年龄的犹太妇女往往体弱多病。

sickly: often ill 经常生病。

broken in body: 体质虚弱。

5. **But this washwoman, small and thin as she was, possessed a strength that came from generations of peasant ancestors:** 可是这位洗衣妇,尽管个子又瘦又小,却具有从她们世代农民祖先那里继承来的强健体魄。

small and thin as she was: though she was small and thin, 是让步从句,插在主句中间。

come from (sth.): 来自于……,起源于……,又如:

This story *comes from* The Arabian Nights.

这故事选自《一千零一夜》。

His love of math *came from* his grandfather's influence.

他对数学的喜爱起源于他爷爷的影响。

6. **Mother would count out to her a bag of laundry that had accumulated over several weeks:** 母亲往往给她数出一包几个星期积攒下来要洗的衣物。

would 表示过去经常发生的事。

count out: count things (one by one) 一件一件地数出,又如:

He *counted out* a thousand dollars in hundred-dollar bills and put them on the table.

他数出了 10 张百元钞票放在桌上。

7. **She would lift the heavy bag, load it on her narrow shoulders,**

and carry it the long way home: 她就会搬起那沉重的包,放在她那狭小的肩上,然后要扛很长一段路才回到家。

注意英语习惯在一个句子中用三个短语动词,表示动作一个接一个地进行,又如:

The speaker *walked* to the platform, *put* a few sheets of paper on the desk, and *began*.

演讲人走上讲台,往桌子上放下几张纸,然后就开始演讲。

8. **It must have been a walk of an hour and a half:** 这段路恐怕要走一个半小时。

must have been 表示主观的推测,不表示肯定。

9. **She was a real find:** 我们可找到了一位了不起的洗衣工!

find n.: 被发现有惊人能力的人,又如:

She is a real *find* in the theatre.

她是戏剧界的一位新秀。

10. **For the clothes and bedclothes to come out so clean, they had to be scrubbed thoroughly in a washtub, rinsed with washing soda, soaked, boiled in an enormous pot, starched, then ironed:** 要使衣服和床单洗得这么干净,必须在洗衣盆里彻底地搓,在碱水里漂洗,然后浸泡,再在大锅里煮,还得浆,最后还要熨烫。

to come out so clean 是不定式作目的状语, *for* 引出不定式的逻辑主语。这里不定式的逻辑主语其实与句子的主语 *they* 一致,为了强调还是刻意指出。

to be scrubbed 这里 *to be* 为后面所有的过去分词所共有。

11. **And the drying!**: 还有晾干这道工序呢!

12. **She could have begged at the church door or entered a home for the poor and aged:** 她本来是可以到教堂的门口去乞讨或是进一家穷苦老人收容所。

the poor and aged: 穷苦老人。

Cf. *the poor and the aged* (注意 *aged* 中的 *e* 要发音): 穷人和老

人。

13. **But there was in her a certain pride and love of labor with which many Gentiles have been blessed:** 可是她有许多非犹太人所具有的那种自尊心,那种对劳动的喜爱。

in her 是状语,插在谓语动词 was 和主语 a certain pride and... 之间,动词 was 与复合主语最近的成分 a certain pride 一致。

be blessed with sth./sb.: be fortunate in having sth./sb. 有幸具有……,又如:

We're blessed with very loving and understanding parents.

我们很幸运有爱我们、理解我们的父母。

She's blessed with a beautiful voice.

她很幸运有副好嗓子。

14. **The old woman did not want to become a burden, and so bore her burden:** 老妇人不愿成为别人的累赘,因此自己承担起养活自己的责任。

注意 burden 一词的双重意思,又如:

—Do you think looking after one's grandchildren is a *burden*?

你认为照看孙辈是个负担吗?

—No, not at all. I think it's a pleasure.

哪里,那是乐趣。

The new government of the country has to bear the *burden* of rebuilding the economy.

这个国家新一届政府不得不承担起重建其经济的重任。

15. **to see her son lead the "young lady" to the altar:** 去看她的儿子娶媳妇。

lead sb. to the altar: marry sb. 和……结婚(老式说法,或是开玩笑的说法)。

the "young lady": 新娘。

16. **Does it pay to make sacrifices for children?:** 为子女作出种种牺牲有什么好处?

pay: 对……有好处,有利(主语常由 it 作其形式主语),又如:

It *pays* to invest in education.

投资教育事业是有利的。

It never *pays* to overindulge children.

娇纵孩子绝对没有好处

Lying *doesn't pay*.

撒谎绝对没有好处。

17. **The mother uses up her last strength, and he does not even know the meaning of loyalty:** 母亲(为儿子)使完了最后的力气,而儿子好像连什么叫忠诚都不知道。

use up: 用完,又如:

I've *used up* all our cooking oil. Would you go and buy some more?

我们的食用油用完了,你去买点好吗?

We *must not use up* all our natural resources in our time, leaving nothing for the future generations.

我们不应该把自然资源在我们这一代用光,而不为后人留下任何东西。

not know the meaning of the word: 好像不知道有……,又如:

He is a brave policeman, and *never knows the meaning of fear*.

他是个勇敢的警察,不知道什么叫害怕。

This boy *doesn't know the meaning of courtesy*.

这个男孩好像从来就不知道什么叫礼貌。

18. **That winter was a harsh one:** 那年冬天十分寒冷。这一段交代了老妇人再次到来的背景:严寒。

19. **No matter how much we heated our stove, the windows were covered with frost:** 无论我们把炉火烧得多旺,玻璃窗上还是有一层霜冻。(可以想像外面多冷。)

20. **The old woman sat on a kitchen chair trembling and shaking,**

and warmed her hands against the teapot: 老妇人坐在厨房里,直打哆嗦,她双手紧贴着茶壶取暖。

21. **Her fingers were rough from work, and perhaps from arthritis, too:** 她的手指因为干活的缘故,或许还因为关节炎,变得粗糙。这里 *from* 表示原因,又如:

She was suffering *from* cold and hunger.
她饥寒交迫。

He knew *from* experience that she wasn't telling the truth.
凭经验他知道她没说实话。

I guessed *from* his name that he was Japanese.
根据他的姓名我猜测他是日本人。

We sensed *from* the expression on their faces that something had gone wrong.

从他们的面部表情我们意识到出事了。

22. **These hands spoke of the stubbornness of mankind, of the will to work not only as one's strength permits but beyond the limits of one's power:** 这双手表明了人类的顽强的精神,表现了人类要劳动的意志,不仅是只要还有一点力气就要劳动,而且是在超越自己力量极限时仍然要劳动。

speak of: (正式)表明,显示,又如:

Barrett's scarred face *spoke of* the fierce fights he had been in.
巴雷特那张疤痕脸证明了他曾经卷入打架斗殴事件。

The man's eyes *spoke of* great suffering.
那人的眼神显示出了极大的痛苦。

Cf. *tell of*: 显露,如:

With him was a young fellow whose appearance *told of* many days in hiding.

和他一起来的是一个小伙子,一看他那副样子就知道他已躲藏了多日。

as one's strength permits (him to work) 是时间从句,修饰不定

式 to work。

23. **When the woman placed it on her shoulders, it covered her completely. At first she stayed, as though she were about to fall under the load:** 那老妇人把那大包扛在肩上,大包把她的整个身躯都掩盖起来。开始她停住不动,好像那包衣物要把她压垮似的。

24. **But an inner stubbornness seemed to call out: No, you may not fall:** 可是好似一股倔劲对她喊道:不行,不许你倒下。
这里 may 表示“允许”。

25. **A donkey may permit himself to fall under his burden, but not a human being, the best of creation:** 一头驴可以让自己被压倒,但是人不能,人是上帝创造的最优秀的成果。

根据《圣经》中的《创世纪》所叙,世界万物均是上帝在 6 天的时间里所创造的,人是最后一天所造,也是万物的主人。

一般来说指动物时要用 it, itself, its 等代词,此处作者用拟人手法把驴子与老妇人相比而用 himself 和 his。

26. **a new wave of cold:** 又来了一次寒潮。(省略句,谓语与上句相同是 had come。)

a wave of: (活动等的)高潮; (情绪等的)高涨,又如:

a wave of anger 高涨的愤怒情绪

a wave of protest 抗议的浪潮

a wave of violence 暴力活动的高潮

a crime wave 突然增加的犯罪活动

27. **the door opened and a small puff of steam, followed by a gigantic bag, entered the room:** 门开了,先出现的是一小股蒸汽,接着是一个特大的包。(老妇人气喘吁吁地走进屋子,屋里的人首先看见的是她喘出的气,接着映入他们眼帘的是她扛在肩上的大包,老妇人的状况只字未提,却给读者留下了更深的印象。)

followed by a gigantic bag 是过去分词短语作状语,修饰 entered

the room.

28. **Her head shook from side to side as though she were saying no:** 她的头两边晃来晃去,好似在说不。

29. **Just what her illness was, I cannot remember:** 到底她得的是什
么病,我已经不记得了。

just what her illness was 是宾语,为了强调放在句首。

30. **the doctor had sent for a priest:** 医生请来了牧师。(医生认为老人将不久于人世,找来牧师。基督徒死前要有牧师在身旁,进行最后的忏悔,以便死后进入天堂。)

31. **But God had not yet wanted to take this soul full of pain to Himself:** 可是上帝还不想把这个苦命人招到自己身边。(她没有死;她活了下来。)

soul: 人;孩子(表示怜悯或疼爱),又如:

She's a dear little *soul*.

她是个可爱的小家伙。

He's lost everything in the fire, poor *soul*.

唉,这个可怜的人在大火中失去了一切。

32. **as soon as she was able to stand on her feet once more, she began her washing:** 她一旦能够再次下地活动,立刻就洗起衣服来了。

Cf. stand on one's own (two) feet: be independent and able to look after oneself 自立,独立,如:

He's no longer a child. Let him learn *to stand on his own two feet*.

他不再是孩子了,让他自己管自己的事吧。

She wanted her daughter *to stand on her own feet* and not to be dependent on her husband.

她希望她女儿能够自立,而不要靠她的丈夫养活。

33. **"With the help of God you will live to be a hundred and twenty," said my mother, as a blessing:** “有上帝的保佑,您能

活到 120 岁。”我母亲这样祝愿她。(看到老妇人衰弱的样子作者的母亲当然不是真的认为她能活到 120 岁,这是对老妇人良好的祝愿。)

live to be...: 活到……(to be 表示结果)。

- 34. God forbid! What good would such a long life be?:** 但愿上帝别让我活到那么大的岁数! 活那么长有什么用?

God / Heaven forbid: 用来表示“但愿某事不要发生”。

What good is...? / What is the good of...?: ……有什么好处/用处? (……的用处/好处是什么?)又如:

What *good* is a 31" TV?

31 英寸的电视机有什么用处?(即没有用处。)

What is *the good of* a large house for a poor student?

对于一个穷学生来说,一栋大房子有什么用处?

- 35. I do not want to be a burden on anyone!:** 我不想成为任何人的负担!

- 36. The old woman crossed herself, and raised her eyes toward heaven:** 老妇人在自己的身上画了个十字,抬起头往上天看去。

cross oneself: 基督徒(特别是天主教徒)在自己的上半身画十字表示对上帝的忠心。

这篇短篇小说描写的是作者小时候在波兰的生活。波兰是信奉天主教的国家。

- 37. Then she left, promising to return in a few weeks for a new load:** 然后她就走了,答应几星期后回来再取一批要洗的衣物。

- 38. She never came back:** 她再也没有回来。(注意,最后两段始终没有用 die 这个词,而是反复赞扬她的正直、她的责任心,表达作者的信念:人类的这两个美德是会得到回报的。)

- 39. She had been driven by an indomitable will to return the property to its rightful owners, to fulfill the task she had undertaken:** 她受着一种不屈不挠的意志力的推动,要把衣物送还给它的主人,要完成她所承担的任务。

be driven by... to do: 受……驱使做……(by 后面的词表示动机)。

Cf. It was the life in him, unwilling to die, that *drove him on*.

是他那不愿束手待毙的生命力驱使他继续前进。

两个不定式短语作定语,修饰 will。

rightful: 合法的(Cf. right: 正确的,无误的),又如:

I'm sorry to say this is not the *right* answer to the problem.

很抱歉,这不是那道题的正确答案。

He's been elected by the people, therefore is the *rightful* president of the country.

他是由人民选举产生,因而是这个国家的合法总统。

40. And now at last her body, which had long been supported only by the force of honesty and duty, had fallen: 现在长期以来一直由真诚和责任心支撑着的身躯终于倒下了。

41. Her soul passed into those spheres where all holy souls meet, regardless of the roles they played on this earth, in whatever tongue, of whatever religion: 她的灵魂进入了所有心地纯洁的人们最后会集的地方,无论他们在人间曾经担当过什么角色,无论他们说的是什么语言,也无论他们信仰什么宗教。(作者在最后一段里将对老妇人的赞扬升华至对人类的美德的赞扬,相信好人死后会升天堂。)

注意 soul 在此句中不同的意思。

42. I cannot imagine paradise without this Gentile washwoman. I cannot even imagine a world where there is no reward for such effort: 我想像天堂里肯定会有这位非犹太人洗衣妇的位置,我绝对相信如此的努力是会得到报偿的。(注意此句排比及双重否定的使用。英语句子里的双重否定是为了强调肯定的观点或事实。)

Work on the Text

1. Answer these questions.

- 1) What did the Gentile washwoman look like? How old was she when she started washing for the Jewish family?
- 2) Why was the Mother in the story pleased with the washwoman?
- 3) Why wasn't washing clothes an easy job in those days? What work did it involve?
- 4) What do you learn about the washwoman's son? Why didn't she feel bitter about his attitude towards her?
- 5) What did the Mother think of the faithless son? What did she say?
- 6) What was the weather like that winter? Describe how cold was it.
- 7) What did the narrator notice about her fingers when the washwoman came one day?
- 8) She took a big bag of washing, didn't she? How did the narrator read her mind when she put the bag on her shoulders?
- 9) Why didn't the washwoman show up for more than two months? What had happened to her?
- 10) What made her start washing as soon as she was able to stand on her feet again?
- 11) Why didn't she return as she had promised? What happened to her this time?
- 12) What feeling does the old women's story arouse in you? Pity? Sympathy? Admiration? Explain why you feel as you do.

2. Look up the following words in an English-English dictionary before looking at the Word List. (You have to decide their part of speech first.)

laundry (Para. 1) find (Para. 3) indomitable (Para. 18) right-ful (Para. 18) sphere (Para. 19) paradise (Para. 19)

3. Paraphrase the following.

- 1) She was a real find. (Para. 3)
- 2) Does it pay to make sacrifices for children? (Para. 7)
- 3) ... and he does not even know the meaning of loyalty. (Para. 7)
- 4) These hands spoke of the stubbornness of mankind, or the will to work not only as one's strength permits but beyond the limits of one's power. (Para. 9)
- 5) Her soul passed into those spheres where all holy souls meet, regardless of the roles they played on this earth, in whatever tongue, of whatever religion. (Para. 19)

4. Discuss or speak on the following topics.

- 1) How did you feel when you read the scene in which the washwoman returned with the laundry? Did you expect this to happen?
- 2) What did the washwoman mean when she said, "The wash would not let me die"? How do you interpret her words?

5. Write a paragraph, in about 130 words, about what you think is the most admirable quality of the washwoman.

You can use this outline:

- 1) Name this quality.
- 2) Give examples to show she possessed this quality.

- 3) Give a brief comment on this quality.

Vocabulary Exercises

1. Complete the following sentences with words formed in the same way as in the examples.

Examples:

happiness 幸福 selfishness 自私 bitterness 苦难
stubbornness 坚强 kindness 仁慈 weakness 虚弱

(形容词 + -ness → 名词)

dark	fit	ill	sad	helpless
------	-----	-----	-----	----------

- 1) The power cut left the room in complete _____.
- 2) News of her grandfather's death filled her with _____.
- 3) His sudden _____ kept him in Beijing for three months.
- 4) A lot of people go in for sports for physical _____.
- 5) Standing before their suffering daughter, they felt a sense of _____.

2. Translate the following into English.

- 1) Use the verb + noun or adj. + noun collocation.

扮演角色	积累经验	熨烫衣物	身负重担
卸下重担	作出牺牲	缝补衣物	物归原主
承担任务	坚强的意志	不屈的意志	粗糙的手指
深陷的双眼	寒冷的冬天		

- 2) Use the "useful expressions".

- (1) 我祖母少有的善良和慷慨使所有认识她的人都敬爱她。
- (2) 在长达一周的夏季反攻中,士兵们用尽了弹药

(ammunition)。

- (3) 恐怕你的要求超越了他的权限。
- (4) 轮船剧烈地左右晃动,许多乘客都晕船(seasickness)了。
- (5) 老人在丛林里生活多年,与外界极少来往。
- (6) 她年轻时得过癌症,后来康复了,一直活到高龄。
- (7) 广场中心的雕像表达了人民对将军的敬重和自豪之情。
- (8) 我把消息告诉了玛丽以后,她看上去好像要晕倒。
- (9) 她不顾父母的强烈反对,决定去上夜校。
- (10) 为帮助艾丽丝准备参加网球比赛,她母亲请来了本地最好的教练。

3) Use *cover*, *fall* and *pass*.

- (1) 我从梯子上掉了下来,伤了左胳膊。
- (2) 在大学我们至少需要 300 元来支付伙食费。
- (3) 唐山遭受地震以来二十多年已经过去了。
- (4) 这个课程涉及到二战以来美国历史的各个方面。
- (5) 雪一直缓缓地地下着。
- (6) 这本书挺难,我一小时只读了 10 页。
- (7) 那个期间他三次经过自己的家都没有进去。
- (8) 这次高考入学考试他没能通过,他决心明年再试一次。
- (9) 那个小男孩问他的父母为什么树在秋天掉叶子。
- (10) 你们看完了这份报纸之后,把它传给三班。

3. Complete the following sentences.

1) Put suitable prepositions or adverbs in the blanks.

- (1) We are not sure whether the plane will take _____
such bad weather.
- (2) Our country is blessed _____ very rich

resources.

- (3) Nobody should be ashamed _____ his occupation as long as it is useful for society.
- (4) His fluent English left a deep impression _____ me.
- (5) I've used _____ all the writing paper and have to go and get some more.
- (6) He argued that old people should not live _____ themselves and that society should show more concern _____ them.
- (7) I could see that he was shaking _____ anger.
- (8) The young man hated to be a burden _____ his parents; he wanted to stand _____ his own two feet.
- (9) We prayed _____ her, hoping that she would recover _____ her illness soon.
- (10) I firmly believe you will be rewarded _____ your honest, hard work.
- (11) The years quickly passed _____ and the little girl in the story is now a school teacher.
- (12) As the examination sheets were passed _____, I heard moans "Oh, No!" and hysterical laughter.

2) Choose the correct word from the brackets.

- (1) How much did that coat _____? (charge, cost)
- (2) Houses are very _____ in this area. (high, expensive)
- (3) The company has suffered _____ losses this year, and will probably go out of business. (gigantic, vast)
- (4) A nurse has many duties to _____ in caring for

the sick. (fulfill, finish)

- (5) He said it was outside the _____ of his responsibilities. (sphere, range)

4. Choose the best word for each blank.

It started out as a nice enough day. The weather was unusually warm for the third week in November, so I was in a good (1) _____ (condition, mind, mood, situation) when my mother (2) _____ (dropped, got, left, took) me off at school. Everything was as (3) _____ (normal, old, past, usual) that morning; the classes were boring and (4) _____ (anything, everything, nothing, something) exciting was happening. At noon, I went to the cafeteria for lunch. While I was standing in (5) _____ (group, line, row, team) with my friends, I noticed that some of the other students were excited about something. Then the girl behind me asked me if I had heard that someone had shot the president. I was surprised at the news; however, I (6) _____ (figured, told, understood, wondered) that it was probably just a minor wound. Suddenly, a voice came over the loudspeaker (7) _____ (announcing, blowing, declaring, telling) that the president was dead. There was a hush in the cafeteria. The students stopped (8) _____ (and ate, eat, eating, to eat). No one was moving; it was as if we were all frozen. That afternoon the teachers didn't (9) _____ (conduct, have, operate, work) the classes as before; in fact, most of the teachers allowed the students to express their feelings about what had happened. The English teacher didn't (10) _____ (bring, fulfill, give, realize) us the exam that she had planned for that day. After school, I went home. Fortunately, no one was home, for I wanted to be alone. Finally,

after three hours of controlling my (11) _____ (emotions, feelings, mind, sensations), I began to cry. I was still crying when my mother arrived home. She came into my room, put her arms around me, (12) _____ (and, before, even, so) said, "This is a sad day for our country." Yes, November 22, 1963 was a sad day, a tragic day that was the beginning of a long, difficult period in American history.

Grammar & Usage

Preposition + *Which/Who* + Relative Clauses Split Relative and Appositive Clauses

1. 定语从句中的介词 + 关系词代词结构

英语正式的文体,尤其是法律和科技文献中,定语从句中的关系代词(主要是 *which*)前往往加介词,介词的选择有时取决于从句中的动词结构,有时又取决于主句中关系词前面的名词结构。因此介词的选择既要注意其后的也要注意其前的搭配关系。

But there was in her a certain pride and love of labor with which many Gentiles have been blessed. (定语从句可以转换成 many Gentiles have been blessed with a certain pride and love of labor. 介词 *with* 与 *blessed* 有关。)

The picture for which he paid \$ 1,500 has been stolen. (定语从句可以转换成 he paid \$ 1,500 for the picture, 由此可见 *for* 与动词 *paid* 有关。)

The museum, in which that famous painting is housed, will be open to the public very soon. (定语从句可以转换成 that famous painting is housed in the museum, 介词 *in* 与 *museum* 有关。)

Physics, about which I know nothing, doesn't seem so dull a subject. (定语从句可以转换成 I know nothing about physics, 可以看出 about 与 know 有关。)

This depends on the purpose for which the examination is given. (定语从句可以转换成 the examination is given for ... purpose, 介词 for 与 purpose 有关。)

注意:在语义上相当于一个简单动词的短语动词中的介词不能前置,只能用在动词后。

This is a phase of history which it is sad to look back on.

The baby whom she is taking care of is very lovely indeed.

He is the kind of person I can't put up with.

口语中要避免这种结构,关系代词 which 往往省略。

There's a limit (which) nobody should go beyond.

That's something (which) they can never put up with.

2. 分隔型定语从句

一般情况下,定语从句紧跟在它所修饰的名词或代词之后,但有时由于修辞和语法的需要,定语从句与它所修饰的先行词分开,这就是分隔型定语从句。它有以下几种情况。

1) 先行词 + 介词短语 + 定语从句

He is the only friend of mine who is not interested in music.

This is the best book on World War II that I have read.

That was the most important day in my life that I can remember.

2) 先行词 + 主动态动词 + 定语从句

He laughs best who laughs last. (谁笑到最后谁笑得最好。)

The day will come when you will be proud of me.

3) 先行词 + 分词短语 + 定语从句

There is someone waiting for you outside who says he must see you personally.

There are few places left on earth where man hasn't put his foot.

Here is the list of the issues discussed at the meeting which might interest you.

4) 先行词 + 定语从句 + 定语从句

He is one of those people I know who do not care about money at all.

That is the only film I've ever seen which uses that technique.

3. 分隔型同位语从句

和定语从句一样,同位语从句一般紧接与之对应的名词,但有时也可分开。

The suggestion was made that they should be packed off at once in a special train.

Within a week or two he received a letter from the university that he had been accepted.

Word had come from Mrs. Kane that she would arrive on the following Wednesday.

I have a feeling these days that something disastrous is going to happen.

Exercises

1. Combine the following sentences in the same way as in the example.

Examples: The pen is on display in a museum.

He signed the historic document with that pen.

The pen with which he signed the historic document is on display in a museum.

- 1) Insurance and tourism are services. Many nations specialize in them.
- 2) Oil is found in certain rock. These rocks are of marine origin.
- 3) He has done a lot of field work. His theory is based on it.
- 4) As a child, Galileo was constantly asking questions. Adults around him often were unable to answer these questions.
- 5) She has donated some money. She hopes she can help those children with it.
- 6) She always keeps in her handbag that handgun. She killed an attacker last night with it.
- 7) The young man will never forget his foster-parents. He has shared both joys and sorrows with them.
- 8) The whole path is a circuit. Electricity travels through the path.
- 9) The medical science is perhaps the most important of all the sciences. The progress in the science of medicine has been very rapid lately.
- 10) The world is made up of matter. We live in this world.

2. Translate the following sentences into English, using attributive clauses.

- 1) 明天要新来一个老师,他将取代史密斯先生教我们英语。
- 2) 他给我画了一张有关这个城市的图,使我对这个城市的大小有了一点概念。
- 3) 我肯定总有一天你会有后悔拒绝了他的要求。
- 4) 你读了墙上“禁止抽烟”的告示了吗?

- 5) 在大厅里我看到一个坐在轮椅里的男孩,他正在读一本杂志。
- 6) 银行里留下的钱足够送他的三个儿子上大学。
- 7) 这就是那本 19 世纪 80 年代出版的书,它极大地影响了人们对世界的看法。
- 8) 他是我所认识的惟一能在如此短的时间里把这些数学题做完的人。

3. Translate the following sentences using appositive clauses.

- 1) 中方表达了希望核武器控制的会谈在近期开始的愿望。
- 2) 劳心者治人而劳力者治于人的观点是错误的。
- 3) 传来消息说这一切都是假的。
- 4) 他犯有谋杀罪(guilty of murder)这个事实是不容否定的。
- 5) 他进旅店时有一种幻觉(illusion),认为看门人是一个侦探。
- 6) 连长接到参谋部的命令说他的连队要开往前线。

4. Complete the sentences with the best choice (revision: relative clauses).

- 1) The teapot is just like a Chinese duck out of _____ open mouth the tea is supposed to come.
A. whose B. which
C. that D. its
- 2) This is the computer _____ we have had so much trouble.
A. to which B. at which
C. with which D. of which
- 3) The temple was built on a hillside, _____ was a pleasant, winding valley.
A. by which B. under which
C. below which D. down which
- 4) I bought a video camera, _____ was very high.

- A. which price B. price of which
C. its price D. the price of which
- 5) On my present salary, I just can't afford such a car _____ you drive.
A. that B. as
C. which D. what
- 6) Mr. Williams _____ whom we have great respect, is quite outstanding in the field of linguistics.
A. for B. on
C. of D. with
- 7) The reason _____ he gives for his absence is _____ his mother didn't let him come.
A. why, because B. for which, because
C. that, because D. which, that
- 8) The fire lasted for twenty days, _____ the whole forest was destroyed.
A. during that time B. during which time
C. of which time D. at which time
- 9) His father was a under-paid worker, _____ hard life turned him into a rebel.
A. whose B. which
C. of whose D. of which
- 10) There is in the United States no single city or region _____ speech is the model for the rest of the country.
A. where B. in which
C. that D. whose

Lesson Eleven

Text

How I Served My Apprenticeship

Andrew Carnegie

人类进入新的千年之际，越来越多的青少年享受着父辈们创造的物质文明的成果，从小生活在“蜜罐”里，不知道什么叫“匮乏”，不晓得何谓“贫困”，更不了解从小就要干活、帮助父母养家糊口的艰辛。与此同时，人类尚未消灭贫困，世界上还有穷人，在穷困生活中挣扎的青少年还大有人在。一个人青少年时期经历一段艰苦的生活未必是件坏事。俗话说穷则思变，穷能使人发奋图强。一位少年时期有过一段贫困生活经历的大富翁如是说……

1 It is a great pleasure to tell how I served my apprenticeship as a businessman. But there seems to be a question preceding this: Why did I become a businessman? I am sure that I should never have selected a business career if I had been permitted to choose.

2 The eldest son of parents who were themselves poor, I had, fortunately, to begin to perform some useful work in the world while still very young in order to earn an living and therefore came to understand even in early boyhood that my duty was to assist my parents and become, as soon as possible, a breadwinner in the family. What I could get to do, not what I desired, was the question.

3 When I was born my father was a well-to-do master weaver in Scotland. This was the days before the steam engines. He owned no fewer than four handlooms and employed apprentices. He wove cloth for a merchant who supplied the material.

4 When the steam engine came, handloom weaving naturally declined. The first serious lesson of my life came to me one day when I was just about ten years old. My father took the last of his work to the merchant, and returned home greatly distressed because there was no more work for him to do. I resolved then that the wolf of poverty should be driven from our door some day.

5 The question of starting for the United States was discussed from day to day in the family council. It was finally resolved that we would join relatives already in Pittsburgh. I well remember that both father and mother thought the decision was a great sacrifice for them, but that "it would be better for the two boys."

6 On arriving, my father entered a cotton factory. I soon followed, and served as a "bobbin-boy," and that was how I began my preparation for subsequent apprenticeship as a businessman. I cannot tell you how proud I was when I received my first week's earnings — one dollar and twenty cents. It was given to me because I had been of some use in the world! And I became a contributing member of my family! I think this makes a man out of a boy sooner than almost anything else. It is everything to feel that you are useful.

7 I have had to deal with great sums. Many millions of dollars have since passed through my hands. But the genuine satisfaction I had from that one dollar and twenty cents outweighs any subsequent pleasure in money making. It was the direct reward of honest, manual labor; it represented a week of very hard work — so hard that it might have been described as slavery if it hadn't been for its aim and end.

8 It was a terrible task for a lad of twelve to rise every morning, except Sunday, go to the factory while it was still dark, and not be released until after darkness came again in the evening, forty minutes' break only being allowed at noon.

9 But I was young and had my dreams, and something within always told me that this would not, could not, should not last — I should some day get into a better position. Also, I felt myself no longer a mere boy, but quite a little man, and this made me happy.

10 A change soon came, for a kind old Scotsman, who made bobbins, took me into his factory before I was thirteen. But here for a time it was even worse than in the cotton factory, because I was set to fire the boiler in the cellar and run the small steam engine which drove the machinery. The responsibility of keeping the water right and of running the engine, and the danger of my making a mistake and blowing the whole factory to pieces, caused too great a strain, and I often awoke and found myself sitting up in bed through the night, trying the steam-gauges. But I never told them at home about this. No, no! Everything must be bright to them.

11 This was a point of honor, for every member of the family was working hard, and we were telling each other only the bright things. Besides, no man would complain and give up — he would die first.

12 There was no servant in our family, and my mother earned several dollars per week by binding shoes after her daily work was done! Father was also hard at work in the factory. And could I complain?

13 My kind employer soon relieved me of the strain, for he needed someone to make out bills and keep his accounts, and finding that I could write a plain schoolboy hand and could add up, he made me his

only clerk. But still I had to work hard upstairs in the workshop for the clerking took but little time.

14 You know how people grumble about poverty as a great evil, and it seems to be accepted that if people had only plenty of money and were rich, they would be happy and more useful, and get more out of life.

15 As a rule, there is more genuine satisfaction from life in the humble cottages of the poor than in the palaces of the rich. I always pity the sons and daughters of rich men, who are attended by servants, and have a governess even at a later age. They do not know what they have missed. For the poor boy who has in his father his constant companion, tutor, and model, and in his mother his nurse, teacher, guardian angel, saint, all in one, has a richer, more precious fortune in life than any rich man's son, and compared with which all other fortunes count for little.

16 It is because I know how sweet and happy and pure the home of honest poverty is, how free it is from perplexing care, from social envy and emulations, how loving and how united its members may be in the common interest of supporting the family, that I sympathize with the rich man's boy and congratulate the poor man's boy; and it is for these reasons that from the ranks of the poor so many strong, eminent, self-reliant men have always sprung and always must spring.

17 If you will read the list of the immortals who "were not born to die," you will find that most of them were born to the precious heritage of poverty.

18 It seems, nowadays, a matter of universal desire that poverty should be abolished. We should be quite willing to abolish luxury, but to abolish honest, industrious self-denying poverty would be to destroy the soil upon which mankind produces the virtues which

enable our race to reach a still higher civilization than it now possesses.

Word List

apprenticeship /ə'prentɪʃɪp/ <i>n.</i>	见习;学徒(期间)
preceding /pri'si:dɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	在前的,在前的
boyhood /'bɔɪhʊd/ <i>n.</i>	童年
assist /ə'sɪst/ <i>vt.</i>	帮助
breadwinner /'bredwɪnə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	挣钱养家者
desire /dɪ'zaɪə(r)/ <i>vt.</i>	渴望
engine /'endʒɪn/ <i>n.</i>	引擎,发动机
apprentice /ə'prentɪs/ <i>n.</i>	学徒;见习生
handloom /'hæn(d)lu:m/ <i>n.</i>	手工织布机
decline /dɪ'klaɪn/ <i>vi.</i>	衰落;下降
distressed /dɪ'strest/ <i>adj.</i>	苦恼的
resolve /rɪ'zɒlv/ <i>vt.</i>	决定,决心
council /'kaʊnsəl/ <i>n.</i>	会议
bobbin /'bɒbɪn/ <i>n.</i>	线轴,线筒
preparation /ˌprepə'reɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	准备
subsequent /'sʌbsɪkwənt/ <i>adj.</i>	随后的,后来的
sum /sʌm/ <i>n.</i>	金额;总数
genuine /'dʒenjuɪn/ <i>adj.</i>	真正的
outweigh /ˌaʊt'weɪ/ <i>vt.</i>	比……更重;比……更有价值
slavery /'sleɪvəri/ <i>n.</i>	奴隶状态,奴役
lad /læd/ <i>n.</i>	小伙子
rise /raɪz/ <i>vi.</i>	起床
release /rɪ'li:s/ <i>vt.</i>	放行,释放
boiler /'bɔɪlə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	锅炉,汽锅

cellar / 'selə(r) / <i>n.</i>	地下室,地窖
machinery / mə'ʃi:nəri / <i>n.</i>	(集) 机器;机械装置
strain / streɪn / <i>n.</i>	紧张,压力
try / traɪ / <i>vt.</i>	试验
steamgauge / 'sti:mgeɪdʒ / <i>n.</i>	蒸汽压力表
bright / braɪt / <i>adj.</i>	高兴的,愉快的
bind / baɪnd / <i>vt.</i>	绑,扎
account / ə'kaʊnt / <i>n.</i>	账目,账
plain / pleɪn / <i>adj.</i>	清楚的;明白的
hand / hænd / <i>n.</i>	笔迹,书法
workshop / 'wɜ:kʃɒp / <i>n.</i>	车间
clerking / 'klɜ:kɪŋ / <i>n.</i>	记账工作
evil / 'i:vl, -ɪl / <i>n.</i>	罪恶
humble / 'hʌmbl / <i>adj.</i>	简陋的
attend / ə'tend / <i>vt.</i>	看管,照顾
governess / 'gʌvənɪs / <i>n.</i>	家庭教师
tutor / 'tju:tə(r) / <i>n.</i>	导师,老师
guardian / 'gɑ:dʒən / <i>n.</i>	监护人,保护人
angel / 'eɪn(d)ʒəl / <i>n.</i>	天使
saint / seɪnt / <i>n.</i>	圣人
perplexing / pə'pleksɪŋ / <i>adj.</i>	使人困惑的;令人费解的
emulation / ɪ'mju'leɪʃən / <i>n.</i>	竞争;效法
interest / 'ɪntrəst / <i>n.</i>	利益
sympathize / 'sɪmpəθaɪz / <i>vi.</i>	同情
congratulate / kən'grætjuleɪt / <i>vt.</i>	庆祝,庆贺
rank / ræŋk / <i>n.</i>	阶层
eminent / 'emɪnənt / <i>adj.</i>	著名的,卓越的
self-reliant / selfrɪ'laɪənt / <i>adj.</i>	依靠自己的;信赖自己的
spring / sprɪŋ / <i>vi.</i>	涌现
immortal / ɪ'mɔ:təl / <i>n.</i>	不朽的人物

heritage /'herɪtɪdʒ/ <i>n.</i>	遗产
universal /ˌjuːnɪ'vɜːsl/ <i>adj.</i>	普遍的
abolish /ə'bɒlɪʃ/ <i>vt.</i>	废除; 消除
industrious /ɪn'dʌstriəs/ <i>adj.</i>	勤劳的, 刻苦的
self-denying /ˌself'dɪnaɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	忘我的; 自我牺牲的
virtue /'vɜːtʃuː, -tjuː/ <i>n.</i>	优点, 美德

Proper Names

Andrew Carnegie	/ˈændʒuː kɑː'neɪdʒ/	安德鲁·卡耐基
Scotland	/ˈskɒtlənd/	苏格兰
Pittsburgh	/ˈpɪtsbɜːg/	匹兹堡
Scotsman	/ˈskɒtsmən/	苏格兰人

Useful Expressions

blow to pieces	炸毁
make out	开(支票、账单等)
count for	有价值
free from	不受……约束
in the common interest of	为了……共同利益
resolve that...	决定
find oneself doing sth.	发现自己在做……
relieve sb. of	减轻
sympathize with	同情

Word Study

serve *vt. & vi.*

1. 为……效力,工作;服役;供职

1) V + N

The Communist Party of China expects all its members *to serve the people* whole-heartedly.

During the war, he *served his country* for three years.

The cook *served the same family* all his life.

2) V (+ N) + prep. phrase

On arriving the United States, I entered a cotton factory and *served as a "bobbin-boy."*

He *serves in a supermarket*.

Before he entered college he *served (a year) in the navy*.

2. 端上食物(或饮料等);侍候(某人)进餐;接待(顾客等)

V; V + N; V + N + adj.; V + N + N

When they had dinner, two waitresses *served* at table.

Henry nodded to the wine-waiter seriously, as if to say:

"Yes, that's fine. You may *serve it*."

At noontime, in public eating places, there're always a lot of people waiting *to be served*.

They asked the waitress *to serve the soup hot*.

I *serve my family healthy, protein-rich meals* prepared with dietetic ingredients.

3. 符合,满足(目的或要求等);起……作用

V + N; V + as / for + N; V + to do (sth.)

The new computer *serves me* very well.

It is not exactly what I expected but still it *serves my*

purpose.

His study often *serves as a studio.*

These visits back and forth *have served to promote Sino-American relations.*

4. Phrase:

serve one's apprenticeship 当学徒, 见习

It is a great pleasure to tell you how I *served my apprenticeship* as a businessman.

bear *vt.*

1. 支撑(重量等); 承担(责任等); 负担(费用等)

V + N

Don't walk on the lake! The ice is too thin *to bear your weight.*

Employees of private enterprises have *to bear part of the costs* of their medical care.

I don't think the driver alone *should bear the responsibility* for the accident.

2. 生育, 孕育(通常用于被动结构); 开(花), 结(果)

V + N

When I *was born*, my father was a well-to-do master weaver in Scotland.

Henry Ground *was born* into an unimportant but well-to-do family.

Apple trees usually begin *to bear fruit* the year after they are planted.

3. (常与 can / could 一起用于否定句和修辞性疑问句)

1) 忍耐, 忍受

V + N; V + N + doing sth.

If you *can't bear the pain*, take a painkiller or two.

He *couldn't bear the loneliness of old age*.

My mother *can't bear people talking* when a film is on TV.

2) 忍心

V + to do sth.

She *couldn't bear to leave* her aging parents to live by themselves.

How *can you bear to see* your fellow countrymen suffering without lending a helping hand?

4. Phrases:

bear sth. in mind 记在心里, 记住

bear fruit 有成果

work *vt. & vi.*

1. 工作, 上班; 使工作

1) V; V + prep. phrase; V + as + N

We should all *work* honestly and productively and contribute real value to the others.

Sidney Poitier, *worked in several restaurants* when he was young.

In England, you may *work with a reserved person* without ever knowing much about him/her.

Hans Christian went to a house where old women *worked as weavers*.

2) V + N

He *worked his employees* so hard that some of them quit.

Don't work yourself to death.

2. (机器、设备、工厂等) 开动, 运转; 使开动, 运转

V; V + N

My refrigerator *isn't working* and I will have it fixed

tomorrow.

The factory *is working* day and night to meet its deadlines.

She depends on her son *to work the video*.

3. (办法、计划或方法等)行得通;(药物等)起作用

V

Did your plan *work*?

Your children will eventually learn that nagging and arguing
no longer *work*.

You'll know the answer within three hours when the poison
starts *to work*.

4. Phrases:

work hard at 在……上下工夫

Andersen's father *worked* hard *at his trade*.

work on (doing) sth. 从事

work out sth. 制定,想出(办法等)

work *n.* 工作,职业;著作,作品;功课

Phrases:

at work 在工作;在起作用

out of work 失业

Notes on the Text

1. **About the author:** 安德鲁·卡耐基 (1835—1918), 美国钢铁企业家, 生于苏格兰, 1848 年随家人迁居美国, 先后在棉纺厂做工、看管发动机、当电报递送员和服务员, 后到铁路工作。在铁路工作期间, 他预见到将来钢铁的需要, 转向经营钢铁企业, 创建了卡耐基钢铁公司。他的精力没有放在股市的运作上, 而是全力抓生产。因为他经营有道, 1892 年萧条时期他的公司依然不错。在世纪之交时, 卡耐基钢铁公司生产美

国 1/4 的钢。1901 年,在他的所有公司并入美国钢铁公司之后,卡耐基宣布退休。卡耐基认为财富应该共享,退休后他致力于慈善事业,为英美等国的公共图书馆提供经费,捐款兴办一些基金会,资助不少文教科研机构。卡耐基对人类的另一个贡献是,在上个世纪末,在时代变更迎接新世纪经济腾飞的美国,他创立的成功学激励了几代美国人,使许许多多无助的人挣脱了精神枷锁,走上了勇敢自信的成功之路。

2. **About the text:** 《我的学徒生活》为卡耐基 1900 年出版的《治富经》(*The Gospel of Wealth*)的第一章,课文经过适当的删减。学习本篇课文要注意以下几点:

- 1) 课文中有七八个长而复杂的句子,有的包含六十多个词。遇到长句先不要看注释,要自己先试着分析该句各部分之间的关系。句子长主要是因为它们带有修饰成分,如从句等。如果把句中的各部分的关系搞清楚了,就会理解它们的意思。分析之后再读注释,检查一下自己的分析哪些正确而哪些不正确。
- 2) 课文中有一些虚拟条件句,有的还是隐蔽式的,要注意这些句子所表达的意思。

3. **It is a great pleasure to tell how I served my apprenticeship as a businessman:** 我很高兴谈谈我是怎样见习办实业的。这里 apprenticeship 是比喻义。卡耐基在本文中所讲的并不是他怎样学习经商,而是记叙了他不满 13 岁时开始在棉纺厂当小工的情况。但他把他少年时期这段经历看成是他一生成功创业(包括创建慈善事业)的“学徒期”(他在第六段中把这段时间称为“我以后办实业见习期的前奏”,即 my preparation of the subsequent apprentice as a businessman),因为这段艰苦生活的磨难使他终身受益。

serve: spend a period of time learning a trade / in a post / in prison 当学徒;任职;服刑,又如:

Franklin Roosevelt served 4 terms as U.S. President.

富兰克林·罗斯福当了四任美国总统。

The man *is serving a three-year sentence* for bribery.

他因受贿被判入狱 3 年,正在服刑。

After *serving a three-year apprenticeship* in a garment factory, the young man was employed as a tailor.

在一家服装厂当了 3 年学徒之后,那年轻人被聘任为裁缝。

4. **I am sure that I should never have selected a business career if I had been permitted to choose:** 我相信要是我有选择的余地,我不会选择经商的生涯。(此句包含一虚拟条件句。)

5. **The eldest son of parents who were themselves poor, I had, fortunately, to begin to perform some useful work in the world while still very young in order to earn an living and therefore came to understand even in early boyhood that my duty was to assist my parents and become, as soon as possible, a breadwinner in the family:** 作为穷人家里的长子,我有幸为了谋生不得不很小就出外干活,因而在孩童时期就懂得了我的责任是协助父母养家,尽快成为家里挣钱的人。

这是个包含 60 个词、三个从句、结构复杂的句子。句子的主干是主语 + 由 and 连接的两个并列谓语: 1) had to begin to perform some useful work..., 2) came to understand...。

the eldest son of parents 是主语的补足语; who were themselves poor 是定语从句,修饰 parents; fortunately(副词), in the world(介词短语), while still very young(= while I was still very young 省略形式的时间从句), in order to earn a living(不定式短语)都是状语,修饰第一个谓语动词 had to begin to perform。在第二个谓语动词之后, in early boyhood 是它的时间状语,以下是一个系表结构的宾语从句,其中 my duty 是主语,表语是两个并列的不定式短语 to assist my parents 和 (to) become a breadwinner, as soon as possible 和 in the family 都是 become a breadwinner 的状语。

注意 *fortunately* 一词前后各有一个逗号插入 *had to begin* 之间,使其醒目,作者强调小小年纪就出外干活其实是件“幸运”的事。

注意 *assist* 与 *help* 的区别:前者表示“协助”,被协助的人起主要作用,协助人起辅助作用(养家糊口主要是他父母的责任);*help* 表示为他人做一部分工作,或一起做。如:

This academic year, Xiao Li *is assisting* Professor Chen in Modern British History.

这个学年,小李为陈教授的“英国现代史”课当助教。

Xiao Li *helped* Professor Chen to carry those books to his office.

小李帮陈教授把那些书搬到他的办公室。(可能小李搬的更多。)

6. What I could get to do, not what I desired, was the question:

问题是,我能找到什么活干,而不是我想干什么活。(意思是因人小,不易找到工作,不是人选工作,而是有什么就干什么。)

更常用的形式是: *The question is = The problem is*, 问题是……,又如:

The question is whether he would like me to assist him, not whether I'm ready to do so.

问题是他是否让我协助他,而不是我是否愿意。

7. He owned no fewer than four handlooms and employed apprentices: 他有四台之多的手工织布机,还雇了几个学徒。

no fewer than: 不少于(表示在当时的情况下,这个数目是大的),又如:

That cool summer, they sold *no fewer than* 70 air-conditioners.

那个凉爽的夏天,他们卖出的空调机也有 70 台之多。

8. When the steam engine came, hand-loom weaving naturally

declined: 蒸汽机的出现,自然使得手工机织业衰退。

卡耐基生于工业革命(18世纪中叶—19世纪中叶)后期,此前英国人瓦特(1736—1819)发明了高效率蒸汽机(1769),使得纺织工业的生产率大大提高,从而挤垮了手工纺织业。

9. **I resolved then that the wolf of poverty should be driven from our door some day:** 我当时下定决心总有一天我们要解决温饱问题。(也可直译为:……总有一天我们要把穷困这只恶狼从家门口轰走。)

此句由习语 *keep the wolf from the door*(免于穷困或挨饿)演变而来,如:

In those days, no matter how hard the family worked, they *could hardly keep the wolf from the door.*

在那个年代,无论全家人怎么拼命干,还是难以糊口。

10. **I well remember that both father and mother thought the decision was a great sacrifice for them, but that “it would be better for the two boys”:** 我记得很清楚父亲和母亲都觉得这个决定对他们来说是很大的牺牲,但是“对两个孩子来说更为有利”。

11. **that was how I began my preparation for subsequent apprenticeship as a businessman:** 就这样我开始了为后来实业家见习期的前期准备工作。

that is / was how / why / what, etc.: 这就是……怎样/为什么/什么等……的。

That's why I'd left my mum and dad in the North, and came to London.

这就是我告别留在北方的爸爸妈妈而只身来到伦敦的原因。

12. **I cannot tell you how proud I was when I received my first week's earnings — one dollar and twenty cents:** 我简直不知道怎么形容我拿到第一个星期挣的1美元20美分时的自豪劲

儿。

I cannot / can't tell you how / what, etc.: 用来表示无法表达的感情, 又如:

I just can't tell you how I felt when I heard the news.

我简直无法形容我听到这消息时的感受。

I can't tell you what a despicable man he was.

我无法形容那人是多么卑鄙。

13. It was given to me because I had been of some use to the world.

And I became a contributing member of my family!: 这钱给了我是因为我对社会有了点用处; 还有, 我已经能为家里作出点贡献了。(说明作者自豪的原因。)

be of use: be useful.

14. I think this makes a man out of a boy sooner than almost anything else:

我觉得没有别的事情能使一个少年更快地成长为一个男子汉了。

15. It is everything to feel that you are useful:

感到自己是个有用的人那才叫棒。

everything: the most important thing 最重要的事。又如:

Money isn't everything.

钱不是一切。

16. Many millions of dollars have since passed through my hands.

But the genuine satisfaction I had from that one dollar and twenty cents outweighs any subsequent pleasure in money making: 从那以后有成百万的美元经过我的手, 可是以后赚的任何一笔钱给我带来的欢欣, 都远远比不上那 1 美元 20 美分使我体验到的满足感。

since *adv.*: since I received that one dollar and twenty cents.

outweigh: be greater or more important than 更大, 更重要, 又如:

Many people believe that the benefits of TV far *outweigh* the

harm it might do to children.

许多人认为电视的好处大大超过它可能会对少年儿童造成的伤害。

17. **it represented a week of very hard work — so hard that it might have been described as slavery if it hadn't been for its aim and end:** 这 1 美元 20 美分代表一个星期十分艰苦的劳动,要不是因为干活的目的是挣钱帮父母养家,那活真可以称为奴隶般的劳动。

that 从句表示 hard 的程度。

as slavery 是 that 从句中主语 it 的补足语。

describe sth. / sb. as: 称……为……,又如:

I wouldn't describe the meeting as successful.

我不会说那次会议开得成功。

aim and end: 目的。这里 aim 与 end 的意思相近。英语有些约定俗成的短语由两个意思很近的词组成,又如: fair and square (公平合理)。

18. **It was a terrible task for a lad of twelve to rise every morning, except Sunday, go to the factory while it was still dark, and not be released until after darkness came again in the evening, forty minutes' break only being allowed at noon:** 除星期日之外,每天天不亮就要起床去工厂,直到晚上天黑下来才让离开,中午只给 40 分钟的时间休息,这对一个 12 岁的孩子来说,担子真是太重了。

这个由 45 个词组成的句子主要是主语长而复杂。句子的主语是三个并列的不定式短语: 1) to rise... Sunday; 2) (to) go to the factory; 3) not (to) be released. 两个时间从句中: 1) while it was still dark 修饰 go to the factory; 2) until after darkness came again in the evening 修饰 not be released. for 引出三个不定式的逻辑主语 a lad of twelve. It 是全句的形式主语。

until after 作连接词, after 可有可无。

forty minutes' break only being allowed at noon 是独立主格分词结构,作状语修饰三个不定式短语,说明从早到晚只有 40 分钟的休息。

注意作者用 be released(释放出来)形容他的一天在工厂里干活,到收工时感觉就像从监狱或笼子里放出来一样。

19. **something within always told me that this would not, could not, should not last:** 我的内心有一种力量时时激励我:这种情况不会,也不可能,更不应该持续下去。

注意句子的结尾是用了三个否定的情态动词,一个比一个有力,又如:

I firmly believe that racial discrimination *should* be eliminated. It *can* be and *will* be.

我坚信种族歧视应该消除,能够消除,也一定会消除。

20. **But here for a time it was even worse than in the cotton factory, because I was set to fire the boiler in the cellar and run the small steam engine which drove the machinery:** 可是在这里,有一段时间情况比棉纺厂更糟,因为我既要烧地下室的锅炉,还要看管那台驱动机器的小蒸汽机。

be set to do sth.: 被派做……。

be set to sth. 还有“决意做……”的意思,又如:

She *was set to win* the championship.

她决意要赢得冠军的称号。

21. **The responsibility of keeping the water right and of running the engine, and the danger of my making a mistake and blowing the whole factory to pieces, caused too great a strain, and I often awoke and found myself sitting up in bed through the night, trying the steamgauges:** 我要使锅炉内的水位保持正常,还要看管发动机,责任重大;我要是出点差错,整个工厂就有被爆飞的危险;这两件事给我的压力太大了。我经常夜间从睡梦中醒来,发现自己坐在床上做调试蒸汽压力表的动作。(作者由于

精神紧张,夜里常常做噩梦,在梦里调试蒸汽压力表,经常突然醒来,从床上坐起来。)

这也是个长句,有 49 个词,由两个并列句组成,第一个并列句的主语是两个并列的名词短语:1) the responsibility of..., 2) the danger of..., 第二个并列句有两个并列的谓语动词(词组):1) awoke, 2) found..., 其中分词短语 sitting... 是宾语 myself 的补语,trying... 是状语,修饰 sitting up in bed through the night。

22. **Everything must be bright to them:** 只能让他们知道好的一面。

23. **This was a point of honor, for every member of the family was working hard, and we were telling each other only the bright things:** 这是我应该做的事,因为家里每个人都在拼命干活,我们相互都是报喜不报忧。

a point / matter / question of honor: something you feel you must do because of your moral principles 原则问题,又如:

It was a *point of honour* with the washwoman to return the wash to its rightful owner.

对那位洗衣妇来说把所洗的衣物归还给原主是个信誉问题。

24. **And could I complain?:** 我怎么能抱怨呢?

这是个修辞性疑问句,意思是:“我当然不能怨天尤人。”

25. **My kind employer soon relieved me of the strain, for he needed someone to make out bills and keep his accounts, and finding that I could write a plain schoolboy hand and could add up, he made me his only clerk:** 我那好心的老板很快就解除了我的压力,他需要有人开账单、记账,他看我还能写出小学生水平的字,还会做加法,就叫我当了他惟一的职员。

relieve sb. of: 免除某人的……(负担、职位等),又如:

Let me *relieve* you *of* this heavy box.

让我来帮你拿这个沉重的盒子。

The university assigned a part-time secretary *to relieve*

Professor Smith's assistant *of* some of his work.

学校分派一个兼职秘书,来减轻史密斯教授助手的工作。

make out: 开(支票、账单等)。

add (sth.) up: 把……加起来,又如:

Add all the items up and see how much we have to pay.

你把所有的项目都加起来,看我们要付多少钱。

It turned out that the old man *couldn't add up*.

原来那位老人不会算加法。

made me his only clerk: 让我成为他惟一的职员。

26. **You know how people grumble about poverty as a great evil, and it seems to be accepted that if people had only plenty of money and were rich, they would be happy and more useful, and get more out of life:** 大家都知道人们总是把贫困说成是一大罪恶,好像觉得谁要是有许多钱,谁要是富有,谁就会更幸福、更有作为,谁就能享受更多的生活乐趣。

注意第二个并列句的结构:it 是形式上的主语,代表主从句 that if people... get more out of life. only 修饰 had plenty of money and rich.

get sth. out of sth.: 从……中得到(乐趣、满足等),又如:

She *got* a lot *out of* reading.

读书使她学到不少东西。

I don't understand what you've *got out of* this trash.

我真不明白你从那些乱七八糟的作品中能得到什么。

He seems *to have got* a lot *out of* the course.

他好像从那门课学到不少东西。

注意对卡耐基的这句话我们要以进行分析。我们一方面不认为有钱就幸福,但贫困不是件好事。

27. **As a rule, there is more genuine satisfaction from life in the humble cottages of the poor than in the palaces of the rich:** 一般说来,穷人简陋小屋里的生活比富人豪华宅邸里的生活更温

馨。

as a rule: 通常,一般说来,又如:

As a rule, northerners are taller than southerners.

一般说来,北方人要比南方人高大。

As a rule, the new academic year begins on September 1.

新学年通常 9 月 1 日开始。

28. **I always pity the sons and daughters of rich men, who are attended by servants, and have a governess even at a later age:** 我总是可怜那些有仆人伺候、很老了还有家庭教师的富人子女。
governess 指住在主人家而负责照看主人幼小子女并教他们一些基本知识的女子。

29. **For the poor boy who has in his father his constant companion, tutor, and model, and in his mother his nurse, teacher, guardian angel, saint, all in one, has a richer, more precious fortune in life than any rich man's son, and compared with which all other fortunes count for little:** 因为对于穷人的孩子来说,父亲无时无刻都是他的伙伴、导师和榜样,母亲则集护士、老师、保护神、他所信奉的圣人于一身;这样,比起富人的孩子,他拥有生活中一笔更大、更宝贵的财富;与这一财富之相比,其他任何财富就是微不足道的了。

这个长句有 51 个词,结构比较复杂。全句由连接词 *for* 引出,解释上句。句子的主语和宾语各跟一定语从句。在修饰主语 *the poor boy* 的定语从句 *who has... all in one* 中,动词 *has* 有两长串宾语,动词与宾语之间插入了两个介词短语 *in his father* 和 *in his mother*。全句的谓语动词是 *has*, 其宾语是 *a richer, more precious fortune in life than any rich man's son*。在修饰它的定语从句 *compared with which all other fortunes count for little* 中,主语是 *all other fortunes*, 谓语是 *count for little*, 分词短语 *compared with which* 作状语,关系代词 *which* 代表 *a rich, more precious fortune*。

in sb. : 用来表示某人的特征, 又如:

We've all found a good friend *in Xiao Liu*.

我们都觉得小刘对人很友好。

We have a good centre forward *in Xiao Wang*.

小王是我们很棒的中锋。

all in one: 多位一体, 联合体, 合为一体, 又如:

To me, he is brother, friend and guardian *all in one*.

对我来说, 他集兄长、朋友和监护人于一身。

In those days, that cave dwelling served as a study, a clinic
and a conference room *all in one*.

在那个年代, 这个窑洞既当书房, 又当医务室, 又当会议室。

count for much / little: of much / little value or importance 重
要/不重要, 又如:

Empty promises *count for little*.

空洞的承诺一文不值。

Do diplomas count for anything on the job market?

文凭对找工作重要吗?

30. **It is because I know how sweet and happy and pure the home of honest poverty is, how free it is from perplexing care, from social envy and emulations, how loving and how united its members may be in the common interest of supporting the family, that I sympathize with the rich man's boy and congratulate the poor man's boy:** 我亲身体验过正直贫困家庭里的那种温馨、美满和纯真, 这样的家庭无暇为无聊的事而操心, 不受他人的嫉妒, 不与他人争斗, 为了养家糊口这个共同目标, 家里的人互相爱护, 团结一致。正是由于这个原因我对富人家的孩子深表同情, 而对穷人家的孩子表示祝贺。

此句用 *it is... that...* 强调原因, 整个原因状语从句是强调部分; 句子的主要部分是 *I sympathize... the poor man's boy*。

free from: 无……的, 摆脱了……的, 又如:

He wants to live in a small town *free from* noise pollution.

他想住在一个没有噪音污染的小镇。

Now that he's retired he's *free from* all responsibilities.

他现在已经退休,无官一身轻。

sympathize with (sb. / sth.): 同情;支持,又如:

I must tell you how much we *sympathize with* you on your loss.

我要告诉你对于你的损失我们对你深表同情。

We always *sympathize with* just causes.

我们一贯支持正义的事业。

31. **and it is for these reasons that from the ranks of the poor so many strong, eminent, self-reliant men have always sprung and always must spring:** 正是由于这些原因,穷人的队伍中已经不断涌现出,而且一定还会不断涌现出众多坚强、出众、依赖自己能力的杰出人才。

此句用 it is...that 的形式强调 for these reasons.

spring from: 出人意料地从……出现,又如:

Where did your sister *spring from*? I thought she was in Europe.

你妹妹是从哪里蹦出来的?我还以为她在欧洲呢。

32. **If you will read the list of the immortals who "were not born to die," you will find that most of them were born to the precious heritage of poverty:** 如果你愿意看看那些流芳百世之人的名单,你就会发现他们当中大部分人出生于贫困这个宝贵的环境中。

who "were not born to die": 那些不朽的人物,指那些为人类作出巨大贡献的人物。to die 表示结果。

be born to / into / of: 生于……(环境、家庭等)。

33. **It seems, nowadays, a matter of universal desire that poverty should be abolished:** 今天人们好像普遍希望消除贫困。

that 从句是 desire 的同位语,具体说明其内容。

nowadays: 当前(与过去相对照)。

34. **but to abolish honest, industrious self-denying poverty would be to destroy the soil upon which mankind produces the virtues which enable our race to reach a still higher civilization than it now possesses:** 但是消除正直、勤劳、忘我的贫困就会破坏人类产生诸多美德的土壤,而正是这些美德能使我们人类达到比现在更高的文明程度。

此句是系表结构,主语与表语都是不定式短语;主语 to abolish... poverty 中隐含有一个虚拟条件句 (if we abolished... poverty), would be... 是虚拟语气;表语 to destroy... 中包含两个定语从句: 1) upon which mankind produces the virtues 修饰 soil, 2) which... it now possesses 修饰 virtues, than 引出比较从句 it now possesses, 修饰 higher。

still + 比较级形容词或副词表示更加……。

在课文的最后一部分卡耐基强调贫困能激发人们上进,许多杰出的人物都出身贫寒,这是事实。但是我们不能反过来说越穷越革命,越穷越高尚。也有不少的杰出人物出身于富裕家庭,对此不可形而上学地看问题。人类既要消除贫困,也要保持正直、勤劳等诸多美德。贫困是个很复杂的问题,有人说过贫困在诗歌里、在格言里、在牧师的讲道中是美好的,但在家里、在实际生活中却是非常糟糕的。还有人说贫困受到不再贫困的人们过分的赞美。我们不想在这里深入全面分析贫困。我们想说明的是,一个人尤其是年轻时经历一段贫困的生活不完全是坏事。

Work on the Text

1. Answer these questions.

- 1) Where was Andrew Carnegie born? What did his father do at that time?
- 2) How was his father put out of work? How did that affect young Carnegie?
- 3) Why did the family decide to go to the United States? How old was Carnegie then?
- 4) Where did they settle in the U.S.? What did the family do to make a living?
- 5) How much did Carnegie get for his first week working in a cotton factory? How did he feel when he got the money? Why?
- 6) What was his job at the bobbin-making factory? Why was it hard for a 12-year-old?
- 7) Why didn't he tell his parents about the strain his work put on him?
- 8) What new task did his employer give him? How was it that he was not completely relieved of the strain?
- 9) What does Carnegie think is the most precious fortune in life for children of the poor?
- 10) In what way, according to Carnegie, is life of the poor sweet and happy?
- 11) Why in Carnegie's eyes poverty isn't a great evil? What does he say in defence of poverty? What example does he give to support his view?
- 12) Why does Carnegie call those years of hard work his apprenticeship as a businessman?

2. Look up the following words in an English-English dictionary before looking at the Word List. (You have to decide their part of speech first.)

breadwinner (Para. 2) apprenticeship (Para. 6) outweigh (Para. 7) genuine (Para. 7) right (Para. 10) self-denying (Para. 18)

3. Paraphrase the following.

- 1) I resolved then that the wolf of poverty should be driven from our door some day. (Para. 4)
- 2) I think this makes a man out of a boy sooner than almost anything else. (Para. 6)
- 3) ...that it might have been described as slavery if it hadn't been for its aim and end. (Para. 7)
- 4) And could I complain? (Para. 12)
- 5) ...and it is for these reasons that from the ranks of the poor so many strong, eminent, self-reliant men have always sprung and always must spring. (Para. 16)

4. Discuss or speak on the following topics.

- 1) What hardships did Carnegie go through when the family first arrived in the United States? Why was he able to stand up to such hard work "that might have been described as slavery"?
- 2) What is Carnegie's view of poverty? Do you agree/ disagree? Is poverty an evil or a blessing? Where in the text does he show that he himself doesn't like being poor?
- 3) Do you think we should eliminate poverty in China? How?

5. Write a paragraph of about 120 words on this topic: How Young Carnegie Felt about the One Dollar and Twenty Cents He First Earned.

You can use this outline:

- 1) He felt very proud that he had become a contributing member of his family.
- 2) He was filled with a feeling of satisfaction because the money was the hard-earned reward of honest work.
- 3) He believed that he would get into a better position some day.

Vocabulary Exercises

1. Complete the following sentences with words formed in the same way as in the examples, making changes in the spelling wherever necessary.

Examples:

jealousy 妒忌 beauty 美丽 honesty 诚实

discovery 发现 expiry 期满

(形容词或少量动词 + -y → 名词)

piggy/piggie 小猪 doggy/doggie 小狗 aunty / auntie 阿姨

granny / grannie 奶奶

(名词 + -y / -ie → 表示小或昵称的名词)

dad difficult enquire master modest recover
--

- 1) Being well taken care of in the hospital, the patient made a quick _____ from his illness.
- 2) _____ helps one to go forward.
- 3) Do you think _____ will let me go out if I promise to finish my homework before supper?

- 4) He has a strong accent and I have much _____ in following what he says.
- 5) _____ of English gives him an advantage in getting a job.
- 6) We have made _____ about the cost of having our house decorated.

2. Translate the following.

1) Use the verb + noun or adj. + noun collocation.

养家糊口 吸取教训 赡养家庭 提供材料 驱动机器
缓解痛苦 记录账目 消除贫穷 教训某人 家庭会议
职业女性 珍贵财富

2) Use the "useful expressions".

- (1) 眼见敌人的导弹把村庄炸成一片废墟, 村民们都气炸了肺。
- (2) 他注意到那个中年人给一家电视公司开了一张 150 英镑的支票。
- (3) 他从一生经历中体会到, 友谊和爱比金钱重要得多。
- (4) 去年夏天, 他在一所乡间村舍住了一个月, 远离城市的喧闹。
- (5) 为了保护大自然这一共同利益, 许多政府联起手来清除化学工业带来的有毒污染。
- (6) 委员会决定明年的会议在西安举行。
- (7) 天亮时, 他发现自己躺在一个山谷底处。
- (8) 许多人为“希望工程”捐款, 是因为他们深切同情农村里上不起学的孩子们。
- (9) 高考来临之际, 考生家长们都在尽力减轻孩子的精神负担。

3) Use *serve*, *bear* and *work*.

- (1) 他已经为这个广告公司工作 6 年了。

- (2) 电梯现在不运行,他只好爬上 11 层楼。
- (3) 看来他的阿谀奉承(flattery)这次不能奏效了。
- (4) 我 80 岁的爷爷无法忍受北方的严冬。
- (5) 他父亲在 10 年前是中国驻英国的大使。
- (6) 在屋子的角落里有一张矮桌子当电视架使用。
- (7) 那家名流聚集的餐馆的饭菜很一般。
- (8) 这部移动电话看起来不时髦,可能满足我的需要。
- (9) 如果出了问题,你就得承担责任。
- (10) 我不忍心看到老人受到他们亲生子女的虐待。
- (11) 我们多年的努力现在终于开花结果了。
- (12) 如果这种药没有效果,那么你只好动手术了。

3. Complete the following sentences.

1) Put suitable prepositions or adverbs in the blanks.

- (1) The boss is very pleased _____ what you have done.
- (2) My father encourages me to study hard to become a person _____ some use when I grow _____.
- (3) As his close friends, we congratulated him _____ his great success.
- (4) The medicine will help to relieve you _____ the pain in your back.
- (5) The number of people who were hurt in the accident added _____ to 10.
- (6) He found he could get little satisfaction _____ neither his work nor his family life.
- (7) Compared _____ hotels _____ big cities, those in small ones are much cheaper.
- (8) The lady sympathized _____ the boy who had lost both his parents in the war.

- (9) I'll never give _____ no matter what difficulties I may run into.
- (10) He's working _____ a problem, and won't leave his lab until he comes up with a solution.
- (11) The maths exam was so difficult that few students could work _____ the answers.
- (12) We've done a lot in the past fifty years, but we still have to bear _____ mind that ours is a developing country, and we still have a long way to go.

2) Choose the correct word from the brackets.

- (1) We have to _____ between doing geography or studying another language. (select, choose)
- (2) His influence on his children _____ as he grew older. (declined, worsened)
- (3) We made plans for a visit, but _____ difficulties with the car prevented it. (later, subsequent)
- (4) I have to spend a large _____ of money to get my stolen car back. (sums, total)
- (5) It's quite _____ to me that you haven't paid enough attention to safety. (plain, simple)

4. Choose the best word for each blank.

In the late sixteenth century the Spanish Empire was declining, and the Spanish King, Philip the Second, (1) _____ (decided, hoped, suggested, wondered) that the best way for him to (2) _____ (defend, guard, protect, watch) his declining Empire was to attack England. He (3) _____ (however, so, therefore, yet) built a fleet of the largest ships the world had (4) _____ (experienced, looked, seen, viewed), and called this fleet his Armada. There were 130

ships, with 7,000 sailors and 17,000 soldiers (5) _____ (aboard, abroad, in, on). Another 30,000 Spanish soldiers were waiting in France. The plan was that the Armada (6) _____ (could, might, must, should) sail up the English Channel, destroying all the English ships it met. It would then guard the Spanish soldiers in France while they (7) _____ (across, crossed, past, passed) to England on small boats.

The Armada was a disaster. As it entered the Channel the English attacked. (8) _____ (For, In, On, With) spite of this, the Spanish reached the (9) _____ (degree, point, stage, time) where they were to meet their soldiers in France. But then, at night, the English attacked again, and this time with "fire boats". These were boats (10) _____ (carried, filled, took, went) with explosives and sent into the middle of the Armada. The Spanish tried to escape, sailing east. The English (11) _____ (chased, drove, run, sought) them up to Scotland. Slowly the Armada sailed round Scotland and back to Spain. Only about half the (12) _____ (first, former, old, original) number of ships reached Spain.

Grammar & Usage

Adjectives (II)

1. 形容词在句中的位置

1) 前置

作为名词修饰语,形容词通常前置,它在名词词组中的位置总是在限定词(如冠词、指示代词或物主代词)之后、名词之前。

Personally Alan Trevor was a *strange, rough* fellow.

He had been very much attracted by Hughie entirely on account of his *personal* charm.

How could these *hard-nosed* Nazi detectives help but smell out the diaries beneath my broadcasts?

As a rule, there is more *genuine* satisfaction from life in the *humble* cottages of the poor than in the palaces of the rich.

2) 后置

在下列情况下,形容词应置于所修饰的名词之后。

(1) 修饰 *some, any, every, no* 所构成的复合词:

Have you read anything *interesting* recently?

There is nothing *wrong* with the computer.

I have something very *important* to tell you.

I know everybody *present* here.

(2) 当形容词与不定式或介词构成词组时:

They pointed to the two suitcases *full of my diaries*.

That was a day *warm enough to swim* in the lake.

It's a word both *easy to spell* and *to pronounce*.

When he opened the door, he found a room *full of dust*.

China is a country *different from any other country* in the world.

注意:由形容词 *different, similar, easy, difficult, possible, impossible* 或形容词的比较级或最高级组成的词组中,形容词与其他成分可以分开,而且意思不变。

Do you have a *different* book *from* this one?

Do you have a book *different from* this one?

You've given me a *difficult* question *to answer*.

You've given me a question *difficult to answer*.

Can you think of a *better* solution *than* this one?

Can you think of a solution *better than* this one?

在下列结构中,形容词与其所修饰的名词必须分开,移至不定冠词前:

In that area, AIDS is *so dreadful* a disease that the very mention of it strikes terror into the population. (这种结构用于正式文体中,一般情况用 such a(Λ) + adj. + n. o.)

John is as *reasonable* a man as any of us.

A computer is as *useful* a tool as a plough or a magnifying-glass.

He is too *old* a man to do that kind of job.

(3) 某些过去分词起形容词作用作定语时,或形容词词组作定语时:

The people *involved* are all very young.

The department *concerned* will pay for the damage.

The police have found the driver *responsible for the accident*.

A man *capable of murdering his own aunt* is definitely dangerous to society.

有少数形容词作定语置于名词前与名词后时意思不同:

We are all worried about the *present situation* in the area. (当前形势)

I don't know many *people present*. (出席的人)

This is indeed an *involved sentence*. (复杂的句子)

One of *the companies involved* is an SOE (state-owned enterprise). (有牵连的公司)

We all think Steve is a *responsible garbage collector*. (有责任心的清洁工)

The *party responsible for the damage* is to be punished.
(造成破坏的一方)

The *concerned mother* had nightmares. (担心的母亲)

The *mothers concerned* all attended the meeting. (有关的母亲)

2. 形容词作名词的用法

good, bad, poor, rich, young, old, sick, healthy, dead, living, inevitable 以及其他某些说明品质或情况的形容词前面加 the, 用来表示同一类人、事或物。这种表达形式具有复数含义, 其后的动词要用复数。

The poor are often more generous than *the rich*.

Can you tell *the good* from *the bad*?

The kind priest provides shelter for *the homeless*.

The story proves that *the weak* sometimes can overpower *the strong*.

It is for these reasons that from the ranks of *the poor* so many strong, eminent, self-reliant men have always sprung and always must spring.

The inevitable happened when he was least prepared.

the + few / little / many 同样也起名词作用:

Some years ago, only *the privileged few* had mobile phones.

The rare books in this library are only available to *the select few*.

We did *the little* we could to help the dying.

This doesn't sound like an experience for *the many*.

注意: 这是表示类指的一种结构, 如果所指的是一类中的特定部分, 则必须用名词。

The young are generally more open-minded than *the old*.

The old people under the tree there are playing chess and

enjoying themselves.

Exercises

1. Replace the relative clause with an adjective or an adjective phrase, placing it in the right place.

- 1) All the students who are interested in music came to the lecture.
- 2) We should call the doctor who is nearest.
- 3) We must find the person who is concerned.
- 4) I have a problem which is much more complicated.
- 5) Can you recommend a book which is more interesting than this?
- 6) The time that is best to take the medicine is after supper.
- 7) I would like to live in a place where it is warm enough to go swimming in winter.
- 8) A sunset which was beautiful filled the sky.
- 9) Mr. Thomas is studying a language which is very difficult.
- 10) There are a lot of chairs which are new and comfortable in the living room.

2. Rewrite these sentences as shown in the examples.

Examples: John is as intelligent as Tom. (a man)

John is as intelligent a man as Tom.

The place is too far for me to get there on time.

It is too far a place for me to get there on time.

- 1) Tea is not as popular as coffee in that country. (a drink)
- 2) Mr. Williams is as kind as his wife. (a person)
- 3) Chinese is just as interesting as mathematics. (a subject)
- 4) Water is as precious as oil. (a natural resource)

- 5) His brother is as promising as he. (a young man)
- 6) The film is too boring for me to sit through.
- 7) That knife is too dull to cut the meat with.
- 8) The bag is too heavy for the boy to carry.
- 9) He was too careless to do the work.
- 10) The matter is too serious for us to discuss lightly.

3. Translate the following sentences into English, using adjectives or adjective phrases.

- 1) 你见过比这更拥挤的超市吗?
- 2) 我认为你最好跟有关人士谈谈这个问题。
- 3) 那些在事故中受伤的人都已送往医院。
- 4) 我从来没碰到过你这样不讲道理(unreasonable)的人。
- 5) 在场的每一个人都认为这是个好建议。

4. Revision Exercises.

- 1) Translate the following sentences into English, using *each*, *every*, *many*, *much*, *some*, and *any* (revision: indefinite pronouns).**

- (1) 每一个想获得证书(certificate)的同学都必须通过这个考试。
- (2) 你看电视太多,花在运动上面的时间太少。
- (3) 他所说的我大部分同意,但不是都同意。
- (4) 饭店里还有三个经济房间,每一个都有卫生间。
- (5) 在英国的变化无常的天气是一个谈论得很多的话题。
- (6) 我们的同胞在受苦受难我们怎么能坐这里什么也不干?
- (7) 只要下午5点钟之前把这活干完,你怎么干都行。
- (8) 在我们镇里,他的菜园长出的西红柿比谁家的都甜。

2) **Complete the following by putting in indefinite pronouns.**

This is a story about four people called Everybody, Somebody, Nobody, and Anybody. There was an important job to be done and Everybody was asked to do it. But _____ knew that _____ could do it and thought that _____ really ought to do it. As it turned out _____ did it and _____ was very cross because _____ had done what _____ could have done and _____ should have done.

Quotations for the Lesson

Poverty is a virtue greatly overrated by those who no longer practice it.

Barnaby C. Keeney

Poverty is very good in poems but very bad in the house; very good in maxims and sermons but very bad in practical life.

Henry Ward Beecher

Lesson Twelve

Text

A Friend of the Environment

John Hartley

20 世纪人类物质文明的发展与进步远远超越了以往任何时代,与此同时人类自己的生存环境也遭到了空前的破坏。幸运的是,人们已经逐渐认识到环境保护问题是人类要解决的重大问题。对于人们今天所达到的这一共识,本世纪初常在宾夕法尼亚树林里溜达的一个小姑娘功不可没……

Early Kinship with Nature

1 A little girl tramping around in the Pennsylvania woods near her home feels close to the birds and plants and animals. She is at ease with them. They are, in a way, her close friends. The little girl, like many people, feels that these wonders of Nature are precious and permanent.

2 Rachel Carson continued to feel that way for much of her life. "It was pleasant to believe," she wrote later, "that much of Nature was forever beyond the tampering reach of man. He might cut down the forests and dam the streams, but the clouds and the rain and the stream of life were God's. It was comforting to suppose that the stream of life would flow on through time in whatever course God had given it — without interference by one of the drops in that stream —

man."

***Silent Spring* — a Warning to Mankind**

3 But she found out that she was wrong. As a scientist, she learned with sadness that little in Nature is truly beyond the "tampering reach of man." Then, angrily aware of the harsh facts concerning the present and future dangers to the environment, she used her great skills as a writer to sound a startling warning to mankind. *Silent Spring*, published in 1962, showed quite clearly that man was endangering himself and everything else on this planet by his indiscriminate use of chemical pesticides. As her title suggests, Miss Carson was saying that there might come a springtime that would indeed be silent. It would be silent because the birds, as well as other creatures, and plants would have been destroyed by the man-made poisons used to kill crop-threatening insects.

4 When she was that little girl in Pennsylvania, Rachel Carson never would have believed that years later she would write a scientific book that would stir up so much controversy. The book created the enthusiasm for "protecting the environment" that has become so commonplace today. Because she had always been such an avid and appreciative reader, her dream when she started college was to become an imaginative writer. She wanted to be one perhaps like the English poet John Masefield. His fine words had fired her imagination about the sea, which she had never seen. When she was a sophomore, though, she took a course in biology. It was there she discovered the wonder and excitement of scientific study of those animals she had learned to know and admire as a child tramping through the woods.

Redirected Toward Science

5 After finishing college, she did research and taught in various universities and government agencies. At the same time, she did indeed become acquainted with the sea that Masefield had written about. She learned "the gull's way and the whale's way where the wind's like a whetted knife." Like any good scientist, she took extensive notes about her studies, whether her focus of the moment was a crab in Chesapeake Bay or a turtle in the Caribbean. Ultimately she wrote about the sea. She wrote about it not only in formal academic reports but also in a book that informed and thrilled laymen around the world. *The Sea Around Us*, published in 1951, has been translated into more than thirty languages and was on the best-seller list for more than eighty consecutive weeks. Rachel Carson, a scientist with the magic touch of a poet, shared her love of the ocean and its creatures with all mankind. Her style was clear but lively, informative but not preachy, and for most readers truly exhilarating. Although the oceans may cover seven-tenths of the earth's surface, few of us know much about them. *The Sea Around Us* was a delightful antidote to our ignorance.

Her Concern over Pesticides

6 In the decade after the publication of *The Sea Around Us* she continued with her research and writing. There were other books and numerous magazine articles. Most of them dealt with the major love of her life — the sea. However, because she was a true scientist and an aware human being, she knew that everything on this planet is connected to everything else. Thus, she became increasingly alarmed by the development and use of DDT and other pesticides of its type. These chemicals, she knew, do not break down in the soil. Instead,

they tend to be endlessly recycled in the food chains on which birds and animals and man himself are completely dependent.

The Poisonous Cycle

7 One might guess that at this time Carson the reader might have reminded Carson the scientist of some passages in Shakespeare's most famous play. Prince Hamlet used revoltingly grisly images in vicious baiting of his hated uncle when he told him that in nature's food chain, the worm is king. We fatten other creatures so that they can feed us, and we fatten ourselves to ultimately feed maggots. The worms eat the king and the beggar alike; they are simply two dishes but the same meal for the worm. The worm that has eaten the king may be used by a man (who could be a beggar) for fishing, and he, in turn, eats the fish that ate the worm. In this way, a king can pass through the guts of a beggar.

8 Rachel Carson knew of this poisonous cycle. And she knew now, as her own observations were confirmed by fellow scientists all over the country, that this "worm" now carried a heavy concentration of poison. It could be passed on to fish, to other animals, to their food supply, and to men and women and children throughout the earth. In spite of fierce opposition from the chemical industry, from powerful government agencies, and from farmer organizations, she persisted in her research and writing. Then in 1962 she published *Silent Spring*. The book exploded into the public consciousness. It received great praise from some, great criticism from others. The little girl from the Pennsylvania woods, now approaching middle age, had fired a major salvo in the battle for the environment.

Word List

tramp /træmp/ <i>vi.</i>	步行, 徒步穿过
woods /wudz/ <i>n.</i>	(复) 树林
tampering /'tæmpəriŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	干预的, 干涉的
reach /ri:tʃ/ <i>n.</i>	范围
dam /dæm/ <i>vt.</i>	筑坝拦……
course /kɔ:s/ <i>n.</i>	路线; 道路
interference /,ɪntə'fɪərəns/ <i>n.</i>	干涉
sound /saund/ <i>vt.</i>	发出; 使发声
endanger /ɪn'deɪndʒə(r)/ <i>vt.</i>	威胁
indiscriminate /,ɪndɪ'skrɪmɪnət/ <i>adj.</i>	不加选择的, 任意的
pesticide /'pestɪsaɪd/ <i>n.</i>	杀虫剂, 农药
title /'taɪtl/ <i>n.</i>	题目, 标题
springtime /'sprɪŋtaɪm/ <i>n.</i>	春天, 春天的时候
man-made /,mæn'meɪd/ <i>n.</i>	人为的, 人造的
threaten /'θreɪn/ <i>vt.</i>	威胁
insect /'ɪnsekt/ <i>n.</i>	昆虫
controversy /'kɒntɹəvɜ:sɪ, kən- 'trɒvəsi/ <i>n.</i>	争论, 争议
enthusiasm /ɪn'θju:zɪæzəm/ <i>n.</i>	热情
commonplace /'kɒmənpleɪs/ <i>adj.</i>	平凡的, 老生常谈的
avid /'ævɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	急切的, 渴望的
appreciative /ə'pri:ʃɪətɪv/ <i>adj.</i>	有鉴赏力的
reader /'ri:də(r)/ <i>n.</i>	读者
imaginative /ɪ'mædʒ(ɪ)nətɪv/ <i>adj.</i>	有想像力的, 想像力丰富的

fire /faɪə(r)/ <i>vt.</i>	刺激,激起
imagination /ɪmədʒɪˈneɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	想像力
sophomore /ˈsɒfəmə:(r)/ <i>n.</i>	大学二年级学生
redirect /rɪˈdɪːrekt, -daɪ-/ <i>vi.</i>	重新指向
agency /ˈeɪdʒənsɪ/ <i>n.</i>	机构;代理处
gull /ɡʌl/ <i>n.</i>	鸥
whale /weɪl/ <i>n.</i>	鲸
whet /wet/ <i>vt.</i>	磨快
extensive /ɪkˈstensɪv/ <i>adj.</i>	数量大的;数目多的
focus /ˈfəʊkəs/ <i>n.</i>	(注意、兴趣等的)中心,集中点
crab /kræb/ <i>n.</i>	蟹
turtle /ˈtɜ:tl/ <i>n.</i>	海龟,甲鱼
ultimately /ˈʌltɪmɪtli/ <i>adv.</i>	最后
formal /ˈfɔ:ml/ <i>adj.</i>	正式的
academic /ˌækəˈdemɪk/ <i>adj.</i>	学术的
thrill /θrɪl/ <i>vt.</i>	使震颤,使激动
layman /ˈleɪmən/ <i>n.</i>	外行人,门外汉
best-seller /ˈbestˈseɪə/n.	畅销书
consecutive /kənˈsekjʊtɪv/ <i>adj.</i>	连续不断的
magic /ˈmædʒɪk/ <i>n.</i>	魔力,魔法
informative /ɪnˈfɔ:mətɪv/ <i>adj.</i>	增进知识的;增长见识的
preachy /ˈpri:tʃɪ/ <i>adj.</i>	说教的
exhilarating /ɪɡˈzɪləreɪtɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	使人愉快的
ignorance /ɪɡnərəns/ <i>n.</i>	无知
publication /ˌpʌblɪˈkeɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	出版
numerous /ˈnju:mərəs/ <i>adj.</i>	无数的
increasingly /ɪnˈkri:sɪŋli/ <i>adv.</i>	逐渐地;渐增地
alarm /əˈlɑ:m/ <i>vt.</i>	警告
endlessly /ˈendləsli/ <i>adv.</i>	不断地;无穷尽地
recycle /rɪˈsaɪkl/ <i>vt.</i>	重新利用

poisonous / ¹ pəɪzənəs/ <i>adj.</i>	有毒的
cycle / ¹ saɪkl/ <i>n.</i>	循环
revoltingly /rɪ ¹ vɒltɪŋli/ <i>adv.</i>	令人作呕地,使人反感地
grisly / ¹ grɪzli/ <i>adj.</i>	恐怖的,可怕的
vicious / ¹ vɪʃəs/ <i>adj.</i>	邪恶的
bait /beɪt/ <i>vi.</i>	以饵引诱
worm /wɜ:m/ <i>n.</i>	虫子
fatten / ¹ fætn/ <i>vt.</i>	养肥
maggot / ¹ mæɡət/ <i>n.</i>	蛆
variable / ¹ veəriəbl/ <i>adj.</i>	变化的,可变的
fish /fɪʃ/ <i>vi.</i>	钓鱼
observations / ¹ ɒbzə ¹ veɪʃənz/ <i>n.</i>	(复)观察
confirm /kən ¹ fɜ:m/ <i>vt.</i>	证实
concentration / ¹ kɒnsən ¹ treɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	浓缩;浓度;集中物
opposition / ¹ ɒpə ¹ zɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	反对
persist /pə ¹ sɪst/ <i>vi.</i>	坚持
salvo / ¹ sæl ¹ vəu/ <i>n.</i>	(火炮的)齐射

Proper Names

John Hartley / ¹ dʒɒn ¹ hɑ:tlɪ/	约翰·哈特利
Pennsylvania / ¹ pensɪl ¹ veɪnjə/	宾夕法尼亚
Rachel Carson / ¹ reitʃəl ¹ ku:sən/	雷切尔·卡森
John Masefield / ¹ dʒɒn ¹ meɪsfɪld/	约翰·梅斯菲尔德
Chesapeake Bay / ¹ tʃesəpi:k beɪ/	切萨皮克湾
Caribbean / ¹ kærɪ ¹ bɪən/	加勒比海
DDT /di: di: ¹ ti:/	双对氯苯基三氯乙烷,滴滴涕 (一种杀虫剂)

Shakespeare /'ʃeɪkspɪə(r) /
Hamlet /'hæmlɪt /

莎士比亚
哈姆雷特

Useful Expressions

be at ease with	轻松
find out	发现
be aware of	知道
stir up	引起
be acquainted with	接触, 认识
break down	分解
remind of	令……回忆, 想起
all over	到处
persist in	坚持
know of	听说
be connected to	有关联
sound a warning	发出警告

Word Study

break *vt. & vi.*

1. 打破, 打碎; 摔断(手脚等)

V; V + N

When I drew the other side of the letter “A”, the stick of chalk *broke* and I was left with a stump.

The glass fell on the floor and *broke* into pieces.

Be careful *not to break the vase* when you clean the shelf.

Mr. Budd knew that the criminal *would break his head* if he

tried to run out of the shop.

2. 违反(规定、法律等);违背(协议、承诺等)

V + N

If you ride a motorbike without a helmet, you *will break the law*.

One of the uses of the telephone is to make or *break social engagements*.

3. (坏消息)传开;通告,通知(坏消息)

V; V + N

When the scandal *broke*, the minister had to resign.

They knew that Lousie Mallard had a weak heart, so they *broke the bad news* gently.

4. Phrases:

break away from sb. / sth. 逃脱,摆脱;与……断绝往来;改掉,戒除

break down (机器、汽车等)停止运行;(身体或精神)崩溃;冲破(障碍等)

break sth. down 中断;破除,压倒

break in 强行进入;插话,打岔

break into sth. 强行进入;突然开始

break loose from sb. / sth. 从……中挣脱出来

break one's heart 使心碎,使极端伤心

break out 爆发,突然发生

break through 突破(障碍等),取得突破性进展

break *n.* 破损;中断,(工作等的)休息时间

reach *vt. & vi.*

1. 抵达(某地或某人处)

V + N

I took the steps of the long concrete stairs in twos until I *reached the street* above and the cold air hit my warm face.

The Marine caught the one plane that might enable him to
reach his dying father.

2. 伸出手(去拿/碰,常与 out 连用)

V; V + N

He *reached* across the desk for a pencil.

The old man *reached out his hand*, and the Marine wrapped it
in both his.

Professor Agassiz *reached* from a shelf *a huge jar of speci-*
mens in yellow alcohol.

The little boy is too short to *reach the top shelf.*

3. 达到(程度、数量、年龄等)

V + N

These Chinese-made VCDs *have reached the world's ad-*
vanced level.

The population of the famous big city *has reached 10 million.*

When he *reaches the age of 18*, he'll be able, by law, to use
the money.

4. 伸向,延伸

V; V + N

Her hair nearly *reaches* down to her waist.

The park *reaches* (as far as) *the lake.*

Because the ladder *couldn't reach the window*, they had no
choice but to wait for the policeman to come.

reach *n.* 达到

Phrases:

beyond / out of sb.'s reach 伸手不能达到之地;力所不及

within one's reach 伸手可及之处;力所能及

start *vt. & vi.*

1. 开始,着手

V + N; V + to do sth. ; V + doing sth.

I *started a rigorous program* of running and dieting the very next day.

It was January of 1940 when I *started my first semester* at a university.

When she *started college* her dream was to become an imaginative writer.

The nurse *started to offer words* of sympathy, but the Marine interrupted her.

You can *start practising* being happy right now without any obvious reason.

2. 动身, 出发, 起程

V

The question of *starting* for the United States was discussed from day to day in my family council.

Andersen took what little money he had, said goodbye to his mother and his stepfather and *started* out to seek his fortune.

3. (火灾、争吵、战争等)发生, 引起(火灾、争吵、战争等); 开办, 创办

V; V + N; V + N + doing sth.

It *started* one rainy day, when I was coming home from work.

Nobody knew how the fire *started*.

If an Englishman has to share the compartment with a stranger, he may travel miles without *starting a conversation*.

He *started a club* for the handicapped to offer help to them.

4. (机器等)开始运转; 发动(机器等)

V; V + N

The engine *wouldn't start* no matter how he tried.

He *couldn't start his car* and so he took the bus.

5. Phrases:

start off / out 出发,动身去……

start off / out to do sth. 开始做……

start for (a place) 出发去某地

start (sb.) off 开始做……,使(某人)开始做……

to start with 首先,第一

start *n.* 开始;出发;起始点

Phrases:

at the start 最初,起初

from start to finish 自始至终

Notes on the Text

1. **About the text:** 本文简略介绍了美国女生物学家、作家雷切尔·卡森(1907—1962) 致力于科普写作和环境保护的一生。

2. **A little girl tramping around in the Pennsylvania woods near her home feels close to the birds and plants and animals:** 一个小女孩,在宾夕法尼亚离自己家不远的树林里溜达着,她对鸟儿、对花草树木、对动物倍感亲近。

注意第一段用的是一般现在时。描述过去发生的事情,有时为了使叙事亲切、生动可以用现在时态,这里作者好像是向我们展现小女孩与大自然和谐的画面,而不是在讲述过去发生的事情。

3. **She is at ease with them:** 她与树林里的生灵在一起感到自在。

be / feel at (one's) ease: be completely relaxed(心情)轻松。

Hans *felt* most *at ease* with children.

汉斯和孩子们在一起感到十分轻松惬意。

4. **They are, in a way, her close friends:** 从某些方面来讲,这些生灵都是她亲密的朋友。

in a way: to a certain extent but not entirely 在某种程度上;在某些方面。

5. **The little girl, like many people, feels that these wonders of Nature are precious and permanent:** 和许多人一样,这个小女孩觉得大自然的这些奇妙之物十分珍贵,并将永存于世。

此句的主语是 the little girl, 而不是 many people, 因此动词 feels 是单数形式。

6. **Rachel Carson continued to feel that way for much of her life:** 雷切尔·卡森一生很长一段时间都是这么想的。

7. **"It was pleasant to believe," she wrote later, "that much of Nature was forever beyond the tampering reach of man..."**: 她后来写道:“相信大自然的许许多多景观和生灵永远不会受到人类的干扰,令人感到欣慰……”

Nature: 整个宇宙,包括宇宙中自然存在的一切,常常大写。

much of Nature: 大自然中存在的许多东西。

beyond the tampering reach of man: 人类无法干预和改变。

8. **He might cut down the forests and dam the streams, but the clouds and the rain and the stream of life were God's:** 人可以砍伐森林,可以在江河上筑坝,但是天上的云彩、天上下的雨以及源远流长的生命都由上帝主宰。(即人类不能干预和改变。)

the stream of life 指天下的生灵,从生命的孕育、发展、成长到死亡,周而复始,永远不断。

(人类现在对大自然干预太多,并开始改变生命的历程,如克隆动物,甚至有人要克隆人!令人担忧。)

9. **It was comforting to suppose that the stream of life would flow on through time in whatever course God had appointed for it — without interference by one of the drops in that stream — man:**

设想生命之泉,按照上帝指定的历程,将永远奔流不息,不受人

类——这泉中的一滴水珠——的干预,令人感到欣慰。

注意这个长句的结构。it 是形式上的主语,代表不定式 to suppose...man。在这个由 34 个词组成的不定式短语中 that 从句是 suppose 的宾语。此宾语从句本身是个主从复合句,主句是 the stream of life would flow on。两个介词短语 through time 和 in whatever course God had appointed for it 都是介词短语作状语,其中第二个介词短语包含一个定语从句(which)God had appointed for it,修饰 whatever course, it 代表 the stream of life。第一个破折号后面的介词短语解释 in whatever course God had appointed for it;第二个破折号后面的 man 是 one of the drops in that stream 的同位语。

据《圣经》中《创世纪》的记载,世界为上帝所创造,世上万物也按上帝所规定的方式运作。现在除了少数原教旨主义者之外,人们不再按字面的意义来理解《圣经》,因此我们可以把 God had appointed for it 理解为自然的本身的规律。

这句话是本文作者对雷切尔·卡森早年的想法的评论。

10. As a scientist, she learned with sadness that little in Nature is truly beyond the “tampering reach of man”: 作为科学家,她悲伤地认识到,大自然的万物几乎没有什么东西真的“不会受到人类的干预和改变”。

11. Then, angrily aware of the harsh facts concerning the present and future dangers to the environment, she used her great skills as a writer to sound a startling warning to mankind: 后来,在她十分气愤地意识到了当前和未来威胁人类生存环境的那些严酷事实之后,她就利用她作为一位作家高超的艺术向人类发出了惊人的警告。

angrily aware...to the environment 是形容词短语,说明主语的状况,是主语的补足语。

aware of: realizing that 意识到,又如:

When she became aware of the danger, she left the house

immediately.

当她意识到有危险时,她立即离开了那栋房子。

aware 后面也可跟 that 从句。如:

From the way they talked, she became *aware that* they were keeping something from her.

从他们说话的样子她意识到他们有事瞒着她。

concerning *prep.*: in connection with(正式)关于,与……有关的,又如:

Even in dying, however, we still have choices *concerning* how we handle what is happening to us.

不过,即使是面临死亡,我们还是可以选择面对死亡的方式。

as a writer 此处作定语修饰 great skills。

to sound a... warning 是不定式短语,作目的状语,修饰 used her great skills as a writer。

sound *vt.*: 发出信号。

12. **As her title suggests, Miss Carson was saying that there might come a springtime that would indeed be silent:** 正如书名所示,

卡森女士是在说明将来有可能出现一个确实寂静的春天。

此处 as 是关系代词,在从句中作 suggests 的宾语,它代表的是整个主句的意思。关系代词 as 在从句中也可以作主语,又如:

As we all know, Taiwan is a part of China. (作宾语)

众所周知,台湾是中国的一部分。

As so often happens, the darkest hour comes just before the dawn. (作主语)

黎明到来之前往往是最黑暗的时刻。

13. **Rachel Carson never would have believed that years later she would write a scientific book that would stir up so much controversy:** 雷切尔·卡森从来也没有想到,多年以后她会写出一本引起激烈争论的科普著作。

never would have done 表示与过去事实相反的情况。

stir up: 引起(一般来说不好的情绪或情况),又如:

His speech *stirred up* racial hatred.

他的演说激起了种族仇恨。

As usual, that fellow is trying *to stir up* trouble.

和往常一样,那家伙又在制造麻烦。

14. **Because she had always been such an avid and appreciative reader, her dream when she started college was to become an imaginative writer:** 由于她一贯喜欢读书,又有鉴赏力,开始上大学时她的梦想是成为一个富有创造力的作家。

这里 *imaginative writer* 指写虚构的故事的作家,这需要丰富的想像力,这与后来她所从事的科普写作(要尊重事实)恰好相反。

美国大学一年级的学生先不确定专业,选课比较自由,经过一段时间再确定专业。

15. **She wanted to be one perhaps like the English poet John Masfield:** 或许她想成为像约翰·梅斯菲尔德那样的作家。

one 是代词,代表上句所说 *an imaginative writer*。

John Masfield: 约翰·梅斯菲尔德(1878—1967),英国诗人,以咏海诗篇《盐水谣》及长篇叙事诗《永恒的宽恕》(*The Everlasting Mercy*) 闻名,1930 年获英国桂冠诗人称号。

16. **His fine words had fired her imagination about the sea, which she had never seen:** 他的描述激发了她对从来没见过的大海的想像。

fire sb.: stimulate sb.'s imagination; fill sb. with a strong emotion 激发想像;使……充满(某种激情)。

17. **It was there she discovered the wonder and excitement of scientific study of those animals she had learned to know and admire as a child tramping through the woods:** 从那门生物课,她发现,对她小时候在树林里溜达时熟悉和喜爱的那些动物进行科学研究令人感到惊讶和兴奋。

there: in the biology course she took。

she had learned to know and admire 为定语从句,修饰 those animals。

as a child 状语,修饰 had learned... and admire。

tramping through the woods 为现在分词短语,作定语,修饰 a child。

18. **she did indeed become acquainted with the sea that Masefield had written about:** (在此期间)她也熟悉了约翰·梅斯菲尔德诗里所描写的大海。

be acquainted with / acquaint sb. / oneself with sth.: 熟悉了……,使熟悉……。

19. **She learned “the gull’s way and the whale’s way where the wind’s like a whetted knife”:** 她学会了“海鸥之旅,海鲸之旅,那里刮起锋利如刀的海风”的诗句。

这是约翰·梅斯菲尔德的名诗《海之恋》(*Sea Fever*)中的一行。注意此行中头韵的运用,其中六个词都以 /w/音开头。

20. **she took extensive notes about her studies, whether her focus of the moment was a crab in Chesapeake Bay or a turtle in the Caribbean:** 她对海洋生物进行研究时,做了大量笔记,无论是研究切萨皮克湾的蟹还是研究加勒比海的龟都是如此。

whether 引出的是让步从句。

her focus of the moment: 当时研究的重点。

21. **Rachel Carson, a scientist with the magic touch of a poet, shared her love of the ocean and its creatures with all mankind:** 雷切尔·卡森以诗人的魅力、科学家的态度让全人类分享她对海洋和海洋生物的热爱。(此句的意思是,卡森的作品具有诗的特点,充满了诗人般的想像力,不像一般科普作品那样枯燥无味,同时她的描述处处又有科学根据,也不同于一般描写大海的文学作品。)

a scientist with the magic touch of a poet: 具有诗人文采的科学

家。

magic touch: excellent style 绝妙的风采。

share sth. with sb.: tell sb. about sth. 把……告诉……, 与……分享……, 又如:

She wouldn't *share* her worries *with* anybody.

她不愿对任何人谈她的忧虑。

I would like to *share with* you my experiences in the Middle East.

我愿把我在中东的经历告诉大家。

22. **Her style was clear but lively, informative but not preachy, and for most readers truly exhilarating:** 她的文笔清晰、生动, 知识性强, 但又无说教, 读她的书大多数读者都会感到心旷神怡。

注意排比的运用: clear but lively, informative but not preachy.

23. **The Sea Around Us was a delightful antidote to our ignorance:** 《我们周围的海洋》对我们的无知是一剂令人愉悦的解药。(意思是她的这本书告诉我们许多有关海洋及海洋生物的知识, 填补了我们这方面知识的空白点。)

24. **Most of them dealt with the major love of her life — the sea:** 她的大部分著作都是有关她一生中主要的爱好——大海。

25. **However, because she was a true scientist and an aware human being, she knew that everything on this planet is connected to everything else:** 然而, 她是个真正的科学家, 她又是一个(对环境)警觉的人, 因此她明白地球上的万物都是相互关联的。

aware: 有……意识或觉悟的; 有……知识的; 懂得……的, 又如:

My sister is politically very *aware*.

我姐姐政治意识很强。

He is an artistically *aware* person.

他是个懂艺术的人。

Cf. be / become aware that: 意识到……, 如:

Then I looked up and *became aware that* everyone was staring at me silently.

然后我抬起头来,意识到大家都在静悄悄地盯着我。

26. **Thus, she became increasingly alarmed by the development and use of DDT and other pesticides of its type:** 因而,她对开发和
使用滴滴涕以及同类农药越来越感到担心。

thus: therefore(正式)因此。常用于句首,起连接上句的作用。

27. **Instead, they tend to be endlessly recycled in the food chains on which birds and animals and man himself are completely dependent:** (它们不能在土壤里分解)而往往在鸟类、动物以及人类
赖以生存的食物链里无限地循环。

tend to do / be: be likely to do / be 趋向……,往往……,又如:

Overindulged children *tend to be* less creative than other children.

受到过分娇宠的孩子比起别的孩子创造力往往要稍逊一筹。

In primary and secondary school, girls *tend to work* harder than boys.

小学和中学时,女孩往往比男孩要用功。

be recycled: 使再循环;回收利用;重新利用,又如:

They recycle cooling water in this factory.

这家工厂循环使用用来进行冷却的水。

It's more expensive to *recycle* used bottles than to make new ones. But it's worthwhile for the protection of the environment.

回收利用旧瓶子比生产新瓶子费用更高,但是为了环保,这样做是值得的。

Our textbooks are printed on *recycled* paper.

我们的课本是利用废纸生产出来的纸印的。

be dependent on: 依赖于。

28. **One might guess that at this time Carson the reader might have reminded Carson the scientist of some passages in Shakespeare's most famous play:** 人们可以设想,那时爱读书的卡森使科学家卡森想起莎士比亚最著名的悲剧。(这是本文作者的设想,他认为卡森肯定读过莎士比亚的《哈姆雷特》。哈姆雷特的这些话,肯定会使她想到化肥中的毒素被植物吸收,动物食用这些污染了的植物,人又食用这些动物或植物,然后这些毒素又随其排泄物回到大自然。如此循环往复,永无止境。)

29. **Prince Hamlet used revoltingly grisly images in vicious baiting of his hated uncle:** 哈姆雷特王子使用了令人作呕的形象比喻来设下狠毒的圈套,引他那人所不齿的叔父上钩。(哈姆雷特的父亲是丹麦国王,他的叔父毒死国王,登上了属于哈姆雷特的王位,并与王后结婚。老国王托梦给哈姆雷特,要他为父报仇。为了证明梦中父亲所述属实,也为了保护自己,哈姆雷特装疯卖傻,设下圈套以引诱他叔父暴露自己的罪行。)

30. **he told him that in nature's food chain, the worm is king:** 他对(即叔父)说,在大自然的食物链中,以蛆为王。以下几句可译为:我们喂肥了其他的牲畜给自己受用,再喂肥了自己去给蛆受用;国王和乞丐都一样,对于蛆来说,他们只不过是一餐饭中的两道不同的菜而已。一个人(可能是个乞丐)可以拿吃过国王的蛆作诱饵去钓鱼;他再去吃那条吃了蛆的鱼。于是一个国王就可能在乞丐的内脏里进行一番巡游。

这里 worm 和 maggot 的意思都是“蛆”。

莎士比亚借哈姆雷特装疯时的这番话,说明国王与乞丐毫无区别,但他的的话很生动地说明地球上的万物是如何紧密相联。

31. **Rachel Carson knew of this poisonous cycle:** 雷切尔·卡森知道有这种恶性循环。

know of: 知道……的存在,又如:

—Do you know of any medicine that can relieve headaches instantly?

你知道有能立即解除头疼的药吗?

—No, I don't.

不知道。

—Is there a medicine that relieves headaches immediately?

有没有能立即解除头疼的药?

—Not that I *know of*.

据我所知,没有。

32. **And she knew now, as her own observations were confirmed by fellow scientists all over the country, that this “worm” now carried a heavy concentration of poison:** 由于她的观察资料为世界各地的同行所证实,她现在知道这一“蠕虫”已经携带高浓度的毒素。

此处作者借用莎士比亚的 worm 一词代表人类和其他动物赖以生存的食物。多年使用农用杀虫剂使人类的许多食品受到污染,所含毒素之浓度越来越高。

that 从句是 knew 的宾语; as 引出的是原因状语从句,修饰 knew。

33. **It could be passed on to fish, to other animals, to their food supply, and to men and women and children throughout the earth:** 这种高浓度的毒素能够转移到鱼的体内、其他动物体内,转到他们的食品里,以及全世界的大人和孩子的体内。

pass on (from...) to: (及物)把……(从……)传给; (不及物) (从……)转移到……,又如:

These fairy tales have passed on from generation to generation.

这些童话从一代人到另一代人流传了下来。

注意在下列句子中用 pass:

Joe quickly *passed* the ball to Jim, who kicked it into the goal.

乔飞快地把球传给了吉姆,吉姆一脚射门成功。

34. In spite of fierce opposition from the chemical industry, from powerful government agencies, and from farmer organizations, she persisted in her research and writing: 她不顾化工界的反对、有权有势的政府机构的反对以及农场主组织的反对,一如既往地坚持她的研究和写作。

persist in doing sth. / in sth. : (不顾困难、他人的反对等) 坚持做……, 又如:

If you *persist in jogging*, you'll shed some weight.

你要是坚持慢跑, 你一定会减轻体重的。

Year after year, she *persisted in training*, and was at last admitted to the swimming team of the province.

她年复一年坚持训练, 终于进入省游泳队。

35. Then in 1962 she published *Silent Spring*: 然后在 1962 年她出版了《寂静的春天》一书。

这是一本具有划时代意义的环境科学普及读物。50 年代, 美国环境问题开始显露, 卡森花了 4 年时间大量阅读了美国官方和非官方关于杀虫剂造成危害情况的报告, 在此基础上写成此书。她在书中指出了杀虫剂所造成的严重污染, 阐明了人类同大气、海洋、河流、土壤、动物和植物之间的关系, 初步揭示了污染对生态系统的影响, 提出了现代生态学研究面临的生态破坏问题。《寂静的春天》的出版引起了人们对环保问题的关注, 对现代环境科学的发展起了积极的作用。此书的片段被不少英语和写作课本选用。《寂静的春天》的中文译本于 1979 年出版。

36. The book exploded into the public consciousness: 此书一夜之间提高了公众的(环保)意识。

explode into: develop 突然变成, 发展成, 演变成, 又如:

The border incident *exploded into* a war between the two countries.

那个边界事件突然演变成两国间的战争。

37. The little girl from the Pennsylvania woods, now approaching middle age, had fired a major salvo in the battle for the environment: 现在已近中年的那个来自宾夕法尼亚树林的小姑娘在环保战中打出了一排重炮。
《寂静的春天》出版时,卡森已是 55 岁,但按美国人的标准是已近中年。

Work on the Text

1. Answer these questions.

- 1) As a little girl, how did Rachel Carson feel about the wonders of Nature — the birds and plants and animals?
- 2) What did she believe man could do with Nature? What did she think was beyond man's reach?
- 3) As a scientist, what did she find out, with sadness, about man and nature?
- 4) What did she point out to mankind in her book *Silent Spring*? What does the title suggest? In what way is the book important?
- 5) Why had she never expected, when she was a little girl, that she would write a scientific book? What was her dream when she started college? How did she become interested in the study of animals?
- 6) What work was she engaged in after graduation from college? What particular type of animal did she get acquainted with? How did she carry out her research?
- 7) What book did her research lead to? What is this book about? Why was the book so popular?
- 8) What did she discover about the relationship of things on

earth? Why did she think pesticides such as DDT were dangerous to man and his environment?

- 9) Why does the writer think that a certain passage from Shakespeare's *Hamlet* might have caught Carson's attention?
- 10) What does Hamlet mean when he says those words to his much-hated uncle, now King of Denmark? What does the writer think the passage vividly describes?
- 11) Carson met fierce opposition in carrying out her research, didn't she? Where did the opposition come from?
- 12) What is Rachel Carson's contribution to the protection of the environment? What qualities in her combine to make her successful in arousing the environmental awareness of the general public?

2. Look up the following words in an English-English dictionary before looking at the Word List. (You have to decide their part of speech first.)

tramp (Para. 1) indiscriminate (Para. 3) controversy (Para. 4)
avid (Para. 4) layman (Para. 5) salvo (Para. 8)

3. Paraphrase the following.

- 1) ... much of Nature was forever beyond the tampering reach of man. (Para. 2)
- 2) ... the stream of life would flow on through time in whatever course God had given it... (Para. 2)
- 3) ... in a book that informed and thrilled laymen around the world. (Para. 5)
- 4) *The Sea Around Us* was a delightful antidote to our ignorance. (Para. 5)
- 5) ... they tend to be endlessly recycled in the food chains on

which birds and animals and man himself are completely dependent. (Para. 6)

4. Discuss or speak on the following topics.

- 1) What do you think is the major contribution Rachel Carson has made to the protection of our environment? What role does Carson's book *Silent Spring* play in the movement?
- 2) Do you think the environment is getting worse and worse for us and our fellow creatures on earth — the woods, the birds and plants and animals? What do you think we can do to make the earth a better place to live in?
- 3) What do you know about the organizations "Friends of Nature" and "Green Earth" in China?

5. Translate the following passage into English.

小时候雷切尔·卡森就喜爱小鸟、草木和其他动物。大学二年级时,她更加热爱大自然了。她所选的那门生物课打开了她的眼界,使她认识到对那些动物进行科学研究当中的奥妙和刺激。大学毕业以后,她从事科研工作,研究海洋动物,并就此发表文章。1951年,她出版了一本趣味横生的科普读物《我们周围的大海》,这本书连续80个星期在畅销书榜上有名。在另一本书即《寂静的春天》(1962)里,卡森发出了警告:人类如果继续滥用有毒的化学杀虫剂,将会消灭鸟类以及其他的动物和植物。那时一个没有鸟儿的、寂静的春天就会来临。该书使公众首次注意到环境保护这一重要问题,因而成为人类努力拯救地球——人类及其伙伴共有的家园——的一个里程碑(landmark)。

Vocabulary Exercises

1. Complete the following sentences with words formed in the same way as in the examples, making changes in the spelling and the verb form wherever necessary.

Examples:

imaginative 爱想像的 argumentative 爱争论的

causative 成为原因的 affirmative 肯定的

formative 有助于形成的

(动词 + -ative → 形容词)

compare imitate inform prevent talk

- 1) Unlike her quiet sister, she is very _____.
- 2) The scholar has spent two years on a(n) _____ study of the social systems of the two nations.
- 3) Jenny, a ten-month-old baby, is highly _____.
- 4) The professor gave a very _____ lecture on the market economy yesterday.
- 5) In the last two years, _____ measures have reduced the crime rate in this city.

2. Translate the following into English.

- 1) Use the verb + noun or adj. + noun collocation.

砍伐森林 筑坝拦河 发出警告 受到表扬 激起热情
激发想像 大学毕业 政府干预 人造卫星 学术报告
强烈反对 热心读者 严酷事实 上……课 连续 10 天
新华社 畅销书 环保

- 2) Use the "useful expressions".

(1) 尽管年纪小,没经验,这位小演员同一起工作的明星

们却能无拘无束地相处。

- (2) 没过一会儿,巴德先生就发现他的顾客是警察通缉的那个人。
- (3) 在完全了解自己严重病情的情况下,吉姆在生命最后几个月里作出了许多勇敢的选择。
- (4) 1998 年中国的水灾向中国人民发出了严重警告。
- (5) 怎样培养好独生子女在中国引发了许多辩论。
- (6) 詹姆斯是在牛津时接触到莎士比亚的著作的。
- (7) 当我发现那位著名画家竟与我家有亲戚关系时,感到十分惊讶。
- (8) 人在剧烈活动时,肌肉中的蛋白质(muscle protein)会分解得更快。
- (9) 那个少年使琼斯太太回想起她自己在过去的困难日子里的痛苦经历。
- (10) 这个村子一定是遭受了龙卷风(hurricane)的袭击,我们看到到处都是被破坏的房屋和被吹倒的树木。
- (11) 尽管有风险,他们还是坚持把实验做完。
- (12) 我知道有这么一位艺术家,但没有见过面。

3) Use break ,reach and start .

- (1) 不知道我们的请柬是否已经到达他那里。
- (2) 任何违反交通规则司机都将被罚款(fine)。
- (3) 他到的时候,我们正要出发。
- (4) 她把药放在了儿子够不着的最上面的架子上。
- (5) 在争吵的过程中她将一面镜子摔到地上,把它摔碎了。
- (6) 足球比赛刚刚进入高潮,突然下起雨来。
- (7) 我们谁也不敢把这坏消息告诉他。
- (8) 去查问一下庆祝活动几点钟开始。
- (9) 天气预报说今天的最高温度将预计达到摄氏 38 度。
- (10) 他没法开动割草机(lawn mower),跑去找他父亲帮

忙。

3. Complete the following sentences.

1) Put suitable prepositions or adverbs in the blanks.

- (1) His enthusiasm _____ the welfare of the blind won him great respect in the community.
- (2) She is very close _____ her two sisters.
- (3) I'm sure he'll make a good teacher because he feels _____ ease _____ children.
- (4) Unaware _____ the harm certain pesticides are bringing _____, quite a number of farmers still use DDT.
- (5) She learned _____ sadness that certain birds were _____ danger of dying out.
- (6) The incident stirred _____ great anger _____ ordinary people.
- (7) The book will acquaint you _____ the present and the past activities of the CIA (美国中央情报局).
- (8) Doctors believe that the disease passes from chickens _____ humans.
- (9) I long to run about and play with the rest of the children, but I was unable to break loose _____ my imprisonment.
- (10) Agent X broke _____ the lively music of "Turkey in the Straw".

2) Choose the correct word from the brackets.

- (1) Her husband was not convinced by her _____ that they needed a bigger house. (argument, controversy)
- (2) Home computers are increasingly _____ nowadays. (commonplace, usual)

- (3) I found it hard to follow what the teacher was saying, and eventually I lost _____. (focus, concentration)
- (4) I was _____ by her disappearance. (alarmed, warned)
- (5) I'd like to _____ when you will be arriving on Monday. (approve, confirm)

4. Choose the best word for each blank.

Just as people have different lifestyles at home, their ways of living "on the road" (1) _____ (change, develop, grow, vary), too. Some travelers prefer to stay in big hotels, eat at expensive restaurants, and concentrate on the most famous tourist (2) _____ (place, seeing, sights, vision) that each city has to offer. Others believe that sightseeing is just one reason to travel — not the (3) _____ (main, only, total, whole) reason. They want to be able to get to know a (4) _____ (group, kind, number, variety) of people and to understand different opinions, values, and problems; (5) _____ (being do, doing, having done, to do) so, they meet other travelers at inexpensive hotels, camping places, and (6) _____ (continue, go, so, that) on. Moreover, they try to learn about new places by paying attention to people in restaurants, public parks, shopping centers, entertainment areas, and the (7) _____ (kind, like, same, type).

(8) _____ (Still, Though, While, Yet) other travelers prefer to get to know the cultures of the places they are visiting by (9) _____ (killing, offering, spending, taking) time with natives of the areas. A few even stay in the (10) _____ (ownership, personal, private, secret) homes of families there. How is it possible to do this? Various international organizations

provide educational experiences for people who want to discover lifestyles different from their own: (11) _____ (by, in, over, through) programs such as the American Field Service, the experiment in international living, travel exchanges, and some language courses, visitors can learn about life in other places. Participants in such programs are usually students who (12) _____ (get, happen, try, want) to know the natives during home-stays of several weeks, months, or even a year.

Grammar & Usage

Both, Either, Neither

both, either, neither 都涉及两个人、事或物。

1. both

表示一个和另一个两者都……,用复数动词。

Both sides of the street are decorated with colourful lights.

She has two brothers. *Both* work in the city.

Tom and Mary *both* are music lovers.

Both of my parents speak standard English.

Parents who *both* hold down full-time jobs may feel guilty about their constantly being away from their children.

both...and 连接同类的语法结构(名词、动词、形容词、介词短语等),表示强调。

He has *both* the knowledge *and* capability to do this job.

Both she *and* her husband were very pleased with the girl.

Both my father *and* mother thought the decision was a great sacrifice for them.

Jane will *both* sing *and* dance at the party tonight.

I was *both* glad *and* surprised to see her.

He decided to work hard *both* for himself *and* for his boss.

2. *either*

- 1) 表示两者中的任何一个,用单数动词。

Either of the plans is okay with me.

—Who do you think can fix the washer, Xiao Wang or Lao Li?

—I think *either* can.

You may take *either* of the roads to get there.

I'm afraid I don't agree with *either* of you on many things.

He could write with *either* hand.

- 2) 表示两边。

The criminal sat in the court with a policeman on *either* side of him.

There is a waiter at *either* end of the long table.

You can see a lot of trees on *either* side of the street.

Many conversations are a kind of competition that rarely leads to discovery on *either* side.

- 3) 作副词,表示也,用于否定句。

A little bit of exercise won't do you any harm, *either*.

He didn't go to the meeting and she didn't turn up, *either*.

I won't be at home at that time and he won't, *either*.

- 4) 和 *or* 连用,连接相同的语法结构,表示或是……或是,不是……就是,既……又,既不……又不,它所带的动词在数上与 *or* 后面的名词或代词保持一致。

Either you *or* Dick is responsible for it.

Either he *or* his brothers have to clean the room.

You must get the job done *either* today *or* tomorrow.
Local hunters can *either* shoot *or* trap wild animals.
I don't like *either* tea *or* coffee. I just like water.
Either you change your dress *or* I go to the party by myself.

3. *neither*

- 1) 作代词,表示两者都不……,后面的动词多用单数形式。

Neither of them could help laughing.

Neither of the books is of any help to me.

If you run after two hares, you'll catch *neither*.

But *neither* response seems satisfactory to them.

- 2) 作副词,表示也不。用于句首,句子的主语与谓语必须倒装。

—I don't quite agree with what he said.

—*Neither* do I.

—I have never been here before.

—*Neither* have I.

He cannot speak English, and *neither* can he read it.

His first son was no good and *neither* was the second.

- 3) 与 *nor* 连用,连接相同的语法结构,表示既不……也不。它所带的动词在数上与 *nor* 后面的名词或代词保持一致。

Neither your mother *nor* I have any objections to your decision.

Neither his friends *nor* he knows anything about it.

I'm afraid I have *neither* the time *nor* the money to help you.

I *neither* know *nor* care what has happened.

You came just in time, *neither* too early *nor* too late.

Exercises

1. Put in the blanks *both*, *either* or *neither*.

- 1) If you go on like this, I won't give _____ of you any help.
- 2) He _____ drinks nor smokes.
- 3) I'm sorry I've given _____ you and your family a lot of trouble.
- 4) Those pictures really delight us _____.
- 5) — Which will you have?
— _____, but thanks all the same.
- 6) _____ book gives the answer to the question.
- 7) That is what is wrong with _____ Tom and Jerry.
- 8) You can _____ stay here for the night or find a hotel yourself.
- 9) There are two buses going in that direction. _____ bus will take you to your campus.
- 10) — I have no idea who has taken the typewriter away.
— _____ do I.

2. Translate the following sentences into English, using *both*, *either* or *neither*.

- 1) ——你能告诉我应该读哪本书吗?
——我认为你两本都该读。
- 2) 我的两个最要好的朋友都没来参加我的婚礼。
- 3) ——你想喝点什么?
——茶和咖啡都行。
- 4) 这两个国家都不支持这种做法。
- 5) 我当然祝愿你们两个都好。

- 6) 他们俩谁都不知道这个秘密。
- 7) 你要么给他打个电话,要么给他写封信。
- 8) 我既不认识他也不想认识他。

3. Detect errors in the following sentences and correct them accordingly.

- 1) The Congress refused to accept either of the four proposals made by the President.
- 2) My both sons are studying abroad.
- 3) He has tried two different restaurants but both of them he doesn't like.
- 4) People are standing on both side of the street to see him off.
- 5) They offered me two jobs but I didn't accept each of them.
- 6) I have lived in Guangzhou and Shanghai, but I cannot get used to the climate of two cities.
- 7) He does not want to talk to me and neither I want to talk to him.
- 8) You have two choices. You can stay either at home or go with me to work.
- 9) I used to enjoy neither bread nor butter, but now I love either.
- 10) Neither have I experienced this before nor want to experience it in the future.

4. Detect the errors in the following sentences and correct them. There is only one error in each (revision: participles).

- 1) Not too many years ago, it was an excited experience
A B
to watch TV at home.

C

- 2) Standing in front of the house , the stone lion seemed very
A B
small comparing with the big fountain.
C
- 3) A red-face boy rushed past me and took my new schoolbag
A B
away.
C
- 4) Visitors come to this city are greatly impressed by its garden-like
A B C
environment.
- 5) Established in 1994 and employed some 500 people, this
A B
company has gained worldwide fame as a very
competitive enterprise.
C
- 6) Though he was aware of their attitude , he was broad-minded
A B
enough to appoint these men to the important office because
he was convincing of their ability.
C
- 7) There is , it seems , no limit to the satisfaction to be finding
A B C
in the pursuit of knowledge.
- 8) Finishing his work , he made himself a cup of coffee and sat
A B
down to enjoy some music.
C
- 9) The boiled point of any liquid is determined by the pressure
A B

of the surrounding gases.

C

10) As far as education is concerned, money spent now will be

A

B

money save in the years to come.

C

Lesson Thirteen

Text

Who Shall Dwell?

H. C. Neal

这是一个虚构的故事,因为除了美国于1945年8月在日本广岛和长崎投下了两枚原子弹之外,还没有任何核大国使用过这种大规模的杀伤武器。

但是故事提出的问题却具有现实意义,尤其是在冷战时期,两个超级大国的核军备竞赛使西方不少作家、文人探索人类如何面对可能会发生的核攻击,使自己所创造的物质和精神财富得以继承。

故事也提出了一个与核战无关但更为现实的问题:在危难之际,生的机会应该给谁?故事中这对夫妇的最后决定,令人看到了普通劳动人民的美德和人类的希望。

- 1 It came on a Sunday afternoon. They had prayed that it would never come, ever, but suddenly here it was.
- 2 The father was resting on a couch and half-listening to some music on the radio. Mother was in the kitchen preparing dinner and the younger boy and girl were in the bedroom drawing pictures. The older boy was working in the shed out back.
- 3 Suddenly the music was cut off. Then, the announcer almost shouted:
- 4 "Bomb alert! Attention! A number of missiles have just been

launched across the sea, heading this way. They are expected to strike within the next sixteen minutes. This is a verified alert! Take cover! Keep your radios tuned for further instructions."

5 "My God!" the father gasped. His face was ashen, puzzled, as though he knew that this was real — but still could not quite believe it.

6 "Get the children," his wife blurted, then dashed to the door to call the older boy. He stared at her a brief moment, seeing the fear in her face, but also a loathing for all men involved in the making and dispatch of nuclear weapons.

7 The father jumped to his feet, and ran to the bedroom. "Let's go," he snapped, "shelter drill!" Although they had had many rehearsals, his voice and bearing sent the youngsters dashing for the door without a word.

8 He hustled them through the kitchen to the rear door and sent them to the shelter. As he returned to the bedroom, the older boy came running in.

9 "This is the hot one, son," said his father tersely, "the real one." He and the boy stared at each other a long moment, both knowing what must be done and each knowing the other would more than do his share, yet wondering still at the frightening fact that it must be done at all.

10 "How much time have we got, dad?"

11 "Not long," the father replied, glancing at his watch, "twelve, maybe fourteen minutes."

12 The boy left. The father stepped to the closet, slid the door open and picked up the metal box containing their important papers. He then picked up the big family Bible from the headboard on the bed. Everything else they would need had been stored in the shelter the past several months. He heard his wife approaching and turned as she

entered the room.

13 "Ready, dear?" she asked.

14 "Yes," he replied, "are the kids gone in?"

15 "They're all down," she answered, "I still can't believe it's real."

16 "We've got to believe it," he said, looking at her steadily in the eye, "we can't afford not to."

17 Outside, the day was crisp and clear, typical of early fall. He looked at his watch again. Four minutes had elapsed since the first alarm. Twelve minutes, more or less, remained.

18 Inside the shelter, he latched the door, and looked around to see that his family was squared away. Now it began. The waiting.

19 The man and his wife knew that others would come soon, begging and crying to be taken in now that the time was here.

20 They had argued about this when the shelter was being built. It was in her mind to share their refuge. "We can't call ourselves Christians and then deny safety to our friends when the showdown comes," she contended, "that isn't what God teaches."

21 "That's nothing but religious pap," he retorted with a degree of anger. "God created the family as the basic unit of society," he reasoned. "That should make it plain that a man's primary Christian duty is to protect his family."

22 "But don't you see?" she protested, "We must prepare to purify ourselves. . . to rise above this 'mine' thinking and be as God's own son, who said, 'love thy neighbor.'"

23 "No," he replied, "I can't buy that." Then, after a moment's thought, "It is my family I must save, no one more. You. These kids. Our friends are like the people of Noah's time: he warned them of the coming flood when he built the ark on God's command. He was ridiculed and scoffed at, just as we have been ridiculed. No,"

and here his voice took on a new sad sureness, "it is meant that if they don't prepare, they die. I see no need for further argument."

24 With seven minutes left, the first knock rang the shelter door. "Let us in! For God's sake."

25 He recognized the voice. It was his first neighbor toward town.

26 "No!" shouted the father, "There is only room for us. Go!"

27 Again came the pounding. Louder. More urgent.

28 "You let us in or we'll break down this door!" He wondered if they were actually getting a ram of some sort to batter at the door. He was reasonably certain it would hold.

29 The seconds ticked relentlessly away. Four minutes left.

30 His wife stared at the door and moaned slightly. "Steady, girl," he said, evenly. The children looked at him, frightened, puzzled. He glared at his watch, ran his hands through his hair, and said nothing.

31 Three minutes left.

32 At that moment, a woman cried from the outside, "If you won't let me in, please take my baby, my little girl."

33 He was stunned by her plea. What must I do? He asked himself in sheer agony. What man on earth could deny a child the chance to live?

34 At that point, his wife rose, and stepped to the door. Before he could move to stop her, she let down the latch and dashed outside. Instantly a three-year-old girl was thrust into the shelter. He hastily fought the door latch on again, then stared at the frightened little newcomer in anger, hating her for simply being there in his wife's place and knowing he could not turn her out.

35 He sat down heavily, trying desperately to think. The voices outside grew louder. He glanced at his watch, looked at the faces of his own children a long moment, then rose to his feet. There were two

minutes left, and he made his decision. He marveled now that he had even considered any other choice.

36 "Son," he said to the older boy, "you take care of them." It was as simple as that.

37 Unlatching the door, he thrust it open and stepped out. The crowd surged toward him. Blocking the door with his body, he snatched up the two children nearest him, and shoved them into the shelter. "Bar that door," he shouted to his son, "and don't open it for at least a week!"

38 Hearing the latch drop into place, he turned and glanced around at the faces in the crowd. Some of them were still babbling incoherently, utterly panic-stricken. Others were quiet now, no longer afraid.

39 Stepping to his wife's side, he took her hand and spoke in a warm, low tone. "They will be all right, the boy will lead them." He grinned reassuringly and added, "We should be together, you and I."

40 She smiled wordlessly through her tears and squeezed his hand, exchanging with him in the one brief gesture a lifetime and more of devotion.

41 Then struck the first bomb, blinding them, burning them, blasting them into eternity.

Word List

dwell /dwel/ *vi.*

居住;生存

half-listen /'hɑ:flɪsən/ *vi.*

似听非听

shed /ʃed/ *n.*

棚,小屋

abruptly /ə'brʌptli/ *adv.*

突然地

bomb /bɒm/ <i>n.</i>	炸弹
alert /ə'leɪt/ <i>n.</i>	警报
missile /'mɪsaɪl/ <i>n.</i>	导弹
launch /lɔːntʃ/ <i>v.</i>	发射
head /hed/ <i>vt.</i>	朝特定方向行进
verified /'verɪfaɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	经证实的
tune /tjuːn/ <i>vt.</i>	调整收音机至某一频率;收听
ashen /'æʃən/ <i>adj.</i>	灰色的,灰白色的
blurt /blɜːt/ <i>vi.</i>	脱口而出
loathing /'ləʊðɪŋ/ <i>n.</i>	厌恶,憎恶
dispatch /dɪ'spætʃ/ <i>vt.</i>	派遣;发送
nuclear /'njuːklɪə(r)/ <i>adj.</i>	原子核的,核的
weapon /'wepən/ <i>n.</i>	武器
shelter /'feltə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	避难所
drill /drɪl/ <i>n.</i>	军事训练;操练
rehearsal /rɪ'hɜːsl/ <i>n.</i>	演习,排练
bearing /'beərɪŋ/ <i>n.</i>	举止,态度
youngster /'jʌŋstə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	儿童,少年
hustle /'hʌsl/ <i>vt.</i>	催促;猛推
tersely /'tɜːslɪ/ <i>adv.</i>	简捷地;简要地
slide /'slaɪd/ <i>vt.</i>	使滑动
headboard /'hedbɔːd/ <i>n.</i>	床头板
crisp /krɪsp/ <i>adj.</i>	凉爽的
fall /fɔːl/ <i>n.</i>	(美)秋天
latch /lætʃ/ <i>vt.</i>	用门闩关上
refuge /'refjuːdʒ/ <i>n.</i>	避难所
Christian /'krɪstjən/ <i>n.</i>	基督徒
showdown /'ʃəʊdaʊn/ <i>n.</i>	摊牌
contend /kən'tend/ <i>vt.</i>	坚决主张;断言
religious /rɪ'lɪdʒəs/ <i>adj.</i>	宗教的

pap /pæp/ <i>n.</i>	无实质内容的东西
retort /rɪ'tɔ:t/ <i>vi.</i>	反驳, 驳斥
primary /'praɪməri, -məri/ <i>adj.</i>	主要的, 首要的
protest /'prəʊtest/ <i>vt.</i>	反驳; 申明; 抗议
purify /'pjʊərɪfaɪ/ <i>vt.</i>	净化, 使纯净
thy /ðai/ <i>adj.</i>	(古) 你的
ark /ɑ:k/ <i>n.</i>	方舟
scoff /skɒf/ <i>vi.</i>	嘲弄, 嘲笑
sureness /'ʃʊənɪs/ <i>n.</i>	千真万确, 确实
pounding /'paʊndɪŋ/ <i>n.</i>	重击声
urgent /'ɜ:dʒənt/ <i>adj.</i>	紧急的
ram /ræm/ <i>n.</i>	撞击工具, 撞夯
batter /'bætə(r)/ <i>vt.</i>	捶打, 击
reasonably /'ri:zənəbli/ <i>adv.</i>	合理地
relentlessly /rɪ'lentlɪslɪ/ <i>adv.</i>	持续地
evenly /'i:vnlɪ/ <i>adv.</i>	平静地, 冷静地
stun /stʌn/ <i>vt.</i>	使震惊
plea /pli:/ <i>n.</i>	恳求, 请求
thrust /θrʌst/ <i>vt.</i>	猛推, 挤
hastily /'heɪstɪli/ <i>adv.</i>	匆忙地, 急切地
newcomer /'nju:kʌmə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	新来者
marvel /'mɑ:vəl/ <i>vi.</i>	惊讶, 惊异
unlatch /,ʌn'lætʃ/ <i>vt.</i>	打开(门闩)
surge /sɜ:dʒ/ <i>vi.</i>	涌来
block /blɒk/ <i>n.</i>	阻塞, 阻碍
shove /ʃʌv/ <i>vt.</i>	推挤
bar /bɑ:(r)/ <i>vt.</i>	闩(门、窗等)
babble /'bæbl/ <i>vi.</i>	唠叨
incoherently /,ɪnkəʊ'hɪərəntli/ <i>adv.</i>	语无伦次地; 不连贯地

utterly /'ʌtəli/ <i>adv.</i>	完全地;彻底地
panic-stricken /'pænik'strɪkən/ <i>adj.</i>	极度受惊的
grin /grɪn/ <i>vi.</i>	露齿而笑
reassuringly /ri:ə'ʃʊərɪŋli/ <i>adv.</i>	安慰地
devotion /dɪ'vəʃən/ <i>n.</i>	热爱,挚爱
blast /blɑ:st/ <i>v.</i>	炸
eternity /ɪ'tɜ:nɪti/ <i>n.</i>	永恒;不朽

Proper Names

H. C. Neal /'etʃ 'si: 'ni:l/	H·C·尼尔
Bible /'baɪbl/	《圣经》
Noah /'nəʊə/	诺亚

Useful Expressions

keep (radio) tuned for	收听(广播)
look ... in the eye	直视,正视
be squared away	使……就绪
typical of	……是……的特征
make it plain	明确说明
warn sb. of	警告(某人)
see no need for	认为没有必要
can't call oneself...	不称职
turn...out	轰出;开除
break down	推倒;克服(障碍)

Word Study

leave *vt. & vi.*

1. 离开(某地);离开(某人)

V; V + N

It's getting late. I'm afraid I *must be leaving*.

Andersen *left his hometown* when he was a boy.

"Thank you, Miss Winthrop," he said as he *left the room*.

I *left my mum and dad* in the North and came to London.

2. 脱离(机构、工作单位、团体等)

He *left school* when he was only 14. (毕业或辍学)

She *left the university* to work for a women's organization.

(辞职)

The best goalkeeper (守门员) *has left the AC Milan*.

3. 留下,留给,遗留

V + N (+ N)

He *left half of the gold* on a rock and then walked on.

They *left me a note* before they went to work.

The man *left 10,000 yuan* for his family to use while he was away.

He didn't *leave his family anything valuable* when he died.

Henry Ground *left his money* to 12 of his friends.

His father, on his death, *had left him his sword and some history books*.

4. 留下某处;忘在某处

V + N

When you finish, *leave your answer sheets* on your desk.

Please *leave your wet umbrella* at the door.

Oh, dear, I've *left my mobile phone* in the taxi.

5. 使……处于某种状态;让……做……

V + N + adj. / doing / -ed

When I took notes, I *left every other line* on my notepaper *blank*.

Hughie walked home, *leaving Alan Trevor helpless with laughter*.

School science courses used to concentrate on the unimportant parts of science, *leaving the major insights* almost *untouched*.

We walked off, *leaving him sitting* by himself to calm down.

6. Phrases:

leave for (a place) 动身去某地

leave sth. out 删去;漏掉

leave sb. / sth. alone 不理睬;不干涉

leave sb. a message 留口讯

leave a(n) ... impression on sb. 给某人留下……印象

send vt.

1. 寄(信等),发(电报等);(派人)送(某物)

V (+ N) + N

A *request* for the boy to rush to Brooklyn *was sent* to the Red Cross director of the North Carolina Marine Corps camp.

Months after his operation, David and I *sent our unknown donor family letters* in care of the New England Organ Bank.

Whenever he visits a new place, he always *sends his parents a local postcard*.

I *sent a smart toy car* to my nephew for his birthday.

2. 使某人去(学校、医院等、监狱等);派某人去做……

V + N + to (+ a place); V + N + to do (目的状语)

Jonas Colin of the Royal Theater collected funds from friends
to *send Andersen to school*.

An old man collapsed in the street, and *he was sent to hospital*
immediately.

When Andersen's mother was a little girl, *she was sent* out on
the streets *to beg*.

Mr. Grayson recently *sent his salesmen to a new industrial*
area out West *to demonstrate* some new machines.

3. 使……进入(……状态),使……变得

V + N + adj. / doing / (in)to + N

The news almost *sent her mad*.

The man received a hard kick that *sent him flying*.

Colin went on reading out Henry's will in a flat tone, which,
if they weren't so interested, *would have sent everyone to*
sleep.

The announcement *sent the passengers* in the plane *into a*
panic.

4. Phrases:

send for sb. / sth. 派人去叫某人或去拿某物

send one's love, regards, best wishes, thanks, greetings, etc.

to sb. 代……向某人致意,表示感谢、祝贺等

turn vt. & vi.

1. 转动,转弯,转身

V; V + N; V + prep. phrase / adv.

With that, the Marine *turned* and left the hospital.

He heard his wife approaching and *turned* as she entered the
room.

Agent X *turned the violin* carefully and wiped off the bow.

He *turned his head* and looked about him to make absolutely

sure that he and the druggist were alone in the tiny drugstore.

2. 翻转;翻身;翻(书页等)

V; V + N; V + prep. phrase

All night she couldn't sleep, and tossed and *turned* in bed.

Henry managed to get into the exhibition the day before and *turned all the paintings upside down*.

My hands were shaking so much that I could hardly *turn the pages*.

Now, *turn to Page 3* and let's look at the text.

3. 变得;使变得,

V + adj. / N; V + N + adj.

When Sangstrom heard what the druggist said, he *turned pale*.

He *turned traitor*.

The October winds *turned the trees yellow, brown and red*.

5. 变成;使变成

V(+N) + into + N

In one of Andersen's fairy tales, the ugly duckling *turned into* a beautiful swan.

Overindulgence may *turn children into* selfish and self-centered adults.

The reproduction of photos in newspapers *turned famous people into* celebrities.

6. Phrases:

turn around 转身

turn away 把(脸)转过去

turn down (扭转开关等)调小(音量等);拒绝

turn off 关掉(电视机或电灯等))

turn on 打开(电视机或电灯等)

turn out 结果,原来是

turn sb. out 把某人撵出;解雇某人

turn to 转身面对……

turn up 出席,出现;(事情等)(突然)发生

turn sth. up (扭转开关等)调大(音量等)

Notes on the Text

1. **About the text:**《生的机会留给谁?》选自牛津大学出版社 1991 年出版、斯蒂夫·鲍厄兹选编的《煤油的臭味及其他微型小说》(*Stench of Kerosene and Other Short Short Stories*)。课文进行了删节。阅读这篇微型小说注意以下几个特点:

- 1) 本篇描绘的是未来的社会,但又不是想像未来社会人类新的创造和发明,而是描写了由于人类拥有了核武器,一旦使用了这种武器可能会发生的社会问题。这种体裁属科幻小说的一个新支——社会科幻小说。小说描述的事件虽属虚构,但有现实意义,因为人类仍然面临着核战争的威胁,人类时时都面临生与死的考验和选择。故事涉及的问题值得我们深思,如:在危难时,生的机会留给谁?人应该如何协调自己的家庭责任和社会责任?家庭的各个成员如何在危难中团结一致?
- 2) 课文仅用一千二百多词,生动而又深刻地向读者展现了主人公在短短的 16 分钟时间里的表现、思想斗争和转变以及最后达到的思想境界。写好微型小说实属不易。本篇的成功之处在于:
 - (1) 大量的对话充分表现了父亲和母亲的思想、观点;叙事部分烘托出人物活动紧张的背景,用细节表现出夫妻、父子之间的默契关系,以及母亲的行动、父亲的思想矛盾等。

(2) 对父亲的转变描写得令人信服:首先他是个尽职的父亲和一家之长,为了家人的安全,他对当前的危机做了充分的准备;同时,正是因为他爱自己的孩子,一位母亲的恳求才能震撼他;只有爱自己的妻子,才能受到她的感召,毅然把生的机会让给了与自己毫无关系的两个孩子。

(3) 语言简练,对话生动,长短句子结合,以短为主。有些短句非常有力,如:

It came on a Sunday afternoon.

Now it began. The waiting.

Three minutes left.

"We should be together, you and I."

(4) 大量使用单音节词及行为动词,很少使用形容词,使叙事干净利落,不拖泥带水,表现出紧张和紧迫的气氛。

3) 要理解故事里的主要人物父亲和母亲,需要对基督教的《圣经》有一定的了解。基督教是世界三大宗教之一,也是英语国家人民的主要的宗教信仰。《圣经》本身也是文学作品,其典故常被人们引用,因此学习英语的学生应有一定的《圣经》知识。从故事里的父亲和母亲的表现,我们也可以看到基督教的一些积极作用。

2. **It came on a Sunday afternoon. They had prayed that it would never come, ever, but suddenly here it was:** 事情在一个星期天的下午发生了,他们曾经祈祷但愿此事不要发生,永远不要发生,但是终于还是来临了。

故事开头的三句话每一句都用了 it,虽然没有指出具体发生了什么事,读者能从叙事者的口气里感觉到这是一件坏事,尤其是第二句话中的 never 和 ever 强调希望此事永远不(never)要发生,任何时候(ever)也不要发生。下文所叙述就是整个事情的过程。

3. **The father was resting on a couch and half-listening to some music on the radio:** 这家的父亲躺在沙发长椅上休息,有一搭无一搭地听着收音机播出的音乐。

4. **in the shed out back:** 在屋外后面的棚子里。(美国人的家里的后院往往有一间小屋,放一般家用工具、自行车等,也常在里面修理一些小件物品。)

第二段交代了背景:那件事发生时故事里的中心人物——一个五口之家各自都在做什么,描绘了一个传统美国家庭休息日的情况:父亲——家里挣钱养家的顶梁柱在休息,主内的母亲在厨房做饭,弟弟、妹妹在屋里画画,哥哥在房外面的工具棚干活。交代故事背景用进行式。

5. **Suddenly the music was cut off:** 突然音乐给打断了。

cut sth. / sb. off: 使停止,打断;切断……的供应,又如:

The chairman *cut* the speaker *off* when he exceeded the time limit.

那个演讲人超过时间规定,主持人就让他停止。

Our discussion *was cut off* by the bell.

铃声打断了我们的讨论。

After the earthquake, our water supply *was cut off*.

地震发生之后,我们停水了。

6. **Bomb alert! Attention! A number of missiles have just been launched across the sea, heading this way:** 注意!核弹警报!

大海的对岸刚才发射了若干枚导弹,正向此处飞来。

这里 Bomb alert 指的不是一般的空袭警报,而是核武器警报。50年代美国政府制订了一种警报体系:一旦发现“敌人”发射了导弹或是不明飞行物,即发出“核弹警报”,又称“黄色警报”(Yellow alert),核弹击中目标时发出“红色警报”(Red alert)。

heading this way: moving this way 向此方向前进。又如:

In the dark, he could see something *heading northward*.

在黑暗中,他看见有东西向北移动。

I saw Xiao Jiang a moment ago. He *was heading for the library*.

我刚才看见了小姜,他正去图书馆呢。

7. **They are expected to strike within the next sixteen minutes.**

This is a verified alert! Take cover! Keep your radios tuned for further instructions: 预计导弹 16 分钟之内击中目标。注意这是经(有关情报部门)核实后发布的警报! 注意隐蔽! 请不要关收音机,注意收听有关指示。

8. **"My God!" the father gasped. His face was ashen, puzzled, as though he knew that this was real — but still could not quite believe it:** “天哪!”父亲倒抽了一口气,他的脸煞白,感到茫然不知所措;他好像知道这是真的,但又不太相信似的。

My God 作感叹词,表示惊讶、恐惧或烦恼。

puzzled 实际上是说明 father 的状况,而不是说明 his face。as though... 是状语从句,修饰 puzzled。

9. **He stared at her a brief moment, seeing the fear in her face, but also a loathing for all men involved in the making and dispatch of nuclear weapons:** 他瞅了瞅她,从她的眼神里他既看到了恐惧,也看到了对那些参与制造和发射核武器的所有人的憎恨。

a brief moment: for a brief moment。现代英语,尤其是新闻报道,趋向于省略像 for, on 等表示时间的介词,而直接用名词短语作状语,又如:

We've planned to stay there (*for*) *a day or two*.

我们计划在那里停留一两天。

He arrived in Shanghai for the 1999 *Fortune* Forum (*on*) *Sunday*.

他于星期天抵达上海参加 1999 年“财富”论坛会。

10. **"Let's go," he snapped, "shelter drill!":** “快走,”他吆喝着说,“防空洞演习!”

11. **Although they had had many rehearsals, his voice and bearing sent the youngsters dashing for the door without a word:** 尽管他们进行过多次演习,他的声音和样子让孩子们问也没问就赶紧向门外跑去。

send sb. / sth. doing sth.: make sb. move sharply or quickly, often by force 使某人猛地……,又如:

The explosion *sent* people *running* in all directions.

一声爆炸使人们东跑西散。

The earth quaked and *sent* everything on the table *crashing* to the floor.

大地震动起来,把桌子上的所有东西都哗啦摔到地上。

The next instant he received a hard kick that *sent* him *flying*.

一眨眼的工夫,他被狠狠地踢了一脚,使他摔倒在地。

12. **He hustled them through the kitchen to the rear door and sent them to the shelter:** 穿过厨房他把孩子们推到后门,打发他们去防空洞。

send sb. to the shelter: 命……呆在防空洞,类似的短语有 send sb. to school / hospital / prison 等。

Cf. take sb. to a place: 带,送……去……(自己也去)。

They decided to *send* their little daughter *to school* next year. 他们决定明年送小女儿去上学。

He *was* found guilty of bribery and *sent to prison*.

他被判了行贿罪,进了监狱。

The old man *takes* his grandson *to school* in the morning and brings him back in the afternoon.

那位老人上午送孙子去学校上学,下午接他回家。

13. **"This is the hot one, son," said his father tersely, "the real one":** "儿子,这可是一次热战。"他父亲简短地说,“(核弹)是真的要来了。”

20 世纪五六十年代冷战时期美、苏两个超级大国进行核军备竞赛。古巴危机以后,美国政府的冷战宣传,使得整个西方的公众感到核攻击随时都会发生,当局也敦促人们修建防空洞。那些有防空洞的人家不时搞演习。hot one 是相对于当时的 cold war(指美苏之间采取敌对政策相互瓦解对方的一种状况)而言。the real 相对于演习而言。

14. He and the boy stared at each other a long moment, both knowing what must be done and each knowing the other would more than do his share, yet wondering still at the frightening fact that it must be done at all: 父子二人对望了一会儿,俩人都明白自己的职责是什么,都知道对方会竭尽全力;然而,现在对需要履行自己职责这一可怕的事实,俩人又都感到无法理解。

注意句子结构:He and the boy... a long moment 是句子的主体,后面有两个独立主格分词结构 1) both knowing... 与 2) each knowing... his share, 另外还有一分词短语 yet wondering..., 在这个分词短语中 that it must be done at all 是同位语从句,说明 frightening fact 的具体内容。

两个独立结构和一个分词短语都作状语,修饰 stared at each other (for) a long time. it 指 what must be done.

more than 作状语,修饰 would do his share.

wonder at sth.: be surprised and amazed about sth. (正式)对……感到惊讶,又如:

They all *wondered at* all that had happened when they were away.

对他们不在的时候发生的一切,他们都感到惊讶。

wonder 后面也可跟 that 从句,如:

We all *wonder that* our Chinese teacher at primary school is still teaching there.

我们小学的汉语老师仍在那所学校教学,我们都感到惊讶。

at all 用来强调 must be done.

at all 放在句尾,一般用来加强否定句、疑问句和条件从句的语气。如:

I don't want to see the man *at all*.

我根本就不想见那个人。

Are you sure you don't want anything *at all*?

你肯定不想来点什么吗?

If he has any sense of honour *at all*, he should have returned in time.

要是他真的还有点荣誉感的话,他就该及时赶回来。

这句话告诉我们:1)显然父亲早已向长子交代过,万一发生什么情况使他不能保护全家脱险,长子就要承担起父亲的这一职责。在对望之时,父子之间相互信任,心灵沟通,无需多言,达到默契;2)尽管这一家人对即将发生的核攻击既有物质准备(建好了地下防空洞,并备齐了所需物品)也有思想准备(多次的演习),还是希望此事永远不要发生,一旦核弹真的就要来临,还是感到惊讶。

15. "How much time have we got, dad?": "爸爸,我们有多少时间?"(即:离导弹击中目标,还有多少时间?)

16. He then picked up the big family Bible from the headboard on the bed: 他随即把放在床头板上的、家里保存的那部《圣经》拿了起来。

family Bible 在美国,尤其是过去,许多家庭有保存一本大开本的《圣经》,而在其空白页和空白处记事的习俗。家庭成员的出生年月日、有关的婚、丧、嫁、娶等重要事件的日子都记载在内。故事里的这个家庭的成员是基督教的忠实信徒,因此父亲把那部《圣经》也带到地下防空洞。

17. "We've got to believe it," he said, looking at her steadily in the eye, "we can't afford not to": "我们必须相信这是真的,"他盯着她的双眼说,"我们不敢不信呀!"(直译:我们可担当不起不信核导弹会袭击的后果。这与中国人对坏事"宁可信其有,不

可信其无”的态度相似。)

look sb. in the eye (s) / face: look at sb. 正面看着某人;毫无愧色地正视某人。这里表示父亲说话时严肃、认真的神色。

- 18. Outside, the day was crisp and clear, typical of early fall:** 窗外天空无云,空气干燥、凉爽,典型的初秋的气候。

typical of early fall 是形容词短语,作主语 the day 的补足语。

typical of: ……是……的特征,又如:

Reserve is *typical of* the English.

缄默是英格兰人的特征。

It is *typical of* Americans to hop from job to job.

跳槽是美国人的一个特征。

- 19. Inside the shelter, he latched the door, and looked around to see that his family was squared away. Now it began. The waiting:**

进入防空洞之后,他闩好门,环顾四周检查一下家里的人是否安顿好,于是等待就开始了。

it 指下面说的 waiting。

see that: check 检查;落实,又如:

Could you go and *see that* everyone arrives home safe and sound?

你能否落实一下让每个人都安全到家?

The guard went from office to office *to see that* all were locked.

警卫挨个检查以确保各办公室都锁好了门。

square away: get ready; put in order (美,口语)使……就绪;安排好,安顿好,又如:

He didn't leave until everything *was squared away*.

只有一切就绪他才离开。

When everybody *was squared away*, the teacher said, "let's start off!"

把大家都准备好之后老师就说:“出发!”

20. **It was in her mind to share their refuge:** 她愿与邻居们共用他们的避难所。

这里 it 代表 to share their refuge。

21. **"We can't call ourselves Christians and then deny safety to our friends when the showdown comes," she contended, "that isn't what God teaches":** “我们不能一方面称自己为基督信徒,而同时在最后的时刻拒绝救朋友一命,”她争辩说,“上帝可不是这样教导我们的。”

call oneself sth. : 自称为……而未见行其事,又如:

They call themselves servants of the people, but they are utterly indifferent to the people's suffering.

他们自称是人民的公仆,但对人民的疾苦却漠不关心。

They call themselves vegetarians, but we often see them eating in a seafood restaurant.

他们自称为食素者,可是我们常看到他们在一家海鲜餐馆用餐。

deny sth. to sb. / sb. sth. : 拒绝(要求等);使……得不到,又如:

Many parents never deny their children anything.

许多家长对孩子是有求必应。

The local authorities denied protection to the refugees.

地方当局拒不给难民提供保护。

Gender discrimination denies equal opportunities to women.

对性别的歧视使得妇女享受不到与男人同等的机会。

Children of poor families are often denied good education.

穷苦人家的子女常得不到良好的教育。

22. **"That's nothing but religious pap," he retorted with a degree of anger. "God created the family as the basic unit of society," he reasoned:** “那只不过是些老生常谈的说教,”他有些生气地反驳说。“上帝创造了家庭,让它成为社会的基础单位,”他讲述

着道理。

nothing but: only(正式)只不过。

a / some degree of: 一定程度;一定量。

as the basic unit of society 是宾语 the family 的补足语。

23. **"That should make it plain that a man's primary Christian duty is to protect his family":** “这很清楚地说明,作为基督信徒,一个男人的主要的责任是保护自己的家庭。”

make it plain (to sb.) that...: 使(……)很容易看清楚,明白(it 代表 that 从句),又如:

The interviewer *made it plain that* he was not interested in me.

给我面试的人很清楚地表示出他对我并不感兴趣。

He kept on looking at his watch. That *made it plain to us that* he had no intention to continue the negotiation.

他不断看表,这使我们明白了他无意继续会谈。

24. **"We must prepare to purify ourselves . . . to rise above this 'mine' thinking and be as God's own son, who said, 'love thy neighbor'":** “我们应该做好准备净化自己……要超越‘我’的境界,我们要像上帝的亲儿子那样行事,他教导我们‘爱汝邻居’。”

这里母亲说的“准备”指思想上要准备用行动净化自己。按《圣经》的说法,由于人类的最初的父母亚当和夏娃犯了天条,他们的子子孙孙都要为他们赎罪,因此每个人生来就有罪,称为“原罪”,人们通过行善等可以赎罪,净化自己。

God's own son: 指基督耶稣,又称“圣子”。根据《圣经》记载,上帝为了拯救人类派自己的儿子下凡为人类赎罪。耶稣脱胎人间,经受种种磨难和考验,最后牺牲自己的生命以挽救人类,因此耶稣就是基督徒的楷模。

25. **Our friends are like the people of Noah's time:** 我们的朋友和诺亚时代的人们一样。

Noah: 诺亚,《圣经》中的人物,是洪水毁灭世界之后人类的新始祖。上帝看到人类腐败严重,除了诺亚之外一概不可救药,决定毁灭旧世界,创建一个新世界。为了使他自己创造的生灵得以继续繁衍下去,上帝指令诺亚建造一方舟,将世上的每一种动物挑选一对(一公一母)带入方舟。洪水来临时,除了方舟里的动物和人之外,全部淹死。水退之后,诺亚重建家园。

26. **on God's command**: 遵照上帝的命令。

27. **and here his voice took on a new sad sureness, "it is meant that if they don't prepare, they die. I see no need for further argument"**: 他的声音里带有一种前所未有的悲哀与肯定。“这就是说,他们不做准备,就只好束手待毙了。没有必要继续争论下去了。”

take on: begin to have a particular quality or appearance 呈现,显出(性质、外观等),又如:

The home environment suddenly *takes on tremendous importance*.

自己国家各方面的情况忽然变得无比重要。(本册第6课课文)

that 从句是主语。it is meant that...: 就应该是……种情况。

28. **It was his first neighbor down the road toward town**: 来者是沿马路去城里的第一家邻居。

29. **"You let us in or we'll break down this door!"**: “你要是不让我们进来,我们就把这扇门砸开!”

break down sth.: 捣毁;冲破或克服(障碍),又如:

The Berlin Wall *was broken down* in 1989.

柏林墙是1989年砸毁的。

In a foreign country, if you want to make friends, you have to *break down* the language barrier first.

在外国,要想交朋友就要首先克服语言这个障碍。

30. **He wondered if they were actually getting a ram of some sort to**

batter at the door. He was reasonably certain it would hold: 他琢磨他们是否正在弄一根撞门用的大棒。他相当肯定门能经得住。

- 31. The seconds ticked relentlessly away:** 时间一秒钟一秒钟地毫不留情地流逝。

tick away / by: (时间)流逝, 用来描写人们紧张地等待某事的发生。此处指邻居们来砸门。

- 32. The children looked at him, frightened, puzzled:** 孩子们都看着他, 他们感到害怕, 感到困惑。

frightened, puzzled 是主语 the children 的补足语。

- 33. He was stunned by her plea:** 她的请求震撼了他。(他没有料到会有这样的请求。)

- 34. What must I do? He asked himself in sheer agony. What man on earth could deny a child the chance to live?:** 我该怎么办? 他万分痛苦地自问。世上有谁能不给孩子生的希望?

What man on earth could... to live? 这是个修辞性的疑问句, 意思是: 世上没有人能这样做。

- 35. He hastily fought the door latch on again, then stared at the frightened little newcomer in anger, hating her for simply being there in his wife's place and knowing he could not turn her out:** 他赶紧将门重新闩上, 然后愤怒地瞪着那个刚刚进来、惊恐万分的小家伙。他恨她, 因为她占了他妻子的位置, 而且他又明白不能将她轰出去。

两个分词短语 hating her for simply... his wife's place 和 knowing... turn her out 作状语, 修饰 stared, 说明父亲两眼瞪着小女孩时的复杂心情。

fought the door latch on again: 顶住外面人们的压力使劲把门闩上。

- 36. He marveled now that he had even considered any other choice:** 他觉得不可思议的是他原来居然还有别的考虑。(现在父亲已

经净化了自己,超越了“自我”的境界,回过头来看过去的自己,感到不能理解,怎么没有把现在的决定看成是惟一的选择。)

37. **“Son,” he said to the older boy, “you take care of them.” It was as simple as that:** “孩子,”他对大儿子说,“他们由你来照顾了。”事情竟是如此的简单。

从上一句话,我们还不清楚父亲的决定是什么,现在他把防空洞里的三个孩子全托付给了尚未成年的长子,他的决定已见端倪:他要离开防空洞。这里 it 代表父亲思想转变,超越了“我”的境界,作出了这一重大的决定。

38. **She smiled wordlessly through her tears and squeezed his hand, exchanging with him in the one brief gesture a lifetime and more of devotion:** 她什么也没有说,含着泪水对他笑了,她紧紧抓着他的手,用一个简短的动作,和他交换了一辈子,甚至不止一辈子的挚爱。

exchanging with him... of devotion 是分词短语,修饰并列的两个谓语动词中的 squeezed his hand, 说明通过这一动作,俩人在各自超越了“自我”之后,又走到了一起,最后一次心领神会地传达了彼此的挚爱。在这个分词短语中 a lifetime and more of devotion 是 exchanging 的宾语。将宾语置于两个作状语的介词短语之后,一方面是因为介词短语 with him 和 in the one brief gesture 都比宾语短,另一方面放在句尾使宾语的位置更突出。

39. **Then struck the first bomb, blinding them, burning them, blasting them into eternity:** 接着第一枚核弹爆炸,把他们烧成了灰,使他们永存于世。

此句的主语 the first bomb 与谓语 struck 倒装。两个分词短语是状语,修饰 struck,表示 struck 伴随的动作。

按照基督教的《圣经》的说法,人来自泥土(世上第一个人亚当是上帝由泥土造成),最终要回到泥土(人死之后葬在土地里)。故事的结局说明这对夫妇烧成了灰,回到土地。同时,

因为他们净化了自我,精神永存。

Work on the Text

1. Answer these questions.

- 1) What were the family doing one Sunday afternoon?
- 2) What announcement did the father hear over the radio?
- 3) How did the couple react to the news? What did the father do immediately?
- 4) Do you think the family was prepared for a nuclear attack? Give examples.
- 5) How much time did they have before the first bomb struck? How long did it take the family to get everything ready?
- 6) What problem did the couple know they would soon have to face? They were prepared for this, weren't they? What was the mother's opinion? What was her argument? The father didn't agree with the mother, did he? What was his argument? Who do you go along with?
- 7) When did the first neighbor come and ask to share the shelter? How did the father reply?
- 8) What did the neighbors threaten to do?
- 9) When a woman begged the father to let her little daughter in, how did the father feel? What did his wife do?
- 10) What decision did the father make when there were only two minutes left? What did he say to his elder son before he stepped out? What did he do outside of the shelter?
- 11) What effect did his act produce at the shelter door? How did his wife feel?
- 12) Do you think the father's change believable? Why/why

not?

2. Look up the following words in an English-English dictionary before looking at the Word List. (You have to decide their part of speech first.)

alert (Para. 4) launch (Para. 4) bearing (Para. 7) retort (Para. 21) scoff (Para. 23) batter (Para. 28)

3. Paraphrase the italicized parts.

- 1) Although they had had many rehearsals, *his voice and bearing sent the youngsters dashing for the door without a word.* (Para. 7)
- 2) He and the boy stared at each other a long moment, both knowing what must be done and each knowing the other would more than do his share, *yet wondering still at the frightening fact that it must be done at all.* (Para. 9)
- 3) "We've got to believe it," he said, looking at her steadily in the eye, "*we can't afford not to.*" (Para. 16)
- 4) "We must prepare *to purify ourselves . . . to rise above this 'mine' thinking* and be as God's own son, who said, 'love thy neighbor.'" (Para. 22)
- 5) *What man on earth could deny a child the chance to live?* (Para. 33)

4. Discuss or speak on the following topics.

- 1) Do you also agree that man should prepare to rise above the "mine" thinking? Do you think the two principles conflict with each other?
- 2) What would you do in similar circumstances?

5. Write a paragraph of about 200 words to compare and contrast the behaviour of the father and the mother during the crisis.

You can use this outline:

1) Stage One (the getting ready)

How did they respond to the bomb alert?

2) Stage Two (the waiting)

What problem did they face while in the shelter? Did they see eye to eye with each other on the problem? What did they argue about when the shelter was being built?

3) Stage Three (the last three minutes)

What did they do before the first bomb struck?

4) Conclusion

Do you think the husband and his wife had much or little in common?

Vocabulary Exercises

1. Complete the following sentences with words formed in the same way as in the examples.

Examples:

airtight 密封的

snow-white 雪白的

coal-black 像煤一样黑的

blood-red 血红色的

seasick 晕船的

war-weary 厌战的

(名词 + 形容词 → 复合形容词)

noun: colour ice home panic self

adj.: blind confident cold stricken sick

- 1) The girl looked energetic and _____, and impressed the interviewers greatly.

- 2) When I dipped my fingers into the water, I felt it was _____.
- 3) The streets were filled with _____ people running in every direction and trying to escape the bombs and bullets.
- 4) I'm getting on quite well with people here, but I am a bit _____.
- 5) She wants to become a doctor but can't because she is _____.

2. Translate the following into English.

1) Use the verb + noun or adj. + noun collocation.

准备晚餐 切断电源 切断供水 发射导弹 发动进攻
 交换意见 交流经验 面如死灰 首要问题 核武器
 核电站 核能 闭门

2) Use the "useful expressions".

- (1) 请今晚注意收听重要新闻。
- (2) 当琼斯太太抓住那个男孩时,他不敢正视她。
- (3) 科布教授讲课的特征是讲得飞快。
- (4) 你不能按审计的要求(the auditors' instructions)记账,就不能算是一个好会计。
- (5) 在边远地区(remote areas),还有大批学龄儿童不能上学。
- (6) 警察向司机明确指出,他必须确切地描述事故发生的过程。
- (7) 已经告诫本地农民,今年有可能发生水灾。
- (8) 法庭认为没有必要传讯更多的证人,打算在近期结案。
- (9) 她既耐心又坚定地作出努力,要拆除挡在她儿子和其他孩子们之间的那堵墙。
- (10) 怀特一家人担心要是他们不付房租,房东就会把他们轰出来。

3) Use *leave*, *send* and *turn*.

- (1) 当我给他打电话时,他已经离开办公室了。
- (2) 空袭警报使人们纷纷往自己的家跑去。
- (3) 为了帮父母养家,他 15 岁的时候就辍学了。
- (4) 现在许多人不再邮寄圣诞卡,而是通过电子邮件向朋友们表示问候。
- (5) 在我的挎包里找不到钥匙,一定是忘在办公室里了。
- (6) 她转过身来,看见儿子眼里充满了泪水。
- (7) 今年春节你打算给你的笔友寄点什么?
- (8) 你最好让窗户开一会儿,让新鲜空气进来。
- (9) 他们决定把防空洞改造成储藏室。
- (10) 奥赛罗的头发一夜之间全变白了。

3. Complete the following sentences.

1) Put suitable prepositions or adverbs in the blanks.

- (1) The country denied entry _____ this man _____ fear that he might stir up trouble.
- (2) There we had no telephone, no fax machine, no TV set, not even a radio. We were completely cut _____ from the outside world.
- (3) He seemed to be _____ great agony when he turned down the mother's request.
- (4) _____ further information, please reach us _____ the following number.
- (5) They felt greatly relieved when they found _____ that all the villagers were safe and sound.
- (6) He glanced around _____ everyone present in the room and then left _____ a word.
- (7) Hearing gunshots, the man jumped _____ his feet and ran off.

- (8) The boy has been warned many times _____ the danger of playing _____ a knife.
- (9) Though they were ridiculed and scoffed _____, they persisted _____ their experiment.
- (10) She smiled _____ us _____ tears and kissed us goodbye.
- (11) It turned _____ there had been two Marines with the same name and similar numbers in the camp.
- (12) When are you leaving _____ the *Fortune* Forum (“财富”论坛会)?
- (13) After he dried his face, he turned _____, wondering what to do next.
- (14) When I asked her what kind of dog it was, she seemed a little frightened before she turned coldly _____.
- (15) The detective turned suddenly _____ Mr. Grayson who had looked on with frank astonishment.

2) Choose the correct word from the brackets.

- (1) Sorry! I have a _____ memory and don't remember what you told me yesterday. (brief, short)
- (2) The police _____ that the man was found on the spot at the time of the robbery. (contended, insisted)
- (3) We need to establish the _____ cause of the problem. (chief, primary)
- (4) His wife insisted that they should live in London, despite his _____ that he could work better in the country. (plea, inquiry)
- (5) Seeing the man lying helplessly on the ground, the wolf _____ in an ugly way. (grinned, smiled)

4. Choose the best word for each blank.

Are some people born clever, and others born stupid? (1) _____ (And, But, Or, Yet) is intelligence developed by our environment and our experience? Strangely enough, the answer (2) _____ (about, to, of, on) both questions is yes. To some extent our intelligence is given us at birth, and no amount of special education can (3) _____ (bring, change, get, make) a genius out of a child born with low intelligence. On the other hand, a child who lives in a boring environment will develop his intelligence (4) _____ (fewer, less, smaller, worse) than one who lives in rich and varied surroundings. Thus the limits of a person's intelligence are fixed at birth, but whether or not he (5) _____ (achieves, fulfills, gets, reaches) those limits will depend on his environment. This view, now held by most researchers, can be supported in a number of ways.

It is easy to show that intelligence is to some extent something we are born (6) _____ (about, of, to, with). The closer the (7) _____ (blood, bone, flesh, tie) relationship between two people, the closer they are likely to be in intelligence. Thus if we take two (8) _____ (different, unknown, unmet, unrelated) people at (9) _____ (liking, freedom, random, will) from the population, it is likely that their degree of intelligence will be completely different. If on the other hand we take two (10) _____ (alike, identical, same, similar) twins, they will (11) _____ (even, so, too, very) likely be as intelligent as each other. Relations like brothers and sisters, parents and children usually have similar intelligence, and this clearly (12) _____ (argues, decides, says, suggests) that intelligence depends on birth.

Grammar & Usage

Negation

1. 否定词

英语中的否定结构多以否定词来表示,常用的否定词有: not, no, never, none, nothing, nobody, nowhere, neither, nor, 还有表示近似否定的 hardly, seldom, scarcely, barely, rarely, little, few 等。

No one has any doubt about his ability.

None of the candidates has arrived yet.

I shall *never* forget your kindness.

I *seldom* get any sleep after the baby wakes up.

He has *hardly* spoken to anyone who disagrees with him on this point.

Mr. Smith had *barely* started speaking when he was interrupted.

注意:否定词若放在句首时,句子的主谓要倒装。

Not for one moment did he stop working.

Little do I know about the city.

但否定的名词词组作主语并放在句首时,不能倒装。

Not all of the passengers escaped unhurt.

Not a single man was killed, and only three wounded.

2. 否定结构

否定结构在英语中是一个常用的结构,它有几种常用的形式。

1) 一般否定。在这种结构中, not 用以否定全句的意义。

This is *not* the right thing to do.

If you are *not* moving ahead, you are falling behind.

You will miss smiles, brief conversations with strangers.

But *don't* take it personally.

- 2) 部分否定。否定词 *not* 不否定全句, 仅否定句中的某一部分。

I'm *not complaining*, only making a point.

What he wants is *not sympathy* but trust.

Don't be afraid. I am your friend, *not your enemy*.

The most important aspect of a sentence is its meaning,
not its form.

- 3) 转移否定。believe, suppose, think 后面所带的 *that* 从句若是否定从句时, 其否定词移到主句动词前。

I *don't believe* (that) you two have met, have you?

I *don't suppose* (that) anyone will object to my absence.

I *don't think* (that) you need (to) worry.

- 4) 接续否定。这种结构指的是在同一句子中重复使用同一否定词, 以加强语气。

We are *not* going to Japan, at least *not* for the present.

Although autumn was well advanced, *not* a leaf had fallen
from the trees, *not* even one.

I *can't* go on moving, *not* even (for) one inch.

也可用不同的否定词。

No nation can afford to offend its allies, *not* even the U-
nited States.

- 5) 转换否定。英语中有不少形式上像肯定而实际上表示否定意义的句子。同样, 也有不少形式上像否定而实际表示肯定意义的句子。

Catch me doing that again! (我决不再犯了!)

He is the last person to tell a lie. (他不可能说谎。)

That's the last thing I should expect him to do. (他不可能做那样的事。)

Who likes to do that sort of thing? (没人愿意做那种

事。)

This is too much for me to bear. (我受不了。)

You can't be too careful when you cross the street. (过马路越小心越好。)

I couldn't agree with you more. (我完全赞成你的观点。)

Which family doesn't have problems? (家家有本难念的经。)

- 6) 省略否定。在上下文提供足够语境的情况下,否定结构可用省略的形式。

— Do you know the answer to this math problem?

— I'm afraid *not*.

They now spoke of putting me in a home for idiots.

"*Never!*" said my mother fiercely, when this was suggested to her.

— Do I need to have an operation?

— I hope *not*.

Some parents don't know whether they should satisfy all their children's needs or *not*.

3. 动词的非谓语形式的否定

在这种结构中,否定词要放在动词不定式、分词或动名词短语前。

We can't afford *not to believe* it's real.

He told me *not to be afraid* because I had done nothing wrong.

My father advised me *not to quit* my job at present.

The real purpose of the discussion is *not to tell* parents how much or how little to give to their children.

Not having read the book, I can't tell you whether it's worth

buying.

Not knowing a single word of that language, he found it impossible to communicate with the people there.

Exercises

1. Rewrite the following sentences with *hardly...when*, *barely...when*, *no sooner...than*, *scarcely...when*.

- 1) He entered the house and then his wife left quickly.
- 2) When the bell rang, we had just started our game in the playground.
- 3) The moment I opened my mouth, he cut me short.
- 4) As soon as I closed my eyes, I fell fast asleep.
- 5) The moment he said it he knew what a mistake he had made.
- 6) He was arrested by the police as soon as he stepped off the plane.
- 7) When I set my eyes on him, I knew immediately that there was no hope.
- 8) When the boys saw the owner of the orchard (果园), they ran off immediately.

2. Use affirmative form to translate the following sentences.

- 1) 我根本不想见他。
- 2) 那个地方太热了,我根本不想到那里去。
- 3) 我最不愿意做的事情就是让你不高兴。
- 4) 我才不放在心上呢。
- 5) 我决不再邀请这些人到我家来了。

3. Translate the following sentences, using negative structures or negative words.

- 1) 谁都知道他是大名鼎鼎的作家。
- 2) 他真是位善良的人。
- 3) 考试时越细心越好。
- 4) 真让人吃惊,他在这么短的时间里就学会了开车。
- 5) 对于他来说,吃完晚饭之后的最大享受就是抽一根雪茄。
(nothing better than)

4. Complete these sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the brackets (revision: nonfinite verbs).

- 1) At the moment the school will not consider _____ (raise) tuition fees.
- 2) I cannot risk _____ (leave) my daughter at home alone at any time of the day.
- 3) I hope you will remember _____ (record) the film for me this time.
- 4) Can you imagine an overweight lady _____ (wear) a red mini skirt?
- 5) This is a matter of life and death so it needs _____ (handle) with maximum care.
- 6) I don't feel like _____ (do) anything today.
- 7) He suggested that I _____ (cancel) the trip immediately.
- 8) They stopped _____ (search) for the missing passengers as the weather turned rough.
- 9) Never indulge in _____ (drink) as it's harmful to your health.
- 10) Let's ask the old man. He seems _____ (know) what's happening.

Lesson Fourteen

Text

Cipher in the Snow

Jean E. Mizer

一个母亲再嫁,与继父一起生活,没有家庭温暖的少年,在学校里成绩不好,沉默寡言,默默无闻,极少参加学校活动。在一个寒冷的早晨,上学的路上,他突然倒了下去,死于“心力衰竭”。一位老师进行了家访,阅读了他的全部档案之后,发出了愤怒的呼声:“是学校的‘教育’扼杀了他的信心,‘教育’对他的早逝有不可推卸的责任。这是为什么?”

1 It started on a biting cold February morning. I was driving behind the Milford Corners bus as I did most snowy mornings on my way to school. It stopped short at a hotel, and I was annoyed, as I had to come to an unexpected stop. A boy staggered out of the bus, stumbled, and collapsed on the snowbank at the curb. The bus driver and I reached him at the same moment. His thin, hollow face was white even against the snow.

2 “He’s dead,” the driver whispered.

3 I glanced quickly at the scared young faces staring down at us from the school bus. “A doctor! Quick!”

4 “No use. I tell you he’s dead.” The driver looked down at the boy’s still body. “He never even said he felt bad,” he muttered, “just tapped me on the shoulder and said, quietly, ‘I’m sorry. I have

to get off at the hotel.' That's all. Polite and apologizing."

5 At school, the giggling morning noise quieted as the news went down the halls. I passed a group of girls. "Who was it? Who dropped dead on the way to school?" I heard one of them half-whisper.

6 "Don't know his name; some kid from Milford Corners" was the reply.

7 It was like that in the faculty room and the principal's office. "I'd appreciate your going out to tell the parents," the principal told me. "They haven't a phone and, anyway, somebody from school should go there in person. I'll cover your classes."

8 "Why me?" I asked. "Wouldn't it be better if you did it?"

9 "I didn't know the boy," the principal admitted. "And in last year's sophomore personalities column I note that you were listed as his favorite teacher."

10 I drove through the snow and cold down the bad road to the Evans place and thought about the boy, Cliff Evans. His favorite teacher! I could see him in my mind's eye all right, sitting back there in the last seat in my afternoon literature class. He came in the room by himself and left by himself. "Cliff Evans," I muttered to myself, "a boy who never talked, a boy who never smiled."

11 The big ranch kitchen was clean and warm. I blurted out the news somehow. Mrs. Evans reached blindly toward a chair. "He never said anything about being ill."

12 His stepfather said impatiently, "He has said nothing about anything since I moved in here."

13 Mrs. Evans pushed a pan to the back of the stove and began to untie her apron. "Now hold on," her husband said angrily. "I've got to have breakfast before I go to town. Nothing we can do now anyway. If Cliff hadn't been so dumb, he'd have told us he didn't feel well."

14 After school I sat in the office and stared at the records spread out before me. I was to close the file and write the obituary for the school paper. The almost bare sheets in the file mocked the effort. Cliff Evans, white, never legally adopted by stepfather, five young half-brothers and sisters. These bits of information and the list of D grades were all the records had to offer.

15 Cliff Evans had silently come in the school door in the mornings and gone out the school door in the evenings, and that was all. He had never belonged to a club. He had never played on a team. He had never held an office. As far as I could tell, he had never done one happy, noisy kid thing. He had never been anybody at all.

16 How do you go about making a boy into a zero? The grade school records showed me. The first and second grade teachers' notes read "sweet, shy child"; "timid but eager." Then the third grade note had opened the attack. Some teacher had written in a good, firm hand, "Cliff won't talk. Uncooperative. Slow learner." The other academic sheep had followed with "dull"; "slow-witted"; "low I. Q." They became correct. The boy's I. Q. score in the ninth grade was listed at 83. But his I. Q. in the third grade had been 106. The score didn't go under 100 until the seventh grade. Even shy, timid, sweet children have resilience. It takes time to break them.

17 I went angrily to the typewriter and wrote a savage report pointing out what education had done to Cliff Evans. I slapped a copy on the principal's desk and another in the sad file. I banged the typewriter and slammed the file and crashed the door shut, but didn't feel much better. A little boy kept walking after me, a little boy with a thin, pale face; a skinny body in faded jeans; and big eyes that had looked and searched for a long time and then had become veiled.

18 I could guess how many times he'd been chosen last to play sides in a game, how many whispered child conversations had excluded

him, how many times he hadn't been asked. I could see and hear the faces and voices that said over and over, "You're dumb. You're nothing, Cliff Evans."

19 A child is a believing creature. Cliff undoubtedly believed them. Suddenly it seemed clear to me: When finally there was nothing left at all for Cliff Evans, he collapsed on a snowbank and went away. The doctor might list "heart failure" as the cause of death, but that wouldn't change my mind.

20 We couldn't find ten students in the school who had known Cliff well enough to attend the funeral as his friends. So the student-body officers and a committee from the junior class went as a group to the church, being politely sad. I attended the service with them and sat through it with a lump of cold lead in my chest and a big resolution growing through me.

21 I've never forgotten Cliff Evans nor that resolution.

22 He has been my challenge year after year, class after class. I look up and down the rows carefully each September at the new faces. I look for veiled eyes or bodies scrounged into a seat in an unfamiliar world. "Look, kids," I say silently, "I may not do anything else for you this year, but not one of you is going to come out of here a nobody. I'll work or fight to the bitter end doing battle with society and the school board, but I won't have one of you coming out of here thinking himself into a zero."

23 Most of the time — not always, but most of the time — I've succeeded.

Word List

cipher /'saɪfə(r)/ *n.*

零(即 0); 密码; 无足轻重的人

biting /'baitɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	刺骨的
snowy /'snəʊi/ <i>adj.</i>	下雪的
short /ʃɔ:t/ <i>adv.</i>	突然
stumble /'stʌmbl/ <i>vi.</i>	跌绊
snowbank /'snəʊbæŋk/ <i>n.</i>	雪堆, 雪堤
curb /kɜ:b/ <i>n.</i>	马路沿
hollow /'hɒləʊ/ <i>adj.</i>	凹陷的
scared /skeəd/ <i>adj.</i>	惊慌的, 恐慌的
quiet /'kwaɪət/ <i>vi.</i>	平静下来
half-whisper /'hʌf.wɪspə/ <i>vi.</i>	低语
principal /'prɪnsəpl/ <i>n.</i>	校长
favorite /'feɪvərɪt/ <i>adj.</i>	最喜爱的
mutter /'mʌtə(r)/ <i>vi.</i>	轻声低语, 喃喃而语
blindly /'blaɪndli/ <i>adv.</i>	盲目地, 无目的地
stepfather /'stepfɑ:ðə/ <i>n.</i>	继父
untie /ʌn'taɪ/ <i>vt.</i>	解开
apron /'eɪprən/ <i>n.</i>	围裙
dumb /dʌm/ <i>adj.</i>	哑的
obituary /ə'bitjʊəri/ <i>n.</i>	讣告
bare /beə(r)/ <i>adj.</i>	光的, 空白的
mock /mɒk/ <i>vt.</i>	使(努力、力量等)无效, 使挫折; 嘲笑, 愚弄
legally /'li:ɡəli/ <i>n.</i>	合法地, 在法律上
adopt /ə'dɒpt/ <i>vt.</i>	收养
half-brother /'hʌ:fbrʌðə/ <i>n.</i>	同母异父兄弟, 或同父异母兄弟
timid /'tɪmɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	胆小的
attack /ə'tæk/ <i>n.</i>	攻击; 抨击
uncooperative /ˌʌŋkəʊ'ɒpəreɪtɪv/ <i>adj.</i>	不合作的
learner /'lɜ:nə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	学习者

slow-witted /sləʊ'wɪtɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	笨的,反应慢的
resilience /rɪ'zɪliəns/ <i>n.</i>	恢复力,回弹
typewriter /'taɪpraɪtə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	打字机
slam /slæm/ <i>vt.</i>	使劲关,砰然关闭
skinny /'skɪni/ <i>adj.</i>	瘦削的,无肉的
faded /'feɪdɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	褪色的
veil /veɪl/ <i>v.</i>	以纱遮掩
exclude /ɪk'sklu:d/ <i>vt.</i>	排除,不包括
believing /bɪ'li:vɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	相信他人的;信以为实的
undoubtedly /ʌn'daʊtɪdli/ <i>adv.</i>	无疑
student-body /'stju:dənt,bɒdi/ <i>n.</i>	学生机构
committee /kə'mɪti/ <i>n.</i>	委员会
lead /led/ <i>n.</i>	铅
resolution /ˌrezə'l(j)u:ʃən/ <i>n.</i>	决心
scrounge /skraʊndʒ/ <i>vi.</i>	四处搜寻
unfamiliar /ˌʌnfə'mɪljə(r)/ <i>adj.</i>	陌生的,不熟悉的
nobody /'nəʊbədi/ <i>n.</i>	无足轻重的人

Proper Names

Jean E. Mizer /dʒi:n i: 'maɪzə/	简·E·迈泽
Milford Corners /'mɪlfɔ:d 'kɔ:nəz/	密尔福德街区
Cliff Evans /'klɪf 'evəns/	克里夫·埃文斯
I. Q. /'aɪ 'kju:/	智商

Useful Expressions

stop short	中途停下, 停止
come to a stop	停下; 刹车
in person	亲自
in ... mind's eye	有……印象; 想像
say nothing about	一字不提
move in	搬进
spread out	摊开
as far as ... know/can tell	就……所知
go about doing sth.	处理某事物
point out	指出

Word Study

drive *vt. & vi.*

1. 驾驶(汽车等); (车等)行驶; 开车(送某人至某地)

V; V + N

I *drove* through the snow and cold to the Evans place and thought about the boy.

I *was driving* behind the Milford Corners bus as I did most snowy mornings on my way to school.

He *drives* for a trash company.

He said it was more difficult to *drive a truck* than to *drive a car*.

She *drives her children* to school three days a week.

2. 迫使

V + N + to do sth.; V + N + adj./adv.

Poverty *drove him to rob* the store.

The crying of the children *is driving me crazy*.

It was the life in him, unwilling to die, that *drove him on*.

3. (电力或其他动力)驱动;推动,驱使

V + N

The machine is driven by electricity.

In the factory, I was set to fire the boiler in the cellar and run the small steam-engine which *drove the machinery*.

They've realized that certain public services cannot be entirely *market-driven*.

4. Phrases:

drive at sth. 意指;打算

drive sth. home (to sb.) 使明白,使领会

drive *n.* (开车)兜风;驾驶汽车旅行;(乘车去的)路程,车程

We often go for a *drive* in the country at weekends.

It's only a ten-minute's *drive* to the airport.

forget *vt. & vi.*

1. 忘记,遗忘;忘记带

1) V; V + N; V + doing sth.; V + to do sth.

— Did you remember to buy some milk?

— Sorry, I *forgot*.

I've met the man before, but I've *forgotten his name*.

I will never *forget seeing* the tall David bending over Cory, her arms stretched around his waist as a mother would hug a son.

She apologized for *forgetting to return* the book on time.

Don't forget your umbrella in case it rains.

2) V + that clause; V + wh- clause; V + wh- + to do (sth.)

He *forgot that* he had an appointment that afternoon.

He seems to *have clean forgotten what* he's promised to do for me.

She *forgot how to spell* the word "beautiful".

2. (有意)忘掉,不再把……放在心上

V + N; V + wh- clause; V + that clause

My sister-in-law advised me to *forget the whole incident*.

Let's *forget our quarrel* and be friends again.

The teacher *can't forget what* happened to Cliff Evans.

She tried hard to *forget that* she had been in jail.

3. Phrases:

forget oneself 忘我,忘乎所以

Forget it! 不必在意。没什么重要的。

drop *vt. & vi.*

1. 落下;(有意或无意)使落下

V; V + N; V + prep. / adv.

It was so quiet that you could have heard a pin *drop*.

When he moved the table, a glass fell off and *dropped off* it.

She felt hot tears *dropping onto* her hands.

She *dropped the dish* onto the floor, but fortunately it didn't break. (无意)

He *dropped all junk mail* into a garbage can. (有意)

2. (价格等)下降

V (+ prep. phrase)

Do you think housing prices *will drop* this year?

Night temperature *can drop to* 10 degrees Centigrade.

The unemployment rate *has dropped below* 6% in this country.

3. Phrases:

drop behind 落在后面

drop in / over / around / by 顺便看望,非正式探望

drop out (of a team, etc.) 掉队,退出,退学

drop *n.* (一)滴,水滴;降落,下跌,下降

Notes on the Text

1. **About the author:** 简·E·迈泽,当过老师,本文记叙了她教师生涯中的一次亲身经历。

2. **About the text:** 课文标题《雪地上的0》(“Cipher in the Snow”)含义深刻,cipher既是“零”(zero)的符号,与课文里重复出现的zero, nothing, nobody同义,表示倒在雪地里死去的孩子在学校里是个默默无闻、无足轻重的0;cipher又有“密码”的意思,作者请读者破译雪地里0这个密码,了解它所表示的含义。文章描写了作者破译这个密码的过程,她解读了这个0之后的满腔怒火以及她要竭尽全力使0的悲剧永远不在自己的教室里发生的决心。可以说这篇文章是一个有责任心的教师对于中、小学教育重大失误的反省与认识。这一失误究竟是什么?抓住这一环节就理解了课文的中心思想。除此,在学习的过程中我们还要注意作者是如何表达她的悲伤与愤怒的情绪。和上一课课文一样,除了有关老师对小男孩的评语之外,作者很少使用形容词,而是通过各种修辞手法表达她的思想。

1) 排比(parallelism),用同样或类似的结构,表达同等重要的内容,如:

Cliff Evans had silently *come in the school door in the mornings* and *gone out the school door in the evenings*...

I muttered to myself, “*a boy who never talked, a boy who never smiled.*”

2) 反复使用同一结构或短语(repetition),如:

He came in the room *by himself* and left *by himself*.

He *had never* belonged to a club. He *had never* played on a team. He *had never* held an office. As far as I could tell, he *had never* done one happy, noisy kid thing. He *had never* been anybody at all. (五次使用 *had never*)

A little boy kept walking after me, a little boy with a *thin, pale face; a skinny body in faded jeans; and big eyes that had looked and searched for a long time and then had become veiled*. (三个名词短语)

I could guess *how many* times he'd been chosen last to play sides in a game, *how many* whispered child conversations had excluded him, *how many* times he hadn't been asked. (三次使用 *how many*)

3) 委婉的讽刺(mild sarcasm):

How do you go about making a boy into a zero?

Some teacher had written in *a good, firm hand*, "Cliff won't talk. Uncooperative. Slow learner."

The other *academic sheep* had followed with "dull"; "slow-witted"; "low I. Q." They became *correct*. (前者为讽刺,后者为反语)

Even shy, timid, sweet children have resilience. It takes time to break them.

So the student-body officers and a committee from the junior class went as a group to the church, being *politely sad*.

4) 感情色彩强烈的动词(powerful verbs):

I *slapped* a copy on the principal's desk and another in the sad file. I *banged* the typewriter and *slammed* the file and *crashed* the door shut, but didn't feel much

better.

3. **It started on a biting cold February morning:** 事情发生在 2 月的一个寒冷刺骨的清晨。

描写事件、故事的开始特别是交代时间或地点时,往往用 it, 又如:

It came on a Sunday afternoon. (第 13 课)

有时也直接用 story, incident 等。如:

The story began on a downtown Brooklyn street corner.

故事发生在布鲁克林商业区一条街的拐角处。

4. **I was driving behind the Milford Corners bus as I did most snowy mornings on my way to school:** 那时我正驾车跟在校车后面, 下雪的时候多数情况早晨我都是这样去学校上班。

Milford Corners 可能是一个地区的名称。corner 本身的意思既可以是“拐角处周围的地区”也可以是“边缘处”。

the Milford Corners bus 指接送住在密尔福德街区以及沿路的学生上学的校车。

作者在下雪天跟在校车后面开车去学校, 可能是因为有校车在前面开道, 自己的轿车开起来更为容易和安全。

5. **It stopped short at a hotel, and I was annoyed, as I had to come to an unexpected stop:** 车在一家饭店突然停了下来, 我感到恼火, 因为我不得不急刹车。

stop (sb.) short: (使)突然停下、停止, 又如:

The marching soldiers *stopped short* at the general's command.

将军一声令下, 行军的战士猛然止步。

She *stopped* the boy *short* before he reached the pit.

男孩还没走到那个坑, 她就把他止住了。

come / bring sth. to a stop 停止, 停下; 使停止, 停下, 又如:

Passengers began to crowd at the door before the train *came to a stop*.

火车还没有停下,乘客就开始拥挤到门口了。

When the driver saw an old lady crossing the street, he brought the car to a sudden stop.

司机看到一位老太太在过马路,就赶紧急刹车。

6. **His thin, hollow face was white even against the snow:** 在白雪的衬托下,他那消瘦、凹陷的脸更是煞白。

against: 以……为背景,对照,衬托,又如:

The snow-capped mountain looks beautiful *against* the blue sky.

以蓝天为背景,顶部覆盖着皑皑白雪的那座山显得很美。

7. **No use. I tell you he's dead:** (请医生)没有用了,他已经死了。

No use 是省略句,完整的句子应为: It's no use sending for a doctor.

I (can / can't) tell you: (副词性的短语)真的,的确,用来强调前面或者马上要说的话,又如:

He's a cheat, *I tell you!*

他真的是个骗子。

I can't tell you how glad I was to be out of that place.

离开那个地方,我确实是太高兴了。

8. **just tapped me on the shoulder:** (他)只轻轻地拍了拍我的肩膀。

此句省略了主语 he。

tap sb. on the arm / shoulder: 轻轻拍某人的臂或肩。类似的搭配有: take sb. by the hand 拉着某人的手; seize sb. by the arm 抓住某人的胳膊; hit sb. over the head / in the stomach 击中了某人的头部或腹部等。

9. **At school, the giggling morning noise quieted as the news went down the halls:** 在校内,当这个消息传遍各个楼道时,早上叽叽喳喳的喧哗声顿时消失。

the halls: the corridors of the school 校内的楼道。

Hall:(美)楼道,走廊;(英)大会议厅;门厅。

10. **"Who was it? Who dropped dead on the way to school?"**: “是谁? 谁在上学的路上突然死了?”

drop dead: die suddenly and unexpectedly without having previously been ill 突然死亡。

11. **"Don't know his name; some kid from Milford Corners" was the reply**: “不知道他叫什么,是住在密尔福德街区的一个孩子”是对众人问题的回答。

Don't know his name 中省略了主语 I 或 We。后一句省略了 It's。

12. **It was like that in the staff room and the principal's office**: 在教师休息室和校长办公室情况也是如此。

it 表示 what happened。

like that 表示 like what had happened down the halls。

这句话的意思是:在楼道里人们纷纷打听是谁死在上学的路上,谁也说不清他的名字,只知道他大概住在哪个区。在教师休息室和校长办公室,人们问的是同样的问题,同样也没有人知道这个孩子到底是谁。这里作者想说明,刚刚死去的那个学生在学校里是个默默无闻的孩子。

13. **"I'd appreciate your going out to tell the parents."** The principal told me: 校长对我说:“希望你跑一趟,去通知一下家长。”

I'd appreciate your doing sth. / it if... 是客气地请人做事的套语,直译为“如您能……我将不胜感谢”,又如:

I'd appreciate your understanding my absence from the party.

我不能出席聚会,万望理解。

We'd appreciate it if you wouldn't mention our identity.

望您勿提我们的真实身份。

your going out 中的 out 作副词,表示远的地方,这里表示 Milford Corners 是比较偏僻或比较远的地方。又如:

Mr. Budd's brother went *out* to Australia when he came out of prison.

巴德先生的弟弟出狱之后就远赴澳大利亚。

Recently I sent my salesmen to a new industrial area *out* West to demonstrate some new machines.

最近我派推销员远赴西部的一个新工业区去演示新机器。

14. **"They haven't a phone and, anyway, somebody from school should go there in person. I'll cover your classes":** "他们家没有电话,此外学校反正要有人亲自去一趟,你的课我替你去上。"
in person: (不请别人代替)亲自,直接地,又如:

I must see the chairman *in person*, not his secretary.

我必须见系主任本人,而不是他的秘书。

As he was ill, he could not go and get the award *in person*.

由于他生病,他不能亲自去领奖。

The kids are looking forward to hearing their favourite pop star sing *in person*.

孩子们都盼着听他们喜爱的那位流行歌星现场演唱。

15. **"Why me?" I asked. "Wouldn't it be better if you did it?":** "为什么我去?"我问道。"您去不是更合适吗?"

Why me?: Why do you want me to go?

Would it be better if sb. did sth.? 是客气地提建议的套语, if you did it 是虚拟条件句。

16. **"And in last year's sophomore personalities column I note that you were listed as his favorite teacher":** "去年校刊高二学生栏目里我注意到他把你列为他喜爱的老师。"

as his favorite teacher 这里是主语 you 的补语。

Sophomore personalities column 是每年出一次的校刊里的一个栏目刊登所有学生的情况。

17. **His favorite teacher!** : 我是他所喜欢的老师!

在开车前往克里夫家的路上,作者浮想联翩,对于把自己列为

他喜欢的老师,她感到意外,因为克里夫生前对此从未有过一丝的表露。

18. **I could see him in my mind's eye all right, sitting back there in the last seat in my afternoon literature class:** 这倒不假,我还记得他的样子,他总是在我下午的文学课上坐在后面最后一个座位上。(相对于多数其他老师连这个孩子的姓名都已忘却,只记得他住在一个偏远的地方。此处 all right 的意思是“不错”。)

see sth. / sb. in one's mind's eye: imagine and have a clear picture of it/him/her in one's mind 想像,又如:

She can see in her mind's eye the white building where she had classes twenty years ago.

她现在脑子里还记得 20 年前她上课的那栋白楼的样子。

sitting back... literature class 是分词短语作宾语 him 的补语。

19. **"Cliff Evans," I muttered to myself, "a boy who never talked, a boy who never smiled":** “克里夫·埃文斯,”我喃喃地自言自语说,“一个从不开口的孩子,一个从来不笑的孩子。”(这是老师记忆中对克里夫·埃文斯的基本印象。)
20. **The big ranch kitchen was clean and warm:** 那宽敞的牧场厨房干净、暖和。
厨房尤其是农场或牧场的厨房是美国人家庭活动的重要地方,他们也常常在厨房接待客人。
21. **I blurted out the news somehow. Mrs. Evans reached blindly toward a chair:** 我没有转弯抹角而是直截了当把事情说了出来。埃文斯太太不知该做什么,伸手去拿一把椅子。(这句话说明母亲对儿子的死讯的反应虽不是立即痛哭流涕,还是受到相当地震动,与继父冷漠的态度形成对照。)
22. **"Now hold on," her husband said angrily:** “喂,忍着点,”她丈夫生气地说。(继父的态度使读者可以想像克里夫在家里得不

到父爱。)

23. **Nothing we can do now anyway:** 反正我们现在是无能为力了。
这是个省略句,前面省去了 *There's*。

anyway: whatever the situation is 无论是什么情况。

24. **I was to close the file and write the obituary for the school paper:** 我的任务是最后完成他的档案,给校刊写个讣告。
(即:我在他的档案里加上他的死亡情况,他的全部材料就齐了。)

close: bring sth. to an end / come to an end 使结束;结束,又如:

The chairman *closed* the meeting with a short speech.

主席以简短的发言宣布会议结束。

The forum *closed* on Wednesday.

论坛会于星期三闭幕。

25. **The almost bare sheets mocked the effort:** 那几张纸几乎没有提供什么情况,叫我怎么写讣告?(克里夫的档案里除了最基本的材料,如姓名、出生年月日,成绩、老师的评语之外,没有别的东西,而讣告一般要提及死者的成就。)

mock: (正式)使……落空;使失望。

26. **These bits of information and the list of D grades were all the records had to offer:** 他的档案所提供的除了这点情况之外就是一系列的D分。

these bits of information 指上句提到的克里夫的家庭简况。

D grades 美国学校的分数等级为 A, B, C, D, E 五个等级, E 是不及格, D 表示差, C 表示一般, B 是良, A 是优。

27. **He had never held an office. As far as I could tell, he had never done one happy, noisy kid thing. He had never been anybody at all:** 他从来没有(在学生组织里或是班上)担任过什么职位。据我所知,他从来没有干过一件令他高兴并使他有机会像孩子那样大喊大叫的事情。他从来也没有引起人们的注目。

as far as I know / can tell: 据我所知,在句中作状语。

anybody: a person of significance/to be noticed 引起人们注意的人物。

28. **How do you go about making a boy into a zero?**: 怎么能把一个孩子弄成这样一事无成?

go about sth. / doing sth.: 着手干;做,又如:

They want to raise money for helpless old people, but they don't know how to *go about* it.

他们想为孤寡老人集资,但不知如何着手。

Graduating students are busy *going about* looking for jobs.

毕业班的学生在忙着找工作。

make sb. / sth. into sth.: cause to become 使成为,又如:

He used to be an innocent lad. His bitter experience *has made* him *into* a man.

他以前是个幼稚的少年,苦难的经历把他磨练成了个男子汉。

Part of the theatre *has been made into* a disco.

那个剧院的一部分改建成了迪斯科舞厅。

zero: 无足轻重的人。

这里 you 是不定代词,泛指“人们”。

29. **The grade school records showed me:** (他)小学的成绩给了我答案。

showed me: showed me how he had been made into a zero 给我指明了怎么把他弄成这样。

grade school: primary or elementary school 小学,在美国小学也称为 grammar school。

30. **The first and second grade teachers' notes read "sweet, shy child"; "timid but eager":** 一年级与二年级老师的记录写的分别是:“是个可爱、害羞的孩子”;“羞怯但热切”。

31. **Then the third grade note had opened the attack. Some teacher**

had written in a good, firm hand, “Cliff won’t talk. Uncooperative. Slow learner”: 三年级的记录开始了对他的攻击。某位老师,字写得很好,很有力,写道:“克里夫不愿开口,不合作,脑子慢。”

hand: 字体;手迹,笔迹,又如:

The professor writes / has a very good *hand*.

教授的字写得非常好。

The suicide note was written in his own *hand*.

遗书是他的笔迹。

作者这里用 *firm* 一词来描写那位老师的字迹,暗示他对克里夫的看法是坚定的,因此使劲地写下了这个结论,从此类似的评语接踵而来,逐渐夺去了克里夫的自信心。

32. **The other academic sheep had followed with “dull”; “slow-witted”; “low I.Q.” They became correct:** 其他那些学术绵羊的评语接踵而来,“笨”,“头脑迟钝”,“智商低下”。这些结论最后被人们接受了。

academic sheep 指的是后来教克里夫的那些老师。作者用绵羊来比喻这些老师,因为绵羊只会跟随带头羊,同样这些老师亦步亦趋,跟着前面提到的那个老师唱一个调子。

33. **The boy’s I.Q. score in the ninth grade was listed at 83. But his I.Q. in the third grade had been 106. The score didn’t go under 100 until the seventh grade:** 这孩子在九年级的智商指数是 83,但三年级时是 106,直到七年级才降至 100 以下。

智商指数 100 为中等,低于 100 就是低智商。

34. **Even shy, timid, sweet children have resilience. It takes time to break them:** 即使是胆小、害羞、温顺的孩子也是有韧性的,他们不是一天就能够击垮的。(也就是说从三年级到七年级用了 4 年的时间,他的智商才降至 100 以下。注意作者的讽刺、愤怒的口气:那些老师也是下了不少的工夫,花了不少时间才把一个智商本来不低的孩子弄成这个样子。)

- 35. I went angrily to the typewriter and wrote a savage report pointing out what education had done to Cliff Evans:** 我怀着愤怒的心情走到打字机旁,写了一份措辞严厉、毫不留情的报告,指出教育究竟把克里夫·埃文斯搞成什么样子。

pointing out... to Cliff Evans: 分词短语作定语,修饰 report。

what... has done to sb. / sth. 指所做的不好的事,或是起了负面作用的事,注意 what... do 与不同的介词搭配所表示的不同意思。

What did you do *to* the child while I was away? Look, he's got a black eye.

我不在的时间你对这孩子都干了些什么? 瞧,他的眼圈都青了。

We'll never forget what you did *for* us during the crisis.

我们永远不会忘记在整个危机期间你们为我们所做的一切。

What are you going to do *with* rice straw?

稻草你们用来做什么?

- 36. I slapped a copy on the principal's desk and another in the sad file. I banged the typewriter and slammed the file and crashed the door shut, but didn't feel much better:** 我把一份报告使劲甩到校长的办公桌上,另一份放进那令人悲伤的档案。我把打字机砰然推到一边,哗地一下合上了档案,啪地一声把门撞上,但心情却没有好转多少。(作者写了那份报告之后,心情不好,要发泄她的愤怒,所以动作很重, bang, slam 和 crash 有力地表现了她愤怒的心情。但她还是觉得不够,因此心情没有根本改变。)

crashed the door shut 是 动词 + 宾语 + 宾补(过去分词)结构。

- 37. A little boy kept walking after me, a little boy with a thin, pale face; a skinny body in faded jeans; and big eyes that had looked and searched for a long time and then had become veiled:** 我感

到有个小男孩一直跟着我,一个面庞消瘦、面色苍白的小男孩,他骨瘦如柴的身躯穿着褪了色的牛仔褲,他那双大眼睛在寻找着什么,寻求了很长很长时间,最后变得呆滞无神。

a little boy with... 是主语的同位语,with 后面的三个名词短语都是 with 的宾语,为了突出并强调每个短语所表达的内容,它们之间用分号隔开,使其各自独立。

(小男孩寻求而始终没有得到的是什么? 作者认识到了这点,她决心给予其他孩子克里夫苦苦寻求的东西。)

38. **I could guess how many times he'd been chosen last to play sides in a game, how many whispered child conversations had excluded him, how many times he hadn't been asked:** 我能想像有多少次他都是选拔参加比赛的最后人选,有多少孩子间的悄悄话都把他排除在外,又有多少活动甚至连问都没有问他(是否参加)。

注意此句排比的使用:guess 后面所跟的三个宾语从句都是由 how many 引出。

39. **I could see and hear the faces and voices that said over and over, "You're dumb. You're nothing, Cliff Evans":** 那些人不断说着“克里夫·埃文斯,你真笨,你一事无成。”我似乎能听到他们的声音,看到他们的表情。

40. **A child is a believing creature. Cliff undoubtedly believed them:** 孩子是相信别人的。毫无疑问,克里夫信了他们的话(真的觉得自己笨)。

41. **We couldn't find ten students in the school who had known Cliff well enough to attend the funeral as his friends. So the student-body officers and a committee from the junior class went as a group to the church, being politely sad:** 在学校里我们找不出 10 个学生与克里夫还有一定的交情,能以朋友身份去出席他的葬礼。因此学生团体的干部和低年级的一个学生组织以集体的身份参加了葬礼,他们出于礼貌才表现出一定的悲伤。

who had known Cliff well enough to attend the funeral as his friends: 与克里夫的关系好到能以朋友身份出席葬礼的。

body: 机构; 团体, 社团, 又如:

law-making bodies 立法机构

a governing / policy-making body 一个决策机构

professional bodies 专业团体

a commercial body 一个商业团体

- 42. I attended the service with them and sat through it with a lump of cold lead in my chest and a big resolution growing through me:** 我和这些学生一起出席了葬礼, 我自始至终坐在那里, 胸中好像压着一块又冷又沉的东西, 同时脑子里酝酿着一个重大的决定。

through it: from the beginning to the end of the service 从葬礼的开始到结束。

with 后面有两个短语作其宾语: 1) a lump... in my chest 与 2) a big resolution... through me (直译: 一个重大的决定在我脑子里酝酿着)。

与 with a lump in one's chest 类似的习语还有:

have a lump in one's / the throat: feel pressure in the throat as a result of strong emotion (因激动、悲伤等强烈感情而引起的) 喉咙哽住, 哽咽

- 43. He has been my challenge year after year, class after class:** 年复一年, 教了一个班又教一个班, 他一直激励着我尽心负责。

a challenge: 需尽心竭力去做的工作, 艰巨的任务。

- 44. I look up and down the rows carefully each September at the new faces. I look for veiled eyes or bodies scrounged into a seat in an unfamiliar world:** 每年的9月我来回一排一排地查看那些新面孔, 看是否有呆滞的目光, 是否有人在陌生的环境里使劲缩进自己的座位里。

- 45. "Look, kids," I say silently, "I may not do anything else for**

you this year, but not one of you is going to come out of here a nobody. I'll work or fight to the bitter end doing battle with society and the school board, but I won't have one of you coming out of here thinking himself into a zero": "孩子们,"我暗暗地说,“今年,除了一件事,也许我为你们别的什么也不做。但是,你们当中的任何人绝不会一事无成地走出这个教室。我要竭尽全力地干,也许要斗争到底,和社会斗,和学校领导斗,但我决不让你们中间的任何人认为自己一无所长地走出这个教室。”

(fight / struggle) to the bitter end: until all that is possible has been done 拼到最后。

have sb. doing sth.: 使……做……。

not have sb. doing sth.: 不允许某人做……;不能容忍某人做……,又如:

He *won't have* anyone *smoking* in his office.

他不许任何人在他的办公室里吸烟。

They *won't have* their children *speaking* rudely to anybody.

他们不让自己的孩子对任何人说话粗鲁。

think oneself into: 把自己看成是……。这里 into 表示行为的结果,又如:

He *talked* his father *into* buying a new car.

他说服他父亲买了辆新卧车。

Don't try *to frighten* us *into* submission.

别指望吓唬能使我们屈服。

46. Most of the time — not always, but most of the time — I've succeeded: 大多数时候,但不是所有时候,我获得了成功。

Work on the Text

1. Answer these questions.

- 1) Who was Cliff Evans? What happened to him on his way to school one cold morning?
- 2) How was the news of his death received at the school (down the halls, in the faculty room and the principal's office)? What does that show?
- 3) Why did the principal send the author to Cliff's home to tell his parents the news?
- 4) How did the boy impress the author, his favorite teacher?
- 5) What do you learn about Cliff's home, his parents and their reaction to the news in the author's brief account of her visit there?
- 6) Why did the author read Cliff's records after school? What was her task? Why did she find the job difficult? What information did his records offer?
- 7) What sort of boy did the author realize Cliff was after reading his records?
- 8) What or who made Cliff what he was, according to the author? How did she find that out?
- 9) How did the author feel when she came to see what had turned Cliff into a zero? How did she express her anger?
- 10) What effect did Cliff's funeral service have on the author? What resolution did she make?
- 11) What did the author do to live up to her resolution? How successful was she?
- 12) How effective is the title? Could you write a better one?

2. Look up the following words in an English-English dictionary before looking at the Word List. (You have to decide their part of speech first.)

biting (Para. 1) resilience (Para. 16) exclude (Para. 18) veiled (Para. 17) student-body (Para. 20) nobody (Para. 22)

3. Paraphrase the following.

- 1) The almost bare sheets mocked the effort. (Para. 14)
- 2) These bits of information and the list of D grades were all the records had to offer. (Para. 14)
- 3) How do you go about making a boy into a zero? (Para. 16)
- 4) Even shy, timid, sweet children have resilience. (Para. 16)
- 5) I look for veiled eyes or bodies scrounged into a seat in an unfamiliar world. (Para. 22)

4. Discuss or speak on the following topics.

- 1) Whom does the author blame for what had happened to Cliff Evans? What, according to the author, caused his death?
- 2) What lesson do you think you can learn, as a student, from Cliff's death?
- 3) From your experience, in what way what teachers do and say might have negative effects on children?

5. Write a detailed outline of the text.

You are expected to follow the same steps as you did in writing an outline of the text in Lesson 2.

Vocabulary Exercises

1. Complete the following sentences with words formed in the same way as in the examples.

Examples:

impossible 不可能

incurable 不能治愈的

imperfect 不完美的

incapable 无能力的

injustice 不公正

immoral 不道德的

(in- / im- + 名词/形容词/副词 → 名词/形容词/副词)

noun: equality competence

adj.: correct formal polite proper

- 1) They're determined to fight racial _____.
- 2) I'm afraid that's a(n) _____ conclusion. I don't go along with it.
- 3) In the West, it is considered _____ to ask a stranger personal questions.
- 4) It's only a(n) _____ meeting, and you don't have to be in full dress.
- 5) It is thought _____ for a senior professor to come to the lecture room in tennis shorts (运动短裤).
- 6) The manager was dismissed for his _____ in handling customer complaints.

2. Translate the following into English.

- 1) Use the verb + noun/adj. or adj. + noun collocation.

改变主意	参加葬礼	喃喃自语	自言自语
认养孩子	发起进攻	刺骨寒风	倒毙在地
砰然关门	干瘦的身躯	褪色的仔裤	智商与情商

2) Use the "useful expressions".

- (1) 音乐突然停止,播音员几乎是叫了起来:“警报!注意隐蔽!”
- (2) 火车突然刹车,杯子和盘子都滚落到地上。
- (3) 身为主任,他的任务是组织实验室的工作,他很少亲自做实验。
- (4) 许多年以后,他仍能回想起飞机失事时的惨景。
- (5) 我当小学徒时,压力大,工作很辛苦,但我从来不把这些告诉父母。
- (6) 搬进新办公楼那天,我们搞了一次庆祝活动。
- (7) 晚饭后克里夫把书本摊在面前开始复习功课。
- (8) 就我所知,彼得的父亲在遗嘱中给彼得留下了至少25万英镑。
- (9) 鲍勃发现几则广告很怪,他就在报纸档案堆(newspaper files)进行调查。
- (10) 医生指出,此种药物对婴儿有害。

3) Use *drive*, *forget* and *drop*.

- (1) 我忘了带我的字典了。我能用一下你的吗?
- (2) 电话突然响了,他吓了一跳,书也掉到地上。
- (3) 不要老是想你和班上其他同学的肤色不一样,就记住你和他们一样的聪明。
- (4) 对金钱和权力的欲望使相当一些人走上犯罪的道路。
- (5) 一再的失败使他几乎丧失了理智(out of one's mind)。
- (6) 我永远不会忘记我们在大学度过的那些愉快的日子。
- (7) 这个国家的人口出生率(birthrate)已经降至0.3%。
- (8) 如果他不开车送我去车站的话,我昨晚就赶不上火车了。

- (9) 很抱歉,我忘了这些学生是穆斯林。
 (10) 他们听到有人走过来,就压低了嗓子。

3. Complete the following sentences.

1) Put suitable prepositions or adverbs in the blanks.

- (1) The old couple are preparing to get _____ the next station.
 (2) Everyone is busy preparing _____ the exams.
 (3) If you don't believe me, you can go and ask him _____ person.
 (4) The title rightfully belongs _____ the winner of the game.
 (5) In the book, I found a note written _____ a very neat schoolgirl hand.
 (6) As far _____ I know, the famous goalkeeper will play _____ neither of the teams.
 (7) _____ a strict and responsible teacher, he pointed _____ all the mistakes I'd made.
 (8) They are determined to fight corruption _____ the bitter end.
 (9) It all happened _____ a cold winter morning.
 (10) _____ that point, a man came in, _____ a gun in his hand.
 (11) One morning, on his way to Holland Park, where Laura lived, he dropped _____ to see a great friend of his.
 (12) Most of the pupils have to drop _____ because their families cannot afford the tuition.
 (13) I didn't know what they were driving _____.

2) Choose the correct word from the brackets.

- (1) They had stopped short of fighting, and stood there _____ at one another. (staring, glaring)
- (2) She seems to have no _____ at all when it is a question of making money. (principals, principles)
- (3) "What's your _____ to John?" "He's my brother-in-law." (relation, relationship)
- (4) You'd better hurry and get a ticket or there won't be any _____ left. (places, seats)
- (5) We passed through four _____ on our tour to Greece. (countries, states)

4. Choose the best word for each blank.

I'm sure almost everyone of you looked at your watch or at a clock before you came to class today. Watches and clocks seem (1) _____ (as, like, same, so) much part of our life as breathing or eating. And yet did you know that watches and clocks were (2) _____ (few, insufficient, little, scarce) in the United States until the 1850s? In the late 1700s, people didn't know the exact time (3) _____ (if, unless, until, whether) they were near a clock. Those (4) _____ (delightful, glad, happy, merry) clocks in the squares of European towns were built for the public. After all, most citizens (5) _____ (almost, hardly, only, simply) couldn't afford a (6) _____ (own, personal, private, secret) timepiece. Well into the 1800s in Europe and the United States, the main purpose of a watch, which by the way was worn on a gold chain, was to (7) _____ (give, say, show, speak) others how wealthy you were. The word "wristwatch" didn't enter the English language until nearly 1900. By then the rapid pace of

industrialization in the United States meant that (8) _____ (checking, counting, measuring, telling) time had become essential. How could the factory worker get to work on time unless he or she knew (9) _____ (actually, certainly, exactly, surely) what time it was? Since efficiency was now measured by how (10) _____ (fast, long, quick, quickly) the job was done, everyone was interested in time. And since industrialization made (11) _____ (likely, perhaps, possible, possibly) the manufacture of large quantities of goods, watches became fairly inexpensive. Furthermore, electric light kept factories going (12) _____ (along, around, by, with) the clock. Being "on time" had entered the language and life of every citizen.

Grammar & Usage

Other Ways of Comparing Things

英语中表示比较的方法很多,除以前介绍过的形容词和副词的比较级外,还有许多习惯的比较方法,以下是几种常用的方法。

1. 用 **such ... as** (像……那样的) 表示比较

as 后面既可接名词也可接句子。

Such things as national pride are very important to us.

Musical instruments include *such things as* English horns, pianos and violins.

I've never heard *such* stories *as* he tells.

He never remembered having known *such* happiness *as* he felt then.

We've got *such* fruits *as* you've never heard of.

2. 用 *the same as* (和……一样的) 表示比较

He was about *the same* height *as* George.

This city is not *the same as* it was ten years ago.

I feel exactly *the same as* you do now.

We are in *the same* position *as* we were last semester.

You haven't changed a bit. You look just *the same as* before.

3. 用 *like* (像) 或 *alike* (一样) 表示比较

Our friends are *like* the people of Noah's time who were warned of the coming flood.

Our high school classmates are *like* brothers and sisters.

They talked freely, and it was *like* old times.

Mrs. Jackson is on a diet and she eats *like* a bird.

The little girl, *like* many people, feels that these wonders of Nature are precious and permanent.

The two office buildings are *alike* in both size and shape.

4. 用 “a + 名词 1 + of a + 名词 2” 表示比较 (将名词 2 表示的内容比成名词 1 表示的内容)

That's *a hell of a thing* to do. (干那种事太糟糕了! 直译为: 那简直是件地狱般的事!)

What *a devil of a name* that is! (那是个魔鬼般的名字啊!)

A giant of a man rushed into the room. (一个巨人般的男人冲进房间。)

We are all afraid of him. He is *a tyrant of a father*. (他是个暴君般的父亲。)

5. 用 *as if* / *though* 引导一个从句表示比较

The milk smells *as if* it is sour.

We felt *as though* the cat was a member of the family.

He glanced about *as if* he was searching for something.

I remember what happened as vividly *as if* it were only yesterday.

I've always loved you *as if* you were my own daughter.

Exercises

1. Complete these sentences with proper word(s).

- 1) It looks _____ they are all in a great hurry.
- 2) The farmers worked late into the evening, and then came home and ate _____ a horse.
- 3) He is now living in a palace _____ a house on the outskirts of the city.
- 4) That will be _____ looking for a needle in a haystack.
- 5) She looked a bit strange, _____ she knew some secret.
- 6) He is not _____ a fool as he looks.
- 7) The twins are so _____ that I can't tell which is which.
- 8) And fancy, he just sat there _____ nothing had happened.
- 9) I don't believe she did that. She is such a slip _____ a girl.
- 10) Meet me at the _____ place as you did yesterday.

2. Rewrite the italicized parts of each sentence using the words in brackets.

- 1) After ten years of study abroad, *he has changed a lot*. (the same as)
- 2) She looked at me angrily *and it seemed that she wanted to tear me to pieces*. (as if)
- 3) He really enjoys himself because he is living *a king's life* in

the countryside. (like a king)

- 4) We have *a lot of machines on the farm, tractors, planters, combine harvesters and so on.* (such...as)
- 5) His paintings are kept *in art galleries or museums or places like that.* (such...as)
- 6) I'm now feeling *a kind of weariness that I have never felt before.* (such...as)
- 7) I've collected *some rare stamps that you have never seen before.* (such...as)
- 8) When she had finished she waited *and she gave us the impression that she was expecting an answer.* (as if, as though)
- 9) I never again want to hear *those things that you told me yesterday.* (such...as)
- 10) My brother and I *have the same kind of temperament.* (alike)

3. Translate the following sentences into English using words in brackets.

- 1) 你跟我想像的完全一样。(like)
- 2) 这个地区的建筑都一个样,没有什么特色。(alike)
- 3) 我昨天过得糟糕透了,把什么事都搞得乱糟糟的。(a hell of a time)
- 4) 这块肉放了好长时间了,好像坏了。(as if)
- 5) 出什么事了? 你今天对项目的态度跟昨天完全不一样。(the same as)
- 6) 出门旅行不要带太多东西,带上那些你必须带的东西就行了。(such...as)
- 7) 他那种人是很危险的。(such...as)
- 8) 跟他说话就像是对牛弹琴(play the lute to a cow)。(like)

4. Put in the blanks the correct form of the verbs in brackets (revision: tenses and voices).

Some of the earliest diamonds (1) _____ (know) (2) _____ (come) from India. In the eighteenth century more (3) _____ (find) in Brazil, and in 1866, huge deposits (4) _____ (find) near Kimberley in South Africa. Though evidence of extensive diamond deposits recently (5) _____ (find) in Siberia, the continent of Africa still (6) _____ (produce) nearly all the world's supply of these stones.

Diamond itself is the only material hard enough (7) _____ (cut) and polish diamonds. Though recently, high-intensity light beams (8) _____ (call) lasers (9) _____ (develop) which can bore (打孔) holes in them. It may be necessary to split the large stones before they (10) _____ (cut) and polished.

A fully cut "brilliant" diamond has 58 facets, or faces, regularly (11) _____ (arrange). For cutting or faceting, the stones (12) _____ (fix) into copper holders and held against a wheel, (13) _____ (edge) with a mixture of oil and fine diamond dust, which (14) _____ (revolve) (旋转) at about 2,500 revolutions a minute. Holland and Belgium (15) _____ (be) the centre of the diamond cutting and polishing industry for over seven centuries.

Lesson Fifteen

Text

Bribery — An Inevitable Evil?

David Cotton

随着各国经济的全球化,随着跨国性投资的迅速增加以及经济的自由化,世界性的贪污受贿现象也更加普遍和严重,经济犯罪成了世界瘟疫。世界各国都在打击贪污和受贿,但似乎是“道高一尺,魔高一丈”,“上有政策,下有对策”。本文作者列举了许多事例说明行贿和索贿以各种各样的手段和形式腐蚀着上上下下的政府机关;虽然各国人民和政府都严厉谴责,但行贿和受贿大有势不可挡、有增无减之势。对于如何铲除这个毒瘤,作者认为目前尚无行之有效的办法。

1 Students taking business courses are sometimes a little surprised to find that lectures on business ethics have been included in their syllabuses of study. They often do not realize that, later in their careers, they may be tempted to bend their principles to get what they want; perhaps also they are not fully aware that bribery in various forms is on the increase in many countries and, in some, this type of corruption has been a way of life for centuries.

2 In dealing with the topic of business ethics, some lecturers ask students how they would act in the following situation: suppose you were head of a major soft-drinks company and you want to break into

a certain overseas market where the growth potential for your company is likely to be very great indeed. During negotiations with government officials of this country, the Minister of Trade makes it clear to you that if you offer him a substantial bribe, you will find it much easier to get an import licence for your goods, and you are also likely to avoid "bureaucratic delays", as he puts it. Now, the question is: do you pay up or stand by your principles?

3 It is easy to talk about having high moral standards but, in practice, what would one really do in such a situation? Some time ago the British car manufacturer, British Leyland, was accused of operating a "slush fund", and of other questionable practices such as paying agents and purchasers with padded commission, offering additional discounts and making payments to numbered bank accounts in Switzerland. The company rejected these allegations and they were later withdrawn. Nevertheless, at this time, there were people in the motor industry in Britain who were prepared to say in private: "Look, we're in a wheeling-dealing business. Every year we're selling more than a £1,000 million worth of cars abroad. If we spend a few million greasing the palms of some of the buyers, who's hurt? If we didn't do it, someone else would."

4 It is difficult to resist the impression that bribery and other questionable payments are on the increase. Indeed, they seem to have become a fact of commercial life. To take just one example, the Chrysler Corporation, third largest of the U. S. motor manufacturers, disclosed that it made questionable payments of more than \$2.5 million between 1971 and 1976. By making this revelation, it joined more than 300 U. S. companies that had admitted to the U. S. Securities and Exchange Commission that they had made dubious payments of one kind or another — bribes, facilitating payments, extra discounts, etc. — in recent years. For discussion,

purposes, we can divide these payments into three broad categories.

5 The first category consists of substantial payments made for political purposes or to secure major contracts. For example, the U. S. conglomerate ITT (International Telephone and Telegraph Corporation) offered a large sum of money in support of a U. S. presidential candidate at a time when it was under investigation for possible violations of the U. S. anti-trust law. This same company, it was revealed, was ready to finance efforts to overthrow the Marxist government of Chile whose President was Salvadore Allende.

6 In this category, we may also include large payments made to ruling families or their close advisers in order to secure arms sales or major petrochemical and construction contracts. In a court case involving an arms deal with Iran, a witness claimed that £ 1 million had been paid by a British company to a "go-between" who helped clinch a deal for supply of tanks to that country. Other countries have also been known to put pressure on foreign companies to make donations to party funds.

7 The second category covers payments made to obtain quicker official approval of some project, to speed up the wheels of bureaucracy. An interesting example of this kind of payment is provided by the story of a sales manager who had been trying for some months to sell road machinery to the Minister of Works of a Caribbean country. Finally, he hit upon the answer. Discovering that the minister was a bibliophile, he bought a rare edition of a book, slipped \$ 20,000 within its pages, then presented it to the minister. This man examined its contents, then said: "I understand there is a two-volume edition of this work." The sales manager, who was quick-witted, replied: "My company cannot afford a two-volume edition, sir, but we could offer you a copy with an appendix!" A short time later, the deal was approved.

8 The third category involves payments made in countries where it is traditional to pay people to facilitate the passage of a business deal. Some Middle East countries would be included on this list, as well as certain Far Eastern countries.

9 The payment may be made by a foreign company to ensure that a tender is put on a selective contract list or the company may pay so that an import licence for essential equipment is approved. Sometimes an expensive gift may be necessary to soften up a government official.

10 A common type in this category is the "facilitating payment" — usually a smaller sum of money — made to certain customs officials to clear cargoes. One businessman has told the story of a delivery of 10,000 bottles of sterile penicillin at the airport of a Far Eastern country. It was apparently customary to pay customs officials about \$ 250 upon arrival of each shipment to "get them out of the sun". In this case, the company was not prepared to make such a payment, so no money changed hands. The Minister of Health of that nation then ordered that each phial be opened for inspection, thereby destroying the whole shipment.

11 Is it possible to formulate a code of rules for companies which would outlaw bribery in all its forms? The International Chambers of Commerce (ICC) favours a code of conduct which would ban the giving and seeking of bribes. This code would try to distinguish between commissions paid for real services and padded fees. A council has been proposed to administer the code.

12 Unfortunately, opinions differ among members of the ICC concerning how to enforce the code. The British members, led by Lord Shawcross, would like the system to have enough legal teeth to make companies behave themselves. "It's no use having a dog without teeth," they argue. However, the French delegates think it is the,

business of governments to make and impose law; the job of a business community like the ICC is to say what is right and wrong, but not to impose anything.

13 In a well-known British newspaper, a writer argued recently that “industry is caught in a web of bribery” and that everyone is “on the take”. This is probably an exaggeration. However, today’s businessman, selling in overseas markets, will frequently meet situations where it is difficult to square his business interests with his moral conscience.

Word List

bribery /'braɪbəri/ <i>n.</i>	贿赂行为
ethics /'eθɪks/ <i>n.</i>	道德规范
syllabus /'sɪləbəs/ <i>n.</i>	课程;教学大纲
tempt /tempt/ <i>vt.</i>	引诱,吸引
corruption /kə'rʌpʃən/ <i>n.</i>	腐败
soft-drink /'sɒftdrɪnk/ <i>n.</i>	软饮料
overseas /'əʊvə'si:z/ <i>adj.</i>	海外的
potential /pə'tenʃəl/ <i>adj.</i>	潜在的
negotiation /nɪ'gəʊʃi'eɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	谈判
substantial /səb'stænʃl/ <i>adj.</i>	大的,可观的
bribe /braɪb/ <i>n.</i>	贿赂
licence, license /'laɪsəns/ <i>n.</i>	(英/美) 许可,特许
bureaucratic /'bjʊərəʊ'krætɪk/ <i>adj.</i>	官僚的,繁文缛节的
manufacturer /,mænju'fæktʃərə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	制造业者
accuse /ə'kjuz/ <i>vt.</i>	控诉,告发

slush fund	用以行贿官员等的钱
questionable /'kwɛstʃənəbl/ <i>adj.</i>	不正当的,可疑的
purchaser /'pɜ:tʃəsə/ <i>n.</i>	买主,购买者
pad /pæd/ <i>vt.</i>	添加;增补;扩充,填塞
commission /kə'mɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	回扣;佣金;委员会
additional /ə'dɪʃənəl/ <i>adj.</i>	额外的,另外的
discount /dɪs'kaʊnt, 'dɪskaʊnt/ <i>n.</i>	折扣,打折
number /'nʌmbə(r)/ <i>vt.</i>	编号
allegation /ælɪ'geɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	(有待证实的)指控
withdraw /wɪð'drɔ:/ <i>vt.</i>	撤回
wheeling-dealing /'hwi:lɪŋ 'di:lɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	激烈甚至不择手段的
grease /ɡri:s/ <i>vt.</i>	使滑润,使顺利;贿赂
palm /pɑ:m/ <i>n.</i>	手掌
commercial /kə'mɜ:ʃəl/ <i>adj.</i>	商业的
revelation /ˌrevə'leɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	泄露,显示
securities /sɪ'kjʊərɪtiz/ <i>n.</i>	股票,有价证券
dubious /'dju:biəs/ <i>adj.</i>	可疑的
facilitate /fə'sɪlɪteɪt/ <i>vt.</i>	使容易;使便利
category /'kætɪɡəri/ <i>n.</i>	类别
secure /sɪ'kjʊə(r)/ <i>vt.</i>	获得,得到
contract /'kɒntrækt/ <i>n.</i>	合同
conglomerate /kən'ɡlɒməraɪt/ <i>n.</i>	大型联合企业,集团
presidential /ˌprezɪ'denʃəl/ <i>adj.</i>	总统的
candidate /'kændɪdɪt/ <i>n.</i>	竞选者,候选人
investigation /ˌɪnvestɪ'geɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	调查
violation /ˌvaɪə'leɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	违反
anti-trust /'æntɪtrʌst/ <i>adj.</i>	反垄断的,反托拉斯的
finance /'faɪnæns, frɪ'næns/ <i>vt.</i>	提供经费

overthrow /ˌəʊvə'θrəʊ/	<i>vt.</i>	推翻; 颠覆
Marxist /'mɑːksɪst/	<i>adj.</i>	马克思主义的
adviser /əd'vaɪzər/	<i>n.</i>	顾问, 建议者
arms /ɑːmz/	<i>n.</i>	兵器, 武器
petrochemical /ˌpetrəʊ'kemɪkl/	<i>adj.</i>	石油化学制品的
court /kɔːt/	<i>n.</i>	法庭, 法院
witness /'wɪtnɪs/	<i>n.</i>	证人; 目击者
claim /kleɪm/	<i>vt.</i>	声称
go-between /'gəʊbɪ'twiːn/	<i>n.</i>	中间人; 媒人
clinch /klɪntʃ/	<i>vt.</i>	确定; 使得到最后解决
bureaucracy /ˌbjʊə'rɒkrəsi/	<i>n.</i>	官僚政治, 官僚主义
machinery /mə'ʃɪːnəri/	<i>n.</i>	(集)机械; 机器
bibliophile /'bɪblɪəʊfaɪl, -fɪl/	<i>n.</i>	藏书家
edition /ɪ'dɪʃən/	<i>n.</i>	版本
slip /slɪp/	<i>vt.</i>	偷偷塞
quick-witted /ˌkwɪk'wɪtɪd/	<i>adj.</i>	反应灵敏的
appendix /ə'pendɪks/	<i>n.</i>	(复 appendices) 附录
deal /diːl/	<i>n.</i>	交易
passage /'pæsɪdʒ/	<i>n.</i>	通过
ensure /ɪn'ʃʊə(r)/	<i>vt.</i>	保证
tender /'tendə(r)/	<i>n.</i>	投标
selective /sɪ'lektɪv/	<i>adj.</i>	选择的
cargo /'kɑːɡəʊ/	<i>n.</i>	货物
sterile /'steraɪl/	<i>adj.</i>	消毒的; 无效的
penicillin /ˌpenɪ'sɪlɪn, pe'nɪs-/	<i>n.</i>	盘尼西林
shipment /'ʃɪpmənt/	<i>n.</i>	装载(或交运)的货物
phial /'faɪəl/	<i>n.</i>	小药瓶
thereby /ˌðeə'baɪ/	<i>adv.</i>	(正式) 因此

formulate /'fɔ:mjuleɪt/ <i>vt.</i>	规划(制度等)
code /kəʊd/ <i>n.</i>	法规;准则
outlaw /'aʊtlɔ:/ <i>vt.</i>	取缔;宣布……违法
favour /'feɪvə(r)/ <i>vt.</i>	支持,赞成
conduct /'kɒndʌkt, -dəkt/ <i>n.</i>	经营(方式);管理(方式)
ban /bæn/ <i>vt.</i>	禁止,严禁
fee /fi:/ <i>n.</i>	费用
propose /prə'pəʊz/ <i>vt.</i>	提议,建议
administer /əd'mɪnɪstə(r)/ <i>vt.</i>	执行,实施
unfortunately /ʌn'fɔ:tʃənɪtli/ <i>adv.</i>	不幸地
enforce /ɪn'fɔ:s/ <i>vt.</i>	执行
delegate /'delɪgeɪt, -ɡɪt/ <i>n.</i>	代表,受委托者
impose /ɪm'pəʊz/ <i>vt.</i>	实施
community /kə'mju:nɪti/ <i>n.</i>	团体
web /web/ <i>n.</i>	网络
exaggeration /ɪɡ,zædʒə'reɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	夸张
square /skweə/ <i>vt. & vi.</i>	(口语,与 with 连用)符合,相一致

Proper Names

David Cotton /'deɪvɪd 'kɒtən/	大卫·科顿
British Leyland /'brɪtɪʃ 'leɪlənd/	英国莱兰汽车公司
Switzerland /'swɪtsələnd/	瑞士
Chrysler Corporation /'krislə ,kɔ:pə'reɪʃən/	克莱斯勒公司

U. S. Securities and Exchange Commission /ju: es sɪ'kjʊərətɪs ænd ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ kə'mɪʃən/	美国证券交易署
Chile /'tʃɪli/	智利
Salvatore Allende /'sælvədə:(r) ɑ:'leɪndeɪ/	萨尔瓦多·阿连德
Iran /ɪ'rɑ:n/	伊朗
International Chambers of Com- merce /ɪntə'næʃənəl 'tʃeɪmbəz of 'kɒməs/	国际商会
Lord Shawcross /lɔ:d 'ʃɔ:kros/	肖克罗斯勋爵

Useful Expressions

be tempted to do sth.	受……诱惑
on the increase	增加
break into	闯进
stand by	遵守
speed up	加快
accused of	被控犯有……罪
hit upon	(偶然)发现,想到
consist of	由……组成
in private	私下,秘密

Word Study

pay *vt. & vi.*

1. 付(款、账单),付款(给某人)

- 1) V; V + N (+ N); V (+ N) + for + N

You *can pay* by credit card. (用信用卡支付)

I *haven't paid* last month's telephone bill yet.

When a young lady refused to *pay for a pair of red shoes*, unhappiness filled the poor shoemaker's house.

They *paid ¥30 for their drinks*.

My mother *paid the washwoman \$50 for her work*.

A British company *paid £1 million to* a "go-between".

- 2) V + N + N + for doing sth. ; V + N (+ N) + to do sth.

How much did you *pay the electrician for fixing* the fridge?

He *paid the workers (¥50) to carry* his wardrobe upstairs.

In some countries it is traditional to *pay people to facilitate* the passage of a business deal.

2. 对……有利, 对……有好处

V; it + V (+ N) + to do sth.

Dishonesty doesn't *pay*.

Does *it pay to make* sacrifices for children?

It would *pay (you) to employ* a professional for this job.

3. Phrases:

pay up 还清全部借款

pay (no) attention to sb. / sth. (不)注意

pay sth. off 全部还清, 偿清(借款)

pay for sth. 为……付出代价, 因……而受罚

pay *n.* 薪水, 报酬

offer *vt. & vi.*

1. (主动)给予, 提供

V (+ N) + N; V + N + to + N

All through the night, the young Marine held the old man's hand, *offering words* of hope and strength.

A great book *offers you a life* you have no time to live yourself.

The Evening Messenger has decided to *offer 500 pounds reward to any person* who gives information which results in the arrest of William Strickland, a murderer.

2. (主动)表示愿意(做某事);提议

V + N; V + to do (sth.)

What would I do if she screamed as I went toward her to *offer my help*?

I once got into an argument with an Englishwoman over the pronunciation of an English word and *offered to look* it up in the dictionary.

3. 出价,开价;备有……出售

V (+ N) + for + N

I *will offer (you) ¥100 for your old bicycle*.

He *offered me the second-hand computer for ¥600*.

The supermarket *offers a variety of household goods* on sale.

offer *n.* 提供;建议;提出的价钱;出价

favour *vt.*

1. 支持,赞同,主张

V + N; V + doing sth.

Beauty contests are not much favoured by old people.

Many people's deputies (人民代表) *favour changing* certain parts of the Marriage Law.

The International Chambers of Commerce *favours a code of conduct* which would ban the giving and seeking of bribes.

2. 偏爱, 偏袒

V + N; V + doing sth.

She *favours smart and clever children*.

I *favour travelling* by train if I'm not in a hurry.

favour *n.*

Phrases:

ask a favour of sb. 请某人帮忙

do sb. a favour / do a favour for sb. 帮助某人

in favour of sb. / sth. 支持, 赞同; 有利于某人

in sb.'s favour 有利于某人

in / out of favour 受宠或失宠

Notes on the Text

1. About the text:《贿赂是不可避免的罪恶吗?》一文选自大卫·科顿所著《国际贸易 20 题》(*International Business Topics*, Bell & Hyman Limited, 1984, London)。该书是为外国中等以上学生编写的读本, 涉及国际贸易方面有关的 20 个题目。本篇的写作以及语言特点如下:

- 1) 文章的标题体现了本文的中心思想: 贿赂毫无疑问是令人深恶痛绝的罪恶, 可是它又十分普遍。在很多情况下, 不行贿就拿不到合同, 中不了标, 打不开市场, 货物过不了海关; 行贿和索贿如此之流行, 以至于人们觉得行贿是消灭不了的罪恶。本文大体可分为三部分: (1) 1—4 段说明行贿的普遍存在; (2) 5—10 段分析了行贿的形式, 进一步指出行贿现象的严重性; (3) 11—13 段说明根除行贿现象的难度。
- 2) 文章可分成四类: 叙事性的、描写性的、论证性的和说明性的, 本文属说明文(exposition)。说明文本身又可按其

“说明”方式,进一步划分成若干种。本篇主要是通过列举事实或典型案例来说明行贿现象的普遍性、严重性和消除它的困难性。这类说明文的结构一般是:首先提出一种现象或情况;接着举例证明某种现象或情况的存在——有时详细介绍一个事例,有时简略说明几个例子;一般结论在前,实例在后,也可反之。

- 3) 文章语言规范,文体既不很正式也非纯口语体,词汇方面作者使用了:(1) 相当多的短语动词,如 break into, pay up, stand by, divide... into, consist of, speed up, hit upon, soften up, distinguish between, square with 等。(2) 不少的俚语,如 grease the palm of, clinch a deal, have legal teeth, on the take 等。(3) 介词+名词,(名词+)介词+名词和动词+名词的搭配,如 on the increase, in private, under investigation, a way of life, a fact of commercial life, potential for, take course /bribes, make payments /donations, secure a contract/arms sales, offer a sum of money, finance efforts (to do sth.), obtain official approval of, facilitate the passage of, clear cargo, make/enforce/impose a law, behave oneself 等。(4) 有关经贸的词汇。

2. Students taking business courses are sometimes a little surprised to find that lectures on business ethics have been included in their syllabuses of study: 选修商业课程的学生多少感到惊讶地发现他们的课程中,还有关于商业道德方面的讲座。

be surprise/pleased/delighted/glad/happy/sorry, etc. to do sth.:对……感到惊讶/高兴/兴奋/抱歉等,又如:

Henry's friends *were delighted to hear* of his success.

亨利的朋友听说他成功了,感到很高兴。

I'm very sorry to tell you that you didn't pass the exam.

我很抱歉地通知你,你考试没有通过。

3. they may be tempted to bend their principles to get what they

want: 为了达到目的,他们可能会做出违心的事情。

be tempted to do sth.: 受到吸引、诱惑而去做……,又如:

He *was tempted to take* a well-paid job a big company had offered.

他很想接受一家大公司答应给的一份高收入的工作。

Nothing *would tempt her to leave* her aging parents alone in the countryside.

她决不会把年迈的双亲单独留在乡下不管。

bend one's principles: do things against one's principles rather unwillingly 勉强做违背自己原则的事情。

注意以往学过的近似的意思:

There would be no powerful will *bending* hers.

(那时)再也没有人把自己(的意志)强加于她了。

to get what they want 是目的状语,修饰谓语 may be tempted to bend their principles.

- 4. that bribery in various forms is on the increase in many countries and, in some, this type of corruption has been a way of life for centuries:** 在许多国家,形形色色的贿赂形式在增加;在有些国家里,这类腐败现象几个世纪以来早已成了一种正常办事的模式。

on the increase: increasing 增加,又如:

Crime is *on the increase* in that country.

那个国家的犯罪现象在增加。

a /one's way of life: 一种(或某人的)生活方式,一种正常的办事模式,又如:

Early to bed and early to rise is *his way of life*.

早睡早起是他的生活方式。

Spending today what you will earn tomorrow is becoming *a way of life* for many young city people.

今天花将来挣的钱逐渐成为城市里许多年轻人的生活方式。

5. **suppose you were head of a major soft-drinks company and you want to break into a certain overseas market where the growth potential for your company is likely to be very great indeed:** 假设你是一家重要软饮料公司的头头,你想打入某个对公司发展前景看好的海外市场。

you were 是虚拟语气。

potential for sth. : ……的可能性,又如:

Seeing *the potential for* nuclear attacks, the family built a shelter.

这家人认识到可能会发生核攻击之事,就修建了防空洞。

They all agree that *the potential for* conflict between the two parties is great.

他们一致同意两个派别发生冲突的可能性相当大。

be likely to do / be: will probably do / be 可能会发生(或成为)。

6. **the Minister of Trade makes it clear to you that...** : 贸易部长明确表示……

make... clear: 明确表明,有三种不同的形式:

- 1) make sth. clear, 如:

I think I've *made my intentions very clear*.

我想我已经把我的意图表达清楚了。

- 2) make oneself clear, 如:

I wonder if I've *made myself clear*.

不知大家是否明白了我的意思。

如果 make 的宾语是 that 从句,则在宾语的位置用 it, 将从句置于 clear 之后。

- 3) make it clear (to sb.) that: (向某人)明确表示……,又如:

The doctor *made it clear to his family that* the patient didn't have more than three days to live.

医生毫不含糊地向家属表明病人最多还能活 3 天。

7. **and you are also likely to avoid “bureaucratic delays”, as he puts it:** 同时,正如他说的那样,你还可能避免“因官僚主义而延误”的情况。

as he puts it 是方式状语从句。

8. **Now, the question is: do you pay up or stand by your principles?:** 现在问题是:你是按数付钱,还是坚持你的原则?

pay up: hand money to sb. 向某人交钱,一般指“支付一切欠款”,此处指“向索贿者交付他想要的数目”。

Unless you *pay up*, they'll cut off your gas supply.

你要再不支付拖欠的煤气费,他们就要停止你的煤气供应。

stand by sth.: be faithful to a promise, decision, principle, etc. 遵守诺言,信守决定,坚持原则等,又如:

Once a decision is made, you've got *to stand by* it.

一旦作出了决定,就要信守决定。

I'll *stand by* every word I've said no matter what happens.

无论发生什么事,我都会遵守诺言。

9. **was accused of operating a “slush fund”, and of other questionable practices such as paying agents and purchasers with padded commission, offering additional discounts and making payments to numbered bank accounts in Switzerland:** 被指控设有一笔用来支付非法事项的款子以及搞其他不正当做法,如向代理商和买方支付高额回扣、提供附加折扣以及向瑞士银行某些具体账号存款等。

slush fund: 一笔支付非法或不正当事物的款子。slush 原意是正在融化的雪,往往很脏。

padded commission: 比率超常的回扣。正常的回扣是合法的,如 5%,如果回扣过高如 20% 就不正常,padded 的原意是“填满了……的”。

numbered bank accounts: 以上所列实质都是行贿,或是变相行贿。瑞士的银行是世界范围内犯罪分子洗钱首选之地,因此瑞

士银行因接纳不义之财而受到批评。

10. **The company rejected these allegations and they were later withdrawn:** 这家公司驳回这些指控,后来这些指控被撤消。

11. **who were prepared to say in private:** 他们私下会这样说。

be prepared to do sth.: 准备做……;愿意做……,又如:

They're prepared to have a try though the chances of success are very small.

尽管成功的可能不大,他们准备试一试。

in private: 私下,与之相对应的是 in public(公开)。

12. **we're in a wheeling-dealing business:** 我们所干的事竞争异常激烈,往往需要不择手段。business 此处既可作“生意”解,也可作“事业”解。

wheeling-dealing: (口语)在政治活动或生意中为了打垮对手而必须不择手段的。

13. **Every year we're selling more than a £ 1,000 million worth of cars abroad. If we spend a few million greasing the palms of some of the buyers, who's hurt? If we didn't do it, someone else would:** 每年我们在海外要卖出价值 10 亿英镑的汽车,要是我们花上几百万贿赂买方,对我们的利益毫无损害。我们不这么做,别人也会干的。

... worth of sth.: 价值……的……,又如:

¥2,000 worth of chemical fertilizer 价值 2,000 元人民币的化肥

\$ 5,000 worth of books 价值 5,000 美元的书

spend (an amount of money) doing sth.: 花……钱用来做……,又如:

They spent ¥50,000 fixing their apartment.

他们花了 5 万元人民币修理单元住房。

grease the palms of: give sb. money in order to persuade them to do something dishonest for one 向某人行贿。

Who's hurt?: We won't be hurt in the least. 对我们来说,这只不过是小菜一碟。这是个修辞性疑问句,表示强调所说的话。
If we didn't do it... would do it 注意此句包含一个虚拟条件句。

14. **It is difficult to resist the impression that bribery and other questionable payments are on the increase. Indeed, they seem to have become a fact of commercial life:** 行贿和其他不正当的送钱的情况越来越多,这种印象很难磨灭。的确,这种情况好像已经成了商界无可争辩的事实。

a fact of life: a true thing that that cannot ignored, even if it is unpleasant.

15. **To take just one example, the Chrysler Corporation, third largest of the U. S. motor manufacturers, disclosed that it made questionable payments of more than \$ 2.5 million between 1971 and 1976:** 仅以美国第三大汽车制造商克莱斯勒公司为例,该公司透露说从1971至1976年他们就支付了超过250万美元的不正当的款项。

to take just one example: 不定式短语,在句中是独立成分,又如:

To tell the truth, I don't like the idea.

说老实话,我觉得这主意不怎么样。

To be frank, I was thirsty like everyone else.

坦白说,我和其他人一样渴。

16. **By making this revelation, it joined more than 300 U.S. companies that had admitted to the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission that they had made dubious payments of one kind or another — bribes, facilitating payments, extra discounts, etc. — in recent years:** 透露了这一秘密之后,该公司也加入了向美国证券交易署承认近年来曾经支付过各种不正当的款项——行贿、疏通费以及附加折扣等——的三百多家公司的行

列。

by... , sb./sth. join... : 通过做……, 加入了……的队伍。

the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission: 美国证券交易署。

...of one kind or another: 不同类的……, 不是这种就是那种的……。

facilitating payments: 为了打通关系使办事顺利而支付的款项。

extra discounts: 超额折扣。

17. **For discussion purposes, we can divide these payments into three broad categories:** 为了讨论便利起见, 我们把这种款项分为三大类。

divide... into: 把(人、事或物)分为……, 又如:

In oral classes, we *divide* the class *into* two groups.

上口语课时, 我们把全班学生分成两组。

According to their political attitude, the faculty *can be divided into* three categories: the radical, the conservative, and the middle-of-the-roader.

按其政治态度, 教职人员可分为三类: 激进派、保守派和中间派。

18. **The first category consists of substantial payments made for political purposes or to secure major contracts:** 为了政治目的, 或是为了获得重大项目合同而付的巨款属第一类。

consist of: 由……组成, 又如:

Their diet chiefly *consists of* rice and vegetables.

他们日常的主要食物是大米和蔬菜。

The delegation *consists of* students from all corners of the country.

代表团由来自全国各地的学生组成。

made for... major contracts 是分词短语, 作定语修饰 sub-

stantial payments, 介词短语 for political purposes 和不定式短语 to secure major contracts 都是目的状语, 修饰 made。

19. **For example, the U. S. conglomerate ITT (International Telephone and Telegraph Corporation) offered a large sum of money in support of a U. S. presidential candidate at a time when it was under investigation for possible violations of the U. S. anti-trust law:** 例如, 在调查美国 ITT(国际电话电报公司)是否违反美国反托拉斯法案之际, 该集团为支持一位美国总统候选人提供了大量资金。

in support of sb. /sth.: supporting/in favour of sb. /sth. 支持, 赞成, 又如:

He voted *in support of* an anti-dumping bill.

他对一项反倾销法案投了赞成票。

She spoke *in support of* anti-smuggling measures.

她发言支持反走私措施。

at a time when: 正当……的时刻, 又如:

She returned *at a time when* she thought she could best serve her country.

在她认为能最好为自己国家服务之际回来了。

How can we call ourselves his friends if we stand by *at a time when* he desperately needs help?

在他急需帮助之际, 我们却袖手旁观, 这够朋友吗?

under investigation: 正受到调查。此处 under 表示“处于某种状况”, 常见的短语有:

(buildings) under repair/construction (建筑物)正在修复或施工之中

(matters) under consideration/discussion (事情或事件)正在考虑或讨论之中

20. **was ready to finance efforts to overthrow the Marxist government of Chile whose President was Salvadore Allende:** 愿意资

助推翻以萨尔瓦多·阿连德为总统的智利马克思主义政府的种种尝试。

ready to do sth. : willing and eager to do sth. 愿意并很迫切做……, 又如:

They're always *ready to lend* a helping hand.

他们一贯乐于助人。

Laura loved him and he was *ready to kiss* her shoestrings.

劳拉爱他,他都乐于吻她的鞋带。

Salvatore Allende: 萨尔瓦多·阿连德(1908—1973),智利社会党创建人和领袖,1970—1973年任智利总统,1973年9月在军事政变中殉职。他执政期间做了不少有利于人民的事情。西方反动势力惯于把推行诸如土地改革、注重人民卫生健康等政策的左派政府称为马克思主义政府。

此处不定式 to overthrow... Salvatore Allende 作定语,修饰 efforts。

21. In a court case involving an arms deal with Iran, a witness claimed that £ 1 million had been paid by a British company to a “go-between” who helped clinch a deal for supply of tanks to that country: 在涉及与伊朗进行武器交易的案件中,一位证人声称一家英国公司向助其达成供应伊朗坦克的买卖的“中间人”支付了100万英镑。

此处分词短语 involving an arms deal with Iran 作定语,修饰 a court case。

claim that:(未经证实或证明)声称,断言,又如:

Some scientist *claims that* he has found an effective cure for AIDS.

某位科学家声称他已经找到了治疗艾滋病的有效办法。

这里“go-between”一词用了引号表示并不是真正的中间人,而是统治该国的家庭的成员或是他们的高参(即本段开始提到的 ruling families or their close advisers)。

clinch a deal: (口语)达成交易。

22. **Other countries have also been known to put pressure on foreign companies to make donations to party funds:** 其他国家也有对外国公司施加压力使其为党派基金捐款的情况。

be known to do sth.: 知其做……, 又如:

The company *is known to have* secret dealings with smugglers.

人们都知道这家公司与走私分子有秘密来往。

He *was known to have worked* for the Japanese invaders, so he was unpopular among his neighbours.

众所周知, 他曾为日本入侵者干过事, 所以邻居们都讨厌他。

make donations to: 向……捐款。

23. **The second category covers payments made to obtain quicker official approval of some project, to speed up the wheels of bureaucracy:** 第二类包含为了使官方更快批准某个项目以及为了加快官僚机构运作所支付的款项。

speed up (sth.): increase or make sth. increase speed 加速; 使加速, 又如:

They decided to take steps *to speed up the reform* of the SOEs (state-owned enterprises).

他们决定采取措施加快国有企业的改革。

As he got excited, he noticed that his breathing *had speeded up*.

他变得激动起来, 注意到他的呼吸加快了。

the wheels of bureaucracy, etc: that which enables bureaucracy, etc. to function 能使……运作起来的关键。

24. **Finally, he hit upon the answer:** 最后终于想出了办法。

hit upon: think of a good idea, etc. suddenly or by chance 突然或偶然想出(好主意等), 又如:

He *hit upon* a way of making a living.

他偶然想到了一种谋生手段。

He *hit upon* a perfect name for his grandson.

他突然为他的孙子想到了一个顶好的名字。

25. **Discovering that the minister was a bibliophile, he bought a rare edition of a book, slipped \$ 20,000 within its pages, then presented it to the minister:** 了解到那位部长是个藏书家,他买了一本书的珍稀版本,在书里夹了两万美元,然后把书献给了部长。

present sth. to sb. /sb. with sth.: (尤其指正式场合中)将……献或颁发给某人,又如:

The children *presented the guests with* flowers.

孩子们向客人们献了花。

Celebrities have been invited *to present the awards to* the winners.

请了名人给优胜者颁发奖品。

discovering that... 分词短语作状语,修饰谓语动词 bought。

26. **This man examined its contents, then said: "I understand there is a two-volume edition of this work":** 此人查看了书中所含,然后说:“据我所知,此书有两卷本的版本。”

contents: the things contained in sth. (房间、盒子和瓶子等里)所放的东西;(书籍的)目录。

这里 contents 是双关语,表面上是指书的内容(目录),实际指书里夹的钱(即他计算了书里共夹有多少钱)。

27. **The sales manager, who was quick-witted, replied: "My company cannot afford a two-volume edition, sir, but we could offer you a copy with an appendix!" A short time later, the deal was approved:** 机智的销售经理回答说:“先生,两卷本超越了敝公司之财力,不过我们能为您提供一部带有附录的版本。”不久之后,这桩交易获得批准。

注意双方都以暗示的方式,相当明确地表达了各自的要求或承诺,部长暗示对方再加两万美元,经理暗示公司不愿追加如此大的数目,但可以再加一笔钱。

28. **The third category involves payments made in countries where it is traditional to pay people to facilitate the passage of a business deal:** 第三类是指在一些需要疏通有关人员生意才能顺利进行的国家里(外国公司)所支付的款子。

此句从 made 直到结尾是个分词短语,修饰 payments;定语从句 where it is traditional... a business deal 修饰 countries;在此定语从句中, to pay people... a business deal 是定语从句的主语, it 是形式主语,而 to facilitate... deal 是目的状语,修饰 to pay people。

29. **The payment may be made by a foreign company to ensure that a tender is put on a selective contract list or the company may pay so that an import licence for essential equipment is approved:** 为了确保其投标项目能够被列入经过筛选的合同名单,或者是为了使其重要设备的进口得以顺利批准,外国公司可能要为此而支付一笔钱。

ensure that: make sure that 确保……成功;保证。

so that... 为目的状语从句,修饰 pay。

30. **Sometimes an expensive gift may be necessary to soften up a government official:** 有时为了使一位政府官员手软,需要向他馈赠一份昂贵的礼物。(即俗语所说:“拿人家的手软。”)

soften up: make sb. unable or less able to resist being persuaded (口语)使……的态度软化。

31. **A common type in this category is the “facilitating payment” — usually a smaller sum of money — made to certain customs officials to clear cargoes:** “疏通费”是这类贿赂中常见的一种形式,一般数额不太大,是为了让货物顺利通过海关,向海关官员支付的钱。

分词短语 *made to customs officials to clear cargoes* 作定语, 修饰 the “*facilitating payment*”。usually a smaller sum of money 是插入语, 补充说明 the “*facilitating payment*”。

32. **One businessman has told the story of a delivery of 10,000 bottles of sterile penicillin at the airport of a Far Eastern country:** 一位商人讲了关于一万瓶无菌青霉素运至某个远东国家机场的情况。

33. **It was apparently customary to pay customs officials about \$ 250 upon arrival of each shipment to “get them out of the sun”:** 此地很明显的惯例是每一批货到港后, 为了让海关官员不找麻烦要付给他们 250 美元。

get sb. out of the sun: 不找某人麻烦。

不定式 *to pay... to “get them out of the sun”* 是句子的主语, 其中 *upon arrival of each shipment* 表示 *pay* 的时间, *to “get them out of the sun”* 是状语, 说明 *pay* 的目的。

34. **In this case, the company was not prepared to make such a payment, so no money changed hands:** 这回, 这家公司不愿意花这种钱, 因此没有送钱。

change hands: *pass to a different owner* (房产等) 转手, 易主, 又如:

The hotel *has changed hands* three times in ten years.

这家饭店 10 年内, 三次变换主人。

35. **The Minister of Health of that nation then ordered that each phial be opened for inspection, thereby destroying the whole shipment:** 其后该国卫生部长下令每一小瓶(青霉素)都要打开检查, 从而毁了整批药品。

order (命令) 后面的宾语从句的谓语动词要求用虚拟语气, 其形式与动词原形一致, 其模式为: *order that sth. be done/sb. do sth.*, 又如:

The doctor *ordered that* the wounded soldiers *be moved* to

safety at once.

医生下令伤员立即撤往安全处。

分词短语 *thereby destroying the whole shipment* 作状语, 修饰 *open*, 表示伴随 *open* 所发生的事或产生的情况。 *thereby*: *by that means or action*(正式)借以。

36. **Is it possible to formulate a code of rules for companies which would outlaw bribery in all its forms?**: 为公司制定经营条例从而使各种形式的行贿活动成为非法, 这可行吗?

定语从句 *which would outlaw... all its forms* 修饰 *a code of rules for companies*。

37. **The International Chambers of Commerce (ICC) favours a code of conduct which would ban the giving and seeking of bribes**: 国际商会主张制定禁止受贿、索贿的经营法规。

favour: *support sb./sth.* 支持, 赞成……, 主张; 更喜欢, 又如:

Certain countries *favour* sending UN observers rather than peace-keeping troops to that area.

某些国家主张派联合国观察员而不是维和部队到那个地区。

Not all Confucian ideas *are favoured* today, especially among the young.

今天并非孔夫子的所有思想都得到认同, 特别是在年轻人当中。

They *favour* a traditional wedding.

他们俩都倾向搞一个传统的婚礼。

38. **This code would try to distinguish between commissions paid for real services and padded fees. A council has been proposed to administer the code**: 此法规要分清何为正当服务所付之佣金而何为超高佣金。有人建议成立一个执行机构。

distinguish between A and B / *A from B*: *show the difference between A and B* 划分……和……的区别; 区分, 又如:

The law *distinguishes between* manslaughter and murder.

法律界定过失杀人和蓄意谋杀的区别。

I think he's old enough *to distinguish* the right from the wrong.

他不小了,该能够辨别是非了。

Heroes and heroines *are distinguished from* ordinary men and woman by uncommon courage, achievements, and self-sacrifice.

男女英雄通过不同寻常的勇气、成就与自我牺牲而与常人区分开来。

此处不定式 *to administer the code* 是定语,修饰 *council*, 为了避免主语 *a council to administer the code* 太长,而置于句尾。

39. **The British members, led by Lord Shawcross, would like the system to have enough legal teeth to make companies behave themselves. "It's no use having a dog without teeth," they argue:** 以肖克罗斯勋爵为首的英国会员们认为这个法规应有足够的法律约束力,让各公司规模矩矩地办事,他们认为:“养一条没有牙齿的狗毫无用处。”

legal teeth: legal effective force(英,口语)法律约束力。

behave oneself: 检点自己的行为。(一般指个人的行为举止,这里指在经营中不要搞行贿等不正当的活动。)

40. **In a well-known British newspaper, a writer argued recently that "industry is caught in a web of bribery" and that everyone is "on the take":** 在一家英国著名的报纸上,最近一位撰稿人指出“实业界已经陷入贿赂的网络”,人人都“受贿”。

argue that: (正式)认为;提出理由极力证明。

作者用 *be caught in a web of bribery* 表明贿赂非常普遍,商人很难避免。

be caught in: be stuck in 陷入。

a web of sth.: a close-related set of things that can be very complicated 一系列(相关、复杂的事物),圈套;网络,又如:

(create) a web of companies (创建)一系列的公司

(weave) a web of lies (编造)一系列的谎言

on the take: regularly taking bribes(俚语)索取不正当的钱财, 索贿, 收贿。

- 41. However, today's businessman, selling in overseas markets, will frequently meet situations where it is difficult to square his business interests with his moral conscience:** 然而,今天的商人在海外市场进行销售时,在许多情况下很难做到既维护自己的商业利益又符合自己的道德准则。

分词短语 *selling in overseas markets* 作状语,修饰 *meet*; 定语从句 *where it is... moral conscience* 修饰 *situations*。

square... with...: (口语)(使)……与……一致,又如:

His deeds *don't square with* his words.

他的言行不一。

You've got to *square* your dream *with* reality if you want to succeed.

你要是想成功,就必须把你的梦想与现实结合起来。

Work on the Text

1. Answer these questions.

- 1) Why is business ethics included in business courses?
- 2) What situations would students of business find themselves in where they might vacillate between paying up and standing by their principles?
- 3) What was British Leyland accused of some time ago?
- 4) What argument might someone in the British motor car industry use to defend British Leyland in private?
- 5) What facts does the writer give to show that questionable

payments are on the increase?

- 6) Why was the U. S. Company ITT criticized for making a large financial contribution to a political campaign? What is the purpose of making this kind of payment?
- 7) How did a British company get involved in a law case concerning an arms deal?
- 8) The Minister of Works of the Caribbean country eventually awarded the contract to the sales manager, didn't he? What finally persuaded him to do this? Why is the manager described as quick-witted?
- 9) Under what circumstances do foreign companies make the third category of questionable payments? In which areas does the writer say this type of bribe is particularly widespread?
- 10) What is "facilitating payment" in this category? What may happen if a company doesn't make such payments? Give an example to show the consequences.
- 11) How do opinions differ within the ICC about how the organization should deal with bribery? Do ICC members agree to formulate a set of rules to ban bribery? Where do opinions differ?
- 12) What does the concluding remark tell us about the writer's view of bribery? Is bribery in business inevitable or can it be eliminated?

2. Look up the following words in an English-English dictionary before looking at the Word List. (You have to decide their part of speech first.)

potential (Para. 2) substantial (Para. 2) questionable (Para. 3)
slip (Para. 7) outlaw (Para. 11)

3. Paraphrase the following, paying special attention to the italicized parts.

- 1) Now, the question is: do you *pay up* or *stand by your principles*? (Para. 2)
- 2) If we spend a few million *greasing the palms* of some of the buyers, *who's hurt*? (Para. 3)
- 3) "I understand *there is a two-volume edition of this work*." (Para 7)
- 4) The sales manager, who was *quick-witted*, replied: "My company *cannot afford a two-volume edition*, sir, but we could *offer you a copy with an appendix*!" (Para. 7)
- 5) ... "industry is *caught in a web of bribery*" and that everyone is "*on the take*". (Para. 13)

4. Discuss or speak on the following topics.

- 1) Why is bribery so widespread? Is it an inevitable evil? Who is more to blame for bribery, the giver or the taker? What do you think is the root cause of this evil?
- 2) Do you think you would be able to resist bribes if you were in a position of responsibility? Suppose you were a businessman, do you think you would try bribing a key official in order to secure a contract, to clear cargoes, or whatever? Why / why not?

5. Translate the following passage into English.

行贿指的是向某人赠送或提出赠送一笔钱或贵重物品,使其做出有利于赠送者的事。在许多国家,向公务员行贿对行贿者和受贿者来说都是犯罪。对一位公务员行贿,行贿者肯定是

指望受贿者利用其地位做有利于自己的事。作为回报,受贿者就得违背自己的职责,或违反法律来满足行贿者的要求。一旦有了钱的交易,即使受贿者还没有来得及做行贿者要求他做的事,行受贿赂的罪行已经发生。此外,索贿或受贿者与行贿者的罪行视为同等严重。在中国,行受贿赂在各个部门——政府部门、商业部门以及教育部门——都是重大的犯罪行为,对其惩罚相当严厉,视涉及金额与具体情况,从几个月的监禁直到死刑。

Vocabulary Exercises

1. Complete the following sentences with words formed in the same way as in the examples, putting in a hyphen where necessary.

Examples:

anticlimax 令人扫兴的结局

antisocial 不合群的;有害于公众利益的

antiknock 防震剂

antifreeze 防冻剂

anti-clockwise 逆时针方向的

(anti- + 名词/形容词→名词/形容词)

noun: cancer trust war adj.: fascist racist

- 1) The _____ in South Africa won the support of both white and black people in the country.
- 2) Her grandfather was a(n) _____ fighter in German-occupied Paris during World War II.
- 3) The American government has passed a(n) _____ law to prevent large companies controlling prices.
- 4) A new _____ drug has been developed recently.

- 5) People who love peace staged a(n) _____ protest against NATO's bombings of Yugoslavia.

2. Translate the following into English.

1) Use the verb + noun or adj. + noun collocation.

变通原则 批准项目 贿赂某人 颠覆政府 开发潜能
抵制诱惑 施加压力 行为检点 索要贿赂 军火交易
实施法律 制定法律 海外市场 行为准则 职业道德
进口许可证 撤军 撤诉 受贿

2) Use the "useful expressions".

- (1) 她很想再吃一份(helping), 尽管知道这对她并不好。
- (2) 私立学校正在中国的大城市里兴起。
- (3) 警察把非法闯入政府的军事网络的年轻人抓了起来。
- (4) 在任何情况下我们都应该信守诺言。
- (5) 在一个案件中, 几个政府官员被控犯有贪污(embezzlement)和受贿罪。
- (6) 双方之间的谈判几年来一直在秘密进行。
- (7) 委员会由资深教授和杰出的科学家组成。
- (8) 政府正加速国营企业的改革。
- (9) 他们在试验了几个办法之后才偶然找到了一个解决办法。

3) Use pay, offer and favour.

- (1) 父母亲不能太偏爱自己的任何一个孩子。
- (2) 北京电视台已经开始有选择地提供一些国外的节目。
- (3) 你能帮我一个忙, 给我讲讲国际互联网(the Internet)是怎样运作的吗?
- (4) 销售经理没有告诉任何人他为了使货物顺利通过(海关)支付了多少钱。

- (5) 做这个工作,他们愿向他提供 5 万元的年薪 (annual salary)。
- (6) 这家旅店早餐免费吗?
- (7) 大学向青年人提供了许多开阔思路 (broaden one's mind) 的机遇。
- (8) 新的税法 (tax law) 似乎有利于低收入 (low-income) 家庭。
- (9) 为了获得一项重要合同,那家公司提出资助部长的儿子在国外学习。
- (10) 对孩子的教育进行投资 (invest) 是有好处的。

3. Complete the following sentences.

1) Put suitable prepositions or adverbs in the blanks.

- (1) In China the number of people who own a car is _____ the increase.
- (2) The government has resolved to battle corruption _____ various forms _____ the bitter end.
- (3) He's always paying lip service and seldom stands _____ his promises.
- (4) The city has great potential _____ economic development.
- (5) The family contributed \$ 50,000 _____ support _____ the local government's effort to eliminate poverty.
- (6) The gift was divided _____ 10 equal parts and everyone had a share.
- (7) The case _____ investigation involves several high-ranking officials.
- (8) For a whole week they had been trying to find a solution to their problem, and finally Lao Liu hit _____

a good idea.

- (9) The UN put great pressure _____ both countries to withdraw their troops _____ the area.
- (10) One day Andersen went to ask a favour _____ the princes of Denmark.
- (11) He has paid heavily _____ what he did. It's a lesson he will never forget.
- (12) Do you think he will be able to pay all his debts _____ by the end of this month?

2) Choosing correct word from the brackets.

- (1) This novel is another story about the battle between good and _____. (evil, bad)
- (2) I was very lucky to have an _____ to spend a year in Paris when I was a student. (occasion, opportunity)
- (3) The shops are to close tomorrow because it's a(n) _____. (holiday, leave)
- (4) It's interesting work but the _____ isn't very good. (fee, pay)
- (5) They searched the whole building to _____ that the suspect was not there. (assure, ensure)

4. Choose the best word for each blank.

We do not know when man first began to use salt, but we do know that it has been used in many different ways throughout history. (1) _____ (Ancient, Historic, Historical, Old) evidence shows, for example, that people who lived over three thousand years ago ate (2) _____ (salt, salted, salting, salty) fish.

Stealing salt was considered a major crime at certain times

in history. In the eighteenth century, for instance, if a person was (3) _____ (arrested, caught, got, seized) “stealing salt”, he could be put in prison. History (4) _____ (reads, records, reveals, says) that about ten thousand people were put in prison during that century (5) _____ (as, by, for, through) stealing salt.

In the modern world salt has many uses (6) _____ (besides, beyond, except, over) the dining table. It is used in making glass and airplane _____ (7) (bits, elements, parts, pieces), in the (8) _____ (bearing, developing, growing, training) of crops, and in killing weeds. It is also used to make water soft, to melt ice on roads and highways, to make soap, and to (9) _____ (fasten, fix, preserve, tie) colours in cloth.

Salt can be obtained in various ways, besides being taken from mines underground. Evaporation(蒸发) of salt water from the ocean or from salt water lakes or small seas is one of the (10) _____ (little, many, much, more) common processes for manufacturing salt. In Australia, it can even be taken from a “salt bush”. Yet, (11) _____ (however, whatever, whenever, wherever) it is obtained, salt will continue to play an important (12) _____ (duty, function, responsibility, role) in the lives of men and women everywhere.

Grammar & Usage

More and Most Used Other Than in Comparison

1. more

是 much, many 的比较级,但它有时却没有比较的意思。下面是 more 的几种常用的非比较级的用法。

- 1) *more ... than* 相当于 *... rather than ...*, 表示“与其说是……, 不如说是……”。

He is *more* quick-witted *than* hardworking. (与其说他肯干, 不如说他脑子快。)

After three day's journey, I arrived home *more* dead *than* alive. (经过 3 天的旅行, 我回到家时已半死不活。)

He is *more* cunning *than* wise. (与其说他聪明, 不如说他狡猾。)

She was *more* hurt *than* frightened. (与其说她害怕不如说她受到了伤害。)

注意: 同样的意思也可以用 *less ... than* 来表示, 只要把被修饰词语的位置对调一下就行了。

He is *less* wise *than* cunning.

She was *less* hurt *than* frightened.

- 2) *no more + 名词 + than + 名词*, 表示“不是……, 也不是……”。

He is *no more* a writer *than* a painter.

I'm afraid you've got the wrong person. I am *no more* a scientist *than* an artist.

- 3) *more than* 表示“极其”、“不只”。

When I told them I needed their help, they were *more than* willing to give me a hand.

She was *more than happy* to be left alone.

From the way they talk, I can see that they are *much more than* just acquaintances.

It is *more than* probable that he will give it another try.

2. most

是 *much*, *many* 的最高级形式, 放在多音节的形容词或副词前

面构成该词的最高级形式,一般来说它的结构为“the most ...”。

This is *the most difficult* question I have ever been forced to answer.

Among all my employees, Jim works *the most efficiently*.

然而,most 也可以表示“非常”、“很”的意思,这时 most 前面不加 the,这一用法较正式,口语中用 very 更好。

I will be *most grateful* if you could grant me the scholarship.

It was *a most beautiful* morning and the birds were singing in the trees.

She is *a most pleasant* person to talk to.

I shall be *most happy* to go downtown with you if I should not be in the way. (要是不妨碍你们的话,我非常愿意和你们一起去市中心。)

He argued his case *most persuasively* (有说服力地)。

Whatever happens, I shall *most certainly* attend the meeting.

Exercises

1. Translate the following sentences into Chinese.

- 1) He is no more a doctor than an engineer.
- 2) This is more a political than an economic crisis.
- 3) He is more bold than strong.
- 4) The beauty of the city is more than I can describe.
- 5) I'm afraid that's more than I can say.
- 6) The old lady was more wise than brave.
- 7) George was more than pleased with his son's achievements.
- 8) My trip to New York involved more than sightseeing.
- 9) That is a most dangerous thing to do.

10) It's most likely that the restaurants are all closed now.

2. Explain the meaning of the following idiomatic phrases with *more* and *most*, paying special attention to the italicized parts.

- 1) There is *more* in her refusal *than meets the eye*; I think she is trying to hide something.
- 2) There is *more* to the babbling (哑哑学语) of a baby *than meets the ear*.
- 3) He liked the girl and would like to *see more of her*.
- 4) Dining out saves the trouble of shopping and cooking. *What's more*, it saves the trouble of washing up.
- 5) His hesitation made me _____ *all the more certain* that he knew something.
- 6) Such attempts *more often than not* would result in failure.
- 7) After the scandal, his reputation is *more or less* ruined.
- 8) This book should be out in two months *at most*.
- 9) Japanese electric appliances (电器) are, *for the most part*, of quite good quality.
- 10) You have only a short holiday, so *make the most of it*.

3. Translate the following sentences into English using *more* and *most*.

- 1) 他不可能超过五十多岁。
- 2) 在那个地区,妇女的嫁妆(dowry)不仅仅是财富的象征,还是权利的象征。
- 3) 你有什么事请随时来找我,我会非常乐意帮助你的。
- 4) 鲸鱼不是鱼,就像马不是鱼一样。
- 5) 与其说他很节省(economical),不如说他很小气。
- 6) 你真是太好了,亲自到机场来送我。
- 7) 我们很有可能不会再有这样的机会了,所以一定要充分利

用它。

8) 与其说他是凭技术得到了那份工作,还不如说是靠运气。

4. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets (revision: tenses and voices).

- 1) She _____ (have) breakfast when the morning paper came.
- 2) By the time Jane gets home, her mother _____ (leave) for Chile.
- 3) Lead _____ (use) as a material for sculpture since the time of the early Greeks.
- 4) Although he _____ (practise) law for only a few years, he was chosen to be a district judge last year.
- 5) It _____ (rain) all morning and I don't think it'll ever stop.
- 6) I'd very much like to have gone to the party, but I _____ (not invite).
- 7) There _____ (go) the bus; we'll have to wait for the next.
- 8) They have lived in the village for a long time and _____ (know) every man, woman, and child for miles around.
- 9) They _____ (suffer) a lot of misfortune in the past five years.
- 10) As a general rule, snakes _____ (not bite) unless attacked.

Lesson Sixteen

Text

A Social Event

William Inge

闻名世界的好莱坞大明星去世,美国总统、英国女王送来鲜花,引起各方人士的瞩目。能够在他的葬礼露面,对于名气不大的电影演员,是提高知名度的极好的契机。一对年轻的演员夫妇,在举行葬礼当天的早晨尚未接到邀请,急得像热锅上的蚂蚁,两口子绞尽脑汁,多方联系,设法出席这个重要的社交场面。最后给他们解决难题的却是他们的女佣……剧作家对虚荣者的讽刺手法真是叫人佩服得五体投地。

CHARACTERS

Randy Brooks

Carole Mason

Muriel

The scene is the bedroom in the home of a young Hollywood couple, Randy Brooks and Carole Mason, who have been married only a short time and whose careers are still in the promising stage. There is abundant luxury in the room but a

minimum of taste. It is late morning and both Randy and Carole are asleep, but Randy soon comes awake, reaches for a cigarette, lights it, and rubs his forehead worriedly. Something profound is troubling him. He gets out of bed, slips a robe on and paces the floor worriedly. Finally, he presses the buzzer on the house phone and speaks to the cook.

10 RANDY. (*Into house phone.*) Muriel? We're getting up now. Bring up the usual breakfast.
(*He hangs up and goes into the bathroom to wash. Now Carole wakes up. She too lights a cigarette and looks troubled. Then she calls to Randy.*)

CAROLE. I hardly slept a wink all night, just thinking about it.

RANDY. (*From bathroom.*) There's nothing to do but face the fact that we're not invited.

CAROLE. Oh, there's got to be a way. There's got to be.

RANDY. After all, honey, there's no reason to feel slighted.
25 We're both pretty new in pictures. It's not as though we were old-timers who had worked with Scotty.

CAROLE. Sandra and Don never worked with Scotty, either. Neither did Debby and Chris, or Anne and Mark.

30 RANDY. I know, honey. We've been through all this before.

CAROLE. And I may never have worked with Scotty, but I did meet him once, and he danced with me at a party. He was very nice to me, too, and said some very complimentary things. I met his wife, too.

(*An afterthought.*) I didn't much like her.

RANDY. Maybe I'd better call Mike again. (*He picks up the telephone and dials.*)

CAROLE. What good can an agent do? We're not looking for
40 jobs.

RANDY. He may have found some way of getting us invited.

CAROLE. I bet.

RANDY. (*Into the telephone.*) Mike? Randy. Look, Mike,
Carole and I still haven't been invited, and I can't
45 help wondering if there's been an oversight of some
kind. After all, Carole was a great friend of
Scotty's and she feels pretty hurt that she's been
overlooked... I never knew him but everyone
knows how much I've always admired him. In an
50 interview just last week, I said, "Scotty Woodrow
is still the greatest." Now, I didn't *have* to say
that... if you ask me, it showed a lot of humility
on my part to say a thing like that when, after all,
I've got a career of my own to consider... well
55 look, try to do *something*, Mike. Carole and I
both should be seen there... O. K., Mike, call us
as soon as you find out. (*He hangs up.*)

CAROLE. He couldn't get us an invitation to Disneyland.

RANCY. He said just Scotty's closest friends are being
60 invited.

CAROLE. Oh yes! Half the people going, I bet, have never
met him.

RANDY. Well! What are we going to do?

CAROLE. Sandra had an entire new outfit made. Perfectly
65 stunning. And she had the dress made so that she

can have the sleeves taken out later and wear it to cocktails and supper parties. After all, black is a very smart color now.

RANDY. Did you tell Sandra and Don we weren't invited?

70 CAROLE. Of course not. I lied and said we were going. Now, if we don't get an invitation, I'll have to lie again and say we came down with food poisoning, or something.

RANDY. How did Anne and Mark get invited?

75 CAROLE. Mark played Scotty's son in a picture once.

RANDY. When? I don't remember.

CAROLE. A long time ago, before either of us came on the scene.

RANDY. (*Thinks a moment.*) That means Mark's a little
80 older than he admits.

CAROLE. I don't know. The part was very young, practically an infant.

RANDY. Just the same, I'll bet Mark's thirty.

CAROLE. Damn, what am I going to tell Sandra? She invited
85 us to come to her house afterwards and I accepted.

RANDY. (*A little shocked.*) She's not giving a party!

CAROLE. No. She just invited some friends to come in afterwards to have a few drinks and talk about what a great guy Scotty was, and everything. She said she
90 thought we'd all feel terribly depressed. After all, Scotty Woodrow was practically a landmark, or something. Think of it. He's been a star for forty years.

RANDY. Yes. He was really great. It makes me very humble
95 to think of a guy like Scotty.

- CAROLE. They say flowers came from the President, and from Queen Elizabeth, and...
- RANDY. The guest list is going to be published in every paper in the country.
- 100 CAROLE. You know we *could* crash.
- RANDY. No, honey.
- CAROLE. Who'd know the difference?
- RANDY. How would we feel afterwards, when we had to shake hands with Mrs. Woodrow?
- 105 CAROLE. She's probably forgotten whether she invited us or not.
- RANDY. Honey, I'm *not* going to crash. That's all. I'm *not*.
- CAROLE. Everyone would just take it for granted we'd been invited. I mean, we're both just as prominent as Sandra and Don, or any of the others. If you ask me, it'd be a lot better to crash than not to be seen at... well, you can't call it a social *affair* exactly, but it's a social *event*. Anyway, *everyone* will be there. *Everyone*.
- 115
- RANDY. It could be some of the others who are lying about their invitations, too. You realize that, don't you?
- CAROLE. (*Considers this.*) I wonder... well, anyway, they're all going. I *think* they got invitations.
- 120 RANDY. I don't know why the studio couldn't have managed it for us with a little pull. They should realize it's in the best interests of my career to be seen there, and my career means as much to them as it does to me.
- CAROLE. Same here. Oh, I just don't know how I can face Sandra and Anne and all the others, and make them
- 125

believe that we really did have food poisoning.

RANDY. You know, we could give ourselves food poisoning. Just a light case. A little rotten meat would do it. Then we'd call the doctor and...

130 CAROLE. (*Horried.*) No! I'm not going to make myself sick.

RANDY. Just a slight case so you could tell them with a straight face... (*A soft tap comes at the door.*) Come in. (*Muriel, the maid, enters with a tray.*) Hi Muriel!

135 MURIEL. Good morning!

CAROLE. Hi, Muriel. Put it here on the coffee table. (*Muriel does as she is told.*)

MURIEL. Miss Carole, I hope you remember I told you I'd be gone this morning.

140 CAROLE. Oh, yes, I'd forgotten. What time will you be back, Muriel?

MURIEL. Oh, I'll be back in time to fix dinner.

RANDY. Is this your day off, Muriel?

145 MURIEL. No, Mr. Randy. I'm going to Mr. Woodrow's funeral. (*There is a slight air of superiority about her now. Randy and Carole look at her with sudden surprise.*)

RANDY. Oh... is that right?

150 MURIEL. And after the funeral, Mrs. Woodrow has asked me to join the family at their home.

CAROLE. Muriel, you didn't tell me!

RANDY. Uh... were you a friend of Scotty, Muriel?

MURIEL. My mother worked for him when he was starting out in the business. I was born in Mr. Woodrow's

beach house, before he bought that big house up in the canyon. (*She has thus established herself as near-royalty to Randy and Carole.*)

RANDY. (*Amazed.*) Really?

160 MURIEL. Oh, yes. Mr. Woodrow was very good to me when I was a child. Mama worked for him until she died. I could have stayed on, but after Mr. Woodrow got married the last time, *she* hired a lot of French servants I didn't get on with, at all. But they went right on sending me Christmas cards every year.

RANDY. Uh... Muriel, do you have a ride to the funeral?

MURIEL. No, Mr. Brooks. Mrs. Woodrow's secretary said I could bring my family, but now that Vincent has left me and taken the car, I'll have to take a taxi.

170 RANDY. Gee... that's too bad.

CAROLE. (*Thinking.*) Yes. Isn't it?

MURIEL. (*Starts for the door.*) Well, I have to be getting ready now. I got a new black dress to wear. All the big names in Hollywood will be there. I want to look my best.

175 RANDY. (*Holding her.*) Uh... Muriel, you don't want to go to the services all alone!

MURIEL. Oh, I don't mind.

CAROLE. Look, Muriel, why don't we all go together? I mean... well, of course, Randy and I are invited, too, but we'd be glad to go along with you... as your family, you know. Well, after all, you're one of us, Muriel.

180 MURIEL. (*Appears to examine the idea.*) All of us go together, huh?

CAROLE. Of course.

RANDY. I'll drive us all there in the Cadillac.

MURIEL. (*This idea appeals to her.*) Oh... that'd be nice.

CAROLE. And then after the funeral, we'll take you to the
190 house.

MURIEL. (*Without sarcasm.*) I see.

RANDY. And you won't have to worry about coming back to
fix dinner.

CAROLE. Of course not.

195 MURIEL. Well, it suits me. I didn't want to have to call a
taxi. If you folks want to come along, fine and
dandy. You'll have to pardon me now. I have to
get into my new black dress.

RANDY. We'll meet you downstairs in fifteen minutes,
200 Muriel. (*Muriel exits. Carole and Randy both
jump into action, getting their clothes out of their
respective closets.*)

CAROLE. I told you we'd find a way.

RANDY. Yah. (*Taking a suit from closet.*) Say, this suit
205 could stand a pressing. Do I have to wear black?

CAROLE. Of course, honey. After all, it's a very solemn oc-
casion.

RANDY. Well, O. K.

CAROLE. I'll have to call Sandra. (*She picks up the telephone
210 and dials.*)

RANDY. It's going to look all right, isn't it? I mean, our go-
ing with Muriel.

CAROLE. Of course. You don't worry about things like that
at a funeral. (*Into the telephone.*) Sandra? Carole.
215 Darling, I'm awfully sorry but Randy and I won't

- 220 be able to come to your house after the funeral... well, you see, we have a duty to Muriel, our cook. She's the daughter of Scotty's old housekeeper... yes, Scotty practically raised her. And we feel that we should take her with us, and then, of course, we'll have to go to the home afterwards. Just family and a few of his very closest friends. We can't get out of it... you'll forgive us, won't you, darling? Oh, it's all going to be terribly sad.
- 225 RANDY. (*To himself, while dressing.*) I guess it'll look all right. After all, funerals are very democratic affairs.

CURTAIN

Word List

character / 'kærɪktə(r) / <i>n.</i>	(文学作品等的)人物、角色
promising / 'prɒmɪsɪŋ / <i>adj.</i>	有希望的,有前途的
abundant / ə 'bʌndənt / <i>adj.</i>	很多的,丰富的
minimum / 'mɪnɪməm / <i>n.</i>	极少量的,最小的
taste / teɪst / <i>n.</i>	品味
worriedly / wʌrɪdli / <i>adv.</i>	焦急地,焦虑地
robe / rəʊb / <i>n.</i>	睡袍
pace / peɪs / <i>vt. & vi.</i>	慢慢走;步行测量
buzzer / 'bʌzə(r) / <i>n.</i>	蜂音器
cook / kʊk / <i>n.</i>	厨师
light / laɪt / <i>vt.</i>	点燃
wink / wɪŋk / <i>n.</i>	瞬间
honey / 'hʌni / <i>n.</i>	亲爱的

slight /slaɪt/ <i>vt.</i>	蔑视(某人), 轻视, 怠慢
old-timer /ˌəʊld'taɪmə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	(口) 老资格的人; 老手
complimentary /ˌkɒmplɪ'mentəri/ <i>adj.</i>	夸奖的, 赞美的
afterthought /'aftəθɔ:t/ <i>n.</i>	后来添加的东西; 后来想到的事物
dial /'daɪəl/ <i>vi.</i>	拨号
oversight /'əʊvəsait/ <i>n.</i>	疏忽, 失察
overlook /ˌəʊvə'lʊk/ <i>vt.</i>	忽视
interview /'ɪntəvjʊ:/ <i>n.</i>	面试
humility /'hju:mɪləti/ <i>n.</i>	谦卑, 谦逊
outfit /'aʊtfɪt/ <i>n.</i>	(为某一目的所需要的) 服装
stunning /'stʌnɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	令人吃惊的
sleeve /sli:v/ <i>n.</i>	袖子
cocktail /'kɒkteɪl/ <i>n.</i>	鸡尾酒会
practically /'præktɪkəli/ <i>adv.</i>	实际上
infant /'ɪnfənt/ <i>n.</i>	幼儿, 婴儿
damn /dæm/ <i>int.</i>	该死
depressed /dɪ'prest/ <i>adj.</i>	抑郁的, 沮丧的
landmark /'lændmɑ:k/ <i>n.</i>	里程碑
humble /'hʌmbəl/ <i>adj.</i>	谦卑的
crash /kræʃ/ (= gatecrash) <i>vt.</i> & <i>vi.</i>	(未经邀请或无票) 擅自参加, 擅自出席
prominent /'prɒmɪnənt/ <i>adj.</i>	杰出的, 卓越的
pull /pʊl/ <i>n.</i>	费力
horrify /'hɒrɪfaɪ/ <i>vt.</i>	(口) 使惊讶; 使惊吓
maid /meɪd/ <i>n.</i>	女仆
tray /treɪ/ <i>n.</i>	托盘, 盘子
superiority /su:ˌpɪəri'ɒrəti, sju:-/ <i>n.</i>	优越性, 优势
canyon /'kænjən/ <i>n.</i>	峡谷
near-royalty /ˌniə'rɔɪəlti/ <i>n.</i>	皇亲

mama /mə'mɑ:/ <i>n.</i>	(口) 母亲, 妈妈
gee /dʒi:/ <i>int.</i>	哎呀
appeal /ə'pi:l/ <i>vi.</i>	对……有吸引力
sarcasm /'sɑ:kæzəm/ <i>n.</i>	讽刺, 挖苦, 嘲笑
yah /jɑ:/ <i>int.</i>	唷(表示嘲笑、轻蔑、不耐烦等)
folks /fəʊks/ <i>n.</i>	(复) 人们
you folks	各位, 大伙(友好、亲热的称呼)
dandy /'dændɪ/ <i>adj.</i>	(口) 极好的
exit /'eksɪt, 'egzɪt/ <i>vi.</i>	退出, 出去
respective /rɪ'spektɪv/ <i>adj.</i>	各自的
pressing /'presɪŋ/ <i>n.</i>	压平
solemn /'sɒləm/ <i>adj.</i>	庄严的, 严肃的
occasion /ə'keɪzən/ <i>n.</i>	场合
awfully /'ɔ:fəli/ <i>adv.</i>	非常地
housekeeper /'haʊski:pə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	管家
democratic /,demə'krætɪk/ <i>adj.</i>	大众的; 民主的
curtain /'kɜ:tɪn, -tɪn/ <i>n.</i>	幕; 落幕

Proper Names

William Inge /'wɪljəm 'ɪndʒ/	威廉·英奇
Randy Brooks /'rændɪ 'bruks/	兰蒂·布鲁克斯
Carole Mason /'kærəl 'meɪsən/	卡罗·梅森
Muriel /'mjuəriəl/	缪里尔
Scotty Woodrow /'skɒtɪ 'wʊdrəʊ/	斯格蒂·伍德罗
Sandra /'sændrə/	桑德拉
Don /dɒn/	唐
Debby /'debi/	德比

Chris / kɹɪs/	克里斯
Disneyland /'dɪznɪlənd/	迪斯尼乐园
Queen Elizabeth /'kwɪn ɪ'lizəbəθ/	伊丽莎白女王
Vicent /'vɪsənt/	文森特
Cadillac /'kædɪlæk/	凯迪拉克

Useful Expressions

come on the scene	到来;问世
in the interests of	为了……利益
mean... to	对……重要
start out	开始
get on with	相处
look one's best	显现最佳状态
appeal to	对……有吸引力
jump into action	立即行动
find a way (for sb.) to do sth.	想出办法做……
get out of	逃避

Wordy Study

face *vt. & vi.*

1. 面对, 面向

V + N

The teacher stood *facing the class*, holding a few sheets of paper in her hand.

My office *faces south*, so I get a lot of sunshine.

2. 面临(困难等而不得不设法解决);面对(某人等)

V + N; be -ed with

She is ready to *face all sorts of difficulty* in her new job.

That country *is now faced with* a shortage of food.

I don't know how to *face Lao Li* now that I've lost his favourite camera.

3. 正视,面对(现实等)

V + N

There's nothing to do but *face the fact* that we're not invited.

We have to *face the truth* that our products are not as good as theirs.

face *n.* 脸;表面;正面;外观,外表

Phrases:

face to face 面对面

face down / up 脸朝下/上

(keep) a straight face 一本正经,板着面孔

make / pull a (long) face at sb. 拉长脸(表示不高兴);做鬼脸

show sb. 's face 露面,出现

save / lose one's face 保住/丢面子

on the face of it 表面上看

call *vt. & vi.*

1. (大声)叫喊,呼叫

V; V + N;

Listen, someone *is calling* for help. Let's go and have a look.

She was walking along a river when she heard someone *calling her name*.

2. 打电话

V; V + N

I'll *call* again this afternoon.

Someone at the hospital *called the Red Cross office* in Brooklyn.

Next time you come to Beijing, please *call me*.

3. 把……称为,把……当成

V + N + N / adj.

My colleagues *call me Kelly*.

As a child, I *was always called "plump"*.

I promised myself that no one would ever *call me fat* again.

You *can't call it a social affair* exactly, but it's a social event.

We *cannot call ourselves Christians* and then deny safety to our friends.

4. 召来,唤来;召集

V + N; V + N + to do sth. ; V + N + N

She was so sick that someone *called a doctor*.

One of his friends rushed inside to *call an ambulance*.

He asked the doorman to *call him a taxi*.

5. Phrases:

call at (a place) 拜访(某人家里或某地)

call sth. off 取消

call on sb. 拜访某人

call on/upon sb. to do sth. 呼吁,号召;邀请,要求

call sb. back 召回,唤回;回某人电话;再打电话来

call for sb./sth. 大声呼叫;要求;去接某人;去拿某物

call sb. names 骂人

call *n.* 呼声,叫喊声;打电话;(别人打来的)电话;(短暂的)访问

lie *vi.* (lying, lay, lain)

1. (人或动物)躺,平卧,平放

V + prep. phrase

The man on the ship saw a strange object *lying on* the beach.
Lying in his coffin, Henry Ground was probably enjoying himself, too.

He picked up a newspaper which *was lying on* the floor .

2. 位于(某方向)

V + prep. phrase

Korea *lies to* the northeast of China.

My home village *lies between* Beijing and Tianjin.

3. 处于……状态

V + adj. / -ed; V + prep. phrase

The town *lay intact* after the earthquake.

When the police came, they found the old man *lying cold and dead* in bed.

The country's economy *lies in ruins* .

The letter *lay hidden* in the attic.

4. (事情、错误或责任等)在于;包含在;由……造成

V + in (doing) sth.

The problem *lies in* wrong policies.

The secret to happiness *lies in* the contribution towards the happiness of others.

5. Phrases:

leave things lying around / about 乱放东西

lie down 躺下

lie on one's back / side / stomach 仰卧 / 侧卧 / 俯卧

(注:lie vi. 撒谎,与此意无关,其现在分词、过去时和过去分词的形式为 lying, lied, lied.)

Notes on the Text

1. About the play: 本课课文与以往课文不同,是一微型独幕剧。微型独幕剧麻雀虽小,五脏俱全,具有多幕剧的特点。

1) 构成剧本的基本成分是台词——以对白(dialogue)为主,除对白还有独白和旁白——人物(character)以及舞台说明(stage direction)。剧本中的台词是剧本的主体,剧情的发展、人物的展现、剧本的主题思想全通过台词体现。台词比起实际生活中的谈话要精练;它来源于生活,但高于生活,是学习语言尤其是学习口语一个极好的途径。舞台说明除了说明人物活动的时间和空间之外,主要是对人物外部形体动作和内心情绪的提示。舞台说明用现在时态(一般现在时和现在进行时)。剧本开始和插在台词后面的舞台说明多用完整的句子,插在台词前和中间的舞台说明往往用短语或省略句。

2) 传统戏剧剧情的发展一般分为四个阶段,下面以本剧为例来分析这四个阶段。

(1) 开场(introduction)。介绍主要人物与矛盾冲突(conflict),矛盾冲突是剧本不可缺少的内容,剧情围绕矛盾冲突而发展。戏剧冲突包括人物之间的冲突、人物自身的内心冲突、人物与外界环境(社会或自然)的冲突等。本剧的矛盾冲突是兰蒂和卡罗急于在斯格蒂的葬礼上露面,而又迟迟没有收到邀请。

(2) 矛盾冲突的发展(development)。本剧中,男女主角看到与他们在好莱坞地位相似而同样与过世的大名星无深交的演员都已接到邀请,更为着急。且卡罗已经对别人撒谎说他们接到了邀请,他们如不出席葬礼,无法向朋友交代。因此他们一面继续想方设法弄到邀请,另一方面也在寻找不露面的借口。

(3) 高潮(climax)或称转机(turning point),即“山穷水尽疑无路,柳岸花明又一村”。缪里尔道出了她与大名星的关系,斯格蒂的遗孀不仅邀她出席葬礼,还邀请她事后去他的家里,并允许她带上自己的家人。这一信息给男女主角带来了希望,夫妇不约而同开始在缪里尔身上打主意。

(4) 结局(resolution)。矛盾冲突得以解决。兰蒂与卡罗决定以缪里尔家人身份参加一切活动,这不仅解决他们的难题,还成为他们炫耀自己的资本。

- 3) 戏剧一般分为三大类悲剧(tragedy)、喜剧(comedy)和正剧(又称悲喜剧 tragicomedy)。

本剧属戏剧类的讽刺喜剧。这类喜剧创作中常利用偶然事件或巧合和夸张的手法来讽刺社会上的丑恶事物或人们身上的一些不良风气。

2. **who have been married only a short time and whose careers are still in the promising stage:** 俩人结婚不久,在事业上大有希望,但仍然处于发展阶段。

3. **There is abundant luxury in the room but a minimum of taste:** 房间布置相当豪华,但品味很不高雅。

4. **he presses the buzzer on the house phone and speaks to the cook:** 他按了按家庭内部电话的蜂音器对厨师说话。

5. **There's nothing to do but face the fact that we're not invited:** 我们毫无办法,只有面对没有邀请我们这个现实。

there is / was nothing to do but do sth., there is / was nothing for it but to do sth.: 除了……没有别的办法,又如:

Their car broke down in the wilderness. *There was nothing to do but wait for help to arrive.*

他们的车在荒原抛锚,除了等救援没有别的办法。

There is nothing to do but pay up immediately.

除了立即还清欠款之外别无选择。

6. **We're both pretty new in pictures. It's not as though we were old-timers who had worked with Scotty:** 在电影界我们俩人都还是新手,对我们不可能像对和斯格蒂一起共过事的老手那样。(这里兰蒂·布鲁克斯劝妻子卡罗·梅森想开点,没有邀请他们也有一定的道理,不能指望人们对他们像对好莱坞资深演员那样。)

it's (not) as though / if: 情况就好像(或不可能像)……一样,又如:

It's as if I were a guest while they were hosts.

事情弄得好像他们是主人我反而是客人似的。(我是主人,他们喧宾夺主。)

The manager is very disappointed with their performance. It's not as if they were new hands.

经理对他们的表现很不满意,他们又不是新手。(如是新手尚可原谅。)

7. **We've been through all this before:** 这些事我们已讨论过了!

8. **And I may never have worked with Scotty, but I did meet him once, and he danced with me at a party:** 我确实从来没有和斯格蒂共过事,不过我和他有一面之交,在一次聚会上他还与我跳过舞。

这里 may 用来表示承认某件事情是事实,接着 but 介绍与此相左的事实或论点,又如:

I may have never been without a job, but I do understand how laid-off workers feel.

我确实是从来没有失过业,但是我能理解下岗工人们的心情。

Cooking may be boring, but it can be a delightful thing to do at times.

做饭是件乏味的事,不过有时候也可以成为一件愉快的事。

Some students may think the training a waste of time, but

later they'll find it very useful.

有一些学生认为这种训练是浪费时间,不过以后他们会发现很有用。

9. **He was very nice to me, too, and said some very complimentary things:** 他对我很客气,还说了些赞扬我的话。

10. **I met his wife, too. (An afterthought.) I didn't much like her:** 我还见过他的夫人。(然后补充说)我不太喜欢她。

11. **I didn't have to say that... if you ask me, it showed a lot of humility on my part to say a thing like that when, after all, I've got a career of my own to consider...**

if you ask me: in my opinion(口语)我认为,依我看(强调以下所说只是个人意见),又如:

If you ask me, they aren't reliable partners.

我个人认为,他们不是可靠的合作者。

The book is all trash, if you ask me.

我认为这本书里说的全是陈词滥调。

12. **He couldn't get us an invitation to Disneyland:** 这么简单的事情他哪能办成呀。(注意卡罗的挖苦口气。)

an invitation to Disneyland: one of the easiest things to do 再简单不过的事情。

Disneyland: 迪斯尼乐园,在美国的洛杉矶近郊,是美国动画片制作家及制片人沃尔特·迪斯尼(Walter Disney)创建的游乐园。其后迪斯尼公司陆续在佛罗里达州以及日本、法国等地建立同样的游乐园,下一个迪斯尼乐园将建于香港。

这里 couldn't 表示“不可能”。

13. **Oh yes! Half the people going, I bet, have never met him:** 是啊,我敢肯定,去的人当中有一半根本就没见过他。(这里 Oh, yes! 是反话,针对兰蒂·布鲁克斯前面所提经纪人说只有斯格蒂最亲密的朋友才被邀请参加葬礼。)

going: who are going to the funeral.

I bet / I'll bet / you can bet (that): I'm certain (that)(口语)我敢肯定,又如:

I *bet* she won't take the job. The salary is far from what she expects.

我肯定她不会接受这份工作,薪水与她所期望的相距太远了。

You *can bet* they'll come on time.

我敢肯定他们会准时来的。

这里为了突出卡罗所肯定的具体内容,将 I bet 作为插入语放到句子中间。

14. Now, if we don't get an invitation, I'll have to lie again and say we came down with food poisoning, or something: 现在我们要还是收不到请帖,我还得再撒一次谎,说我们食物中毒或是得了别的什么病。

come down with: become ill with 得了……病,又如:

The whole family *came down with* the flu and had to stay in bed.

他们全家都患了流感,都卧床不起。

or something/somebody/somewhere: 用来表示不敢确定是什么、是何人或干什么的以及在何处,又如:

The title of the novel is *Unforgettable Mr. Johnson* or *Remarkable Mr. Johnson*, or something.

小说的书名是《难忘的约翰逊先生》,或者是《杰出的约翰逊先生》,还是什么的。

15. Mark played Scotty's son in a picture once: 马克曾经在一部电影里扮演斯格蒂的儿子。

play (the part of) . . . : 扮演某一角色,又如:

Jim *played* (*the part of*) Hamlet several times.

吉姆扮演哈姆雷特有好几次了。

Little Jenny doesn't want *to play the witch*; she'd like to

play the fairy.

小詹妮不愿扮演巫婆,她想演仙女。

16. **A long time ago, before either of us came on the scene:** 很久以前,那时我们俩还没有出道。

come / appear / arrive on the scene: appear and begin to take part in an activity(口语)到场;登场;到来;出生,又如:

The university has changed a lot since the new president *came on the scene*.

自从新校长上任以来这所大学变化很大。

That happened long before you people *came on the scene*.

这是你们这些人出生之前很久以前发生的事。

17. **That means Mark's a little older than he admits:** 这就是说马克的年龄比他自己说的要大。

older than he admits: older than he admits he is.

18. **The part was very young, practically an infant:** 那个角色年龄很小,实际上是个婴儿。

19. **Just the same, I'll bet Mark's thirty:** 再小也一样,我敢肯定马克有 30 岁了。(角色的年龄再小,也改变不了我的看法,我仍然认为他实际年龄要大些。)

all / just the same: in spite of this 仍然,依然,照样,又如:

He may have done some stupid things, but we respect him *just the same*.

他做过蠢事这不假,但我们照样尊敬他。

We didn't understand the jokes, but laughed with all others *all the same*.

那些笑话我们根本不懂,我们还是照样和大家一起放声大笑。

20. (**A little shocked.**) **She's not giving a party!:** (感到惊讶)她不是在搞什么聚会吧!(兰蒂觉得紧接着葬礼之后,桑德拉就搞这种社交性的聚会很不妥当。)

此句是一个用陈述句的形式表达的疑问句(这里既可用惊叹号“!”,也可用问号“?”,也可用“?!”。)用来落实说话人所说的
事实或情况是否属实,如说话人觉得会得到肯定的回答,就用肯定句,反之就用否定句,又如:

—You *don't mean* you're leaving for good?

你不是一去不复返吧?

—Of course *not*. I surely will return after the job is done.

当然不是,工作一完我就回来。

—You *admitted* having cheated in examinations?

你承认考试作弊了?

—Yes.

是的。

21. No. She just invited some friends to come in afterwards to have a few drinks and talk about what a great guy Scotty was, and everything: 不是社交聚会。她只不过邀请了几个朋友在事完之后来喝点饮料,一起聊聊斯格蒂那些了不起的事迹,还有别的什么等等。

and everything: 其他等等,又如:

They talk about their work, dreams *and everything*.

他们俩常在一起谈论各自的工作、梦想以及其他事情。

She calls her parents every evening to see how they are *and everything*.

她每天晚上给父母打电话,问问他们怎么样以及其他等等。

22. After all, Scotty Woodrow was practically a landmark, or something. Think of it. He's been a star for forty years: 斯格蒂·伍德罗实际上是个里程碑式的人物。想想看,他的明星地位竟保持了 40 年。

after all: 毕竟(通常用于句首,导出原因),又如:

How can we expect Jim to do so much? *After all* he's only

我们怎么能要求吉姆做那么多的事？他毕竟只有 15 岁。

I thought you might find what's wrong with the PC. *After all* you've worked with Legend.

我还以为你能查出这台微机的毛病，你毕竟还在联想集团干过。

(come to) think of it: 真的，想想看，想起来了(用来表示突然回忆起或记起一件事)，又如：

Come to think of it, we haven't seen Jack for twenty years.
真的，我们有 20 年没有见到杰克了。

Think of it, I've never been to the Great Wall even after living in Beijing for three years.

真的，我在北京住了 3 年居然没有去过长城。

Come to think of it, he did say that he wasn't coming back for supper.

想起来了，他确实说过他不回来吃晚饭了。

23. **It makes me very humble to think of a guy like Scotty:** 想起斯格蒂这样的人，我感到自己很渺小。

24. **You know we *could* crash:** 我们可以未经邀请擅自出席。

you know 口头上用来强调下面要讲的话，或引起人们对下面要讲的话的注意。

crash: = gatecrash, go to a party or other social event without being invited 未经邀请擅自出席。(在西方这是有失身份的事。)

25. **Who'd know the difference?:** 谁会知道内情？(谁会看出我们没有被邀请?)

26. **How would we feel afterwards, when we had to shake hands with Mrs. Woodrow?:** 就算我们毫不脸红地进了大门，可是之后我们不得不和伍德罗太太握手时不觉得心虚吗？

此句是一修辞性疑问句，隐含一个虚拟条件句 if we crashed.

27. **Everyone would just take it for granted we'd been invited. I**

mean, we're both just as prominent as Sandra and Don, or any of the others: 大家都会认为我们当然是应邀而来,我是说,咱们俩跟桑德拉和唐,或是任何其他他人比,与他们一样出众。

I mean 用来引出解释上句所说内容的理由的句子,又如:

I didn't know our meeting had been put off until next week. *I mean*, nobody told me.

我不知道我们的会议已经推迟到下周,没有人告诉我呀!

I mean 也可用来纠正刚说过的话,或者把已经说过的话说得更明确些。如:

The chairman is leaving for Nanning tomorrow—I *mean* for Nanjing.

主任明天动身去南宁,不,我是说是去南京。

The new library is to open on Tuesday—I *mean* next Tuesday.

新图书馆定于星期二开馆,是下星期二。

28. **If you ask me, it'd be a lot better to crash than not to be seen at...well, you can't call it a social *affair* exactly, but it's a social *event*. Anyway, *everyone* will be there. *Everyone*:** 我认为不请自到比根本不露面要强……呃,这可不是一般的社交活动,而是重大的社交事件,重要人物都会出席,都会的。(这里卡罗直接说明了为什么他们急于出席这次葬礼的目的主要是“露面”,而不是为了对大明星的去世表示哀悼。她的话也点出了剧名所包含的内容。)

it'd be a lot better to...not to be seen at: it would be much better to...than not to be seen at the funeral.

to crash...than not to be seen at...是主语。

if you ask me: in my opinion(见第 11 条注释)。

注意斜体词的重读;半个词斜体,就是强调只重读那一半。

29. **I don't know why the studio couldn't have managed it for us with a little pull:** 我真不明白为什么电影制片厂不努点儿力把

事情办妥。

30. They should realize it's in the best interests of my career to be seen there, and my career means as much to them as it does to me: 他们应该认识到在那个场合露面对我的事业非常有利,而我的事业对他们和我一样重要。

注意此句的结构:它由两个并列子句组成,它们本身又都是复合句。第一个子句 they should realize... to be seen there 带有宾语从句 it's in the best interests... to be seen there, 其中不定式 to be seen there 是主语;第二个子句中有一比较从句 as it does to me 修饰 means as much, it 代表 my career, does 代表 means。

in the (best) interest(s) of: 对……(极为)有利,为了……的最大利益,又如:

We expect you to act *in the best interests of* our country in the talks concerning her entry into the WTO.

我们期望你在有关我国加入 WTO 的谈判中为维护我国最大利益行事。

In the best interests of your children, you should keep fit.

为了孩子的最大利益,你应该保持身体健康。

31. Same here: 这话对我也适用。(我的露面对他们和对我的事业一样有利。)

same here: (口语) 这话对我也适用;我也这么认为;我也是如此,又如:

—This is my first visit to China.

这是我第一次到中国来。

—Same here.

我也是第一次。

—I think that film is awful.

我觉得那部电影糟透了。

—Same here.

我也这么认为。

—I'm very disappointed with the result of the football match.

我对这场足球赛的结果感到非常失望。

—Same here.

我也是。

32. **Just a slight case so you could tell them with a straight face:** 仅是轻微的食物中毒,这样你就可以理直气壮地告诉他们。(即你不是撒谎,而是真的有病。)

keep / with a straight face: 板着面孔,不露笑容,又如:

How Henry managed to *keep a straight face*, I'll never know.

亨利怎么能一本正经地板着面孔,我永远也不会明白。

33. **There is a slight air of superiority about her now. Randy and Carole look at her with sudden surprise:** 她稍微流露出一种优越感,兰蒂和卡罗突然感到惊讶。

34. **My mother worked for him when he was starting out in the business:** 他刚开始演电影时我母亲给他干活。

start out: 开始从事工作,开始立业,又如:

Andrew Carnegie started out as a bobbin boy in a cotton factory.

安德鲁·卡耐基开始工作时是在一家棉纺厂当线轴工。

Mark Twain *started out* working on a boat sailing up and down the Mississippi.

马克·吐温开始是在航行于密西西比河的一条船上工作。

35. **She has thus established herself as near-royalty to Randy and Carole:** 这样,对兰蒂和卡罗来说,她几乎成了皇室成员。

royalty: 皇亲国戚。near: 近亲。

36. **Mrs. Woodrow's secretary said I could bring my family, but now that Vincent has left me and taken the car, I'll have to take a taxi:** 伍德罗太太的秘书说我可以带家里的人一起来,可是这会儿文森特离开了我,车也让他带走了,我只好打车了。(文

森特可能是缪里尔的丈夫或男友,已经抛弃了她。)

37. **Well, I have to be getting ready now... All the big names in Hollywood will be there. I want to look my best:** 呃,我得去准备了……好莱坞的大人物都要去,我要尽量打扮得漂亮点。

have to be getting ready 是现在进行时,表示马上就要做某事,又如:

It's getting late. I *must be going* now.

不早了,我该走了。

big names: famous people 名人。

look one's best: look as smart, attractive, beautiful, healthy, tidy, etc. as possible 尽量显得漂亮、健康、整洁等,又如:

The children *look their best* on the traditional festival.

在那个传统的节日里,孩子们各个精神极了。

The park *looks its best* in autumn when the leaves turn red, yellow and brown.

秋天树叶变成红色、黄色和褐色,那时这个公园最美。

38. **Uh...Muriel, you don't want to go to the services all alone!:**

呃,缪里尔你不愿意自己一个人去参加葬礼吧?

这也是一个用陈述句的形式表达的疑问句,详见第20条注释。

39. **Oh, I don't mind:** 哦,我到不在乎(一个人独自去)。

I don't mind: I don't mind going there all alone.

40. **Look, Muriel, why don't we all go together? I mean... well, of course, Randy and I are invited, too, but we'd be glad to go along with you... as your family, you know. Well, after all, you're one of us, Muriel:** 我说缪里尔,我们干嘛不一起去呢?我是说……,我和兰蒂当然也接到了请帖,不过我们也很高兴和你一起去……作为你的家人。呃,缪里尔,毕竟你也算是我们家里的人。(注意,他们宁愿以女佣的家人身份去参加,也要露这个面,所以说说话时吞吞吐吐,不好意思。)

Why don't we do...? 用来提出建议,又如:

Why don't we all come to my office and talk at length about the matter?

咱们还是都到我的办公室好好谈谈这个问题吧!

I'm tired. Why don't we trim the Christmas tree tomorrow?

我累了。我们明天再装饰圣诞树吧!

go along with sb. as...: 以……的身份和……一起去……。

这里 after all 用来导出一些理由,解释刚刚说过的话,又如:

Why don't we ask Xiao Liu to take the matter to the president? After all, she's worked with him for two years.

请小刘去和校长谈这件事吧,她毕竟已和校长共事过两年。

41. *Appears to examine the idea*: 看起来好像在考虑这个建议。

42. *I'll drive us all there in the Cadillac*: 我开凯迪拉克把咱们三个一起拉去。

Cadillac: 凯迪拉克牌轿车(美国生产的名牌豪华轿车)。兰蒂和卡罗可能不止一辆轿车,名牌的和一般的,不同场合用不同的轿车。

43. *This idea appeals to her*: 这个主意投合她之所好。

appeal to sb.: be attractive or interesting to sb. 对……有吸引力;投其所好,又如:

Such forms of entertainment as disco and karaoke appeal only to young people.

像迪斯科和卡拉 OK 这种形式的娱乐只对年轻人有吸引力。

It is almost impossible to make a TV program appeal to viewers of all ages.

要使一个电视节目同时吸引不同年龄的观众几乎是不可能的。

44. *Well, it suits me*: 哦,这倒对我挺合适的。

suit sb.: be convenient for / acceptable to sb. 对……合适;能被……接受,又如:

It'll suit me very well if we set off at 8 in the morning.

早上 8 点出发对我挺合适的。

This arrangement *suits us* perfectly.

这一安排对我来说太合适了。

45. **Carole and Randy both jump into action, getting their clothes out of their respective closets:** 卡罗和兰蒂赶紧行动起来,从他们各自的衣橱里拿出衣服。

jump into action: 赶紧行动。注意 jump 在下列两个短语中的意思:

jump to one's feet 一下子跳起来(原来坐着或躺着)

jump to a conclusion 轻率下结论

46. **Say, this suit could stand a pressing:** 喂,这身西服压一压才好。
say *int.*: (美)喂;哎呀。用来引起别人的注意,有时也表示惊讶。

stand *vt.*: 经受,遭受,经得起,又如:

Their friendship *has stood* the test of time.

他们的友谊经受了时间的考验。

A number of old people *could not stand* the severe cold, and returned to the south.

一部分老人受不了严寒而回到南方。

47. **It's going to look all right, isn't it? I mean, our going with Muriel:** 这么做合适吗?我是说我们和缪里尔一起去不失身份吧。(兰蒂突然又感到,以自己女佣家人身份去参加这样的活动,是否有失身份。)

48. **Scotty practically raised her:** 可以说是斯格蒂把她养大的。

49. **And we feel that we should take her with us, and then, of course, we'll have to go to the home afterwards. Just family and a few of his very closest friends. We can't get out of it...**
我们感到我们应该让她跟我们一起去,自然随后我们就去他家里,是家里的人和他最亲近的朋友聚一下。这件事我们是推卸不了的……(注意卡罗的口气与她 and 缪里尔谈此事的口气完全

不一样。对缪里尔说她和兰蒂以她的家人身份出席葬礼,此刻她却说是她和兰蒂带缪里尔去。明明是她死皮赖脸地要和缪里尔一起去,现在却说带缪里尔去是他们不可推卸的责任。)

get out of (doing) sth.: avoid a responsibility or duty 推卸责任,又如:

The couple decided to spend the weekend in a hotel, just to *get out of* housework.

这对夫妇决定去旅馆过周末,为的是摆脱一下家务。

If you go on trying *to get out of* paying taxes, you'll sooner or later get into trouble.

你要是继续想方设法逃税,你早晚会受到惩罚的。

50. (*To himself, while dressing.*) I guess it'll look all right. After all, funerals are very democratic affairs: (边穿衣服边自言自语)我觉得这件事没有什么不妥之处,葬礼毕竟是件不注重阶级区别的社交活动。(兰蒂始终感到以佣人家属的身份去参加引人注目的葬礼有点失身份,他最后自嘲地找到了一个理由。)
- democratic: paying no or little attention to class divisions based on birth or wealth 不注重或几乎不注重因出身和财产多少而产生的阶级差别。

Work on the Text

1. Answer these questions.

- 1) Who are Randy Brooks and Carole Mason? What do you learn about their bedroom?
- 2) What problem is bothering the couple? Who was Scotty Woodrow? When and where is his funeral to be held? Why is it that the couple are anxious to go to the services?
- 3) How does Randy feel about their not being invited? How

does he account for it? Why wasn't Carole convinced by his argument?

- 4) Who is Mike? Why does Randy phone him? How does he try to make Mike find a way to get them invited?
- 5) What else worries Carole? Why? Who is Sandra? What has she asked Carole to do? What excuse does Carole want to give for not going to the funeral?
- 6) What does Carole suggest they do? What's her argument? Why doesn't Randy agree?
- 7) Why do the couple complain about their studio?
- 8) Who comes in while the couple are desperately trying to find a way out? What does she come for besides bringing in their breakfast?
- 9) How come Muriel is not only invited to the services, but also to the house afterwards? What does she say about her connection with this big star? Who else did Mrs. Woodrow's secretary say she could bring with her?
- 10) What idea does Carole hit upon? How does she explain her suggestion to Muriel? Why does the idea appeal to Muriel?
- 11) How does Carole "apologize" to Sandra for not being able to go to her house after the funeral? In what way does her apology sound more like boasting?
- 12) Do you think Randy feels at ease about going as their maid's family? How does he try to convince himself that it's OK?

2. Look up the following words in an English-English dictionary before looking at the Word List. (You have to decide their part of speech first.)

taste (L. 6) old-timer (L. 26) afterthought (L. 36) oversight (L. 45) landmark (L. 91) crash (L. 100)

3. Paraphrase the following.

- 1) There's abundant luxury in the room but a minimum of taste. (L.4—5)
- 2) How would we feel afterwards, when we had to shake hands with Mrs. Woodrow? (L.103—104)
- 3) ...you can't call it a social *affair* exactly, but it's a social *event*. (L.113—114)
- 4) They should realize it's in the best interests of my career to be seen there, and my career means as much to them as it does to me. (L. 121—123)
- 5) A little rotten meat would do it. (L. 128)
- 6) I guess it'll look all right. After all, funerals are very democratic affairs. (L.225—227)

4. Do any of the following things after you've completed the lesson.

- 1) Read or put on the play with two others.
- 2) Retell what happens in the play as (1)Randy Brooks, (2) Carole Mason, or (3)Muriel.
- 3) Discuss: What do you learn from this play about the American show business? What is the most important thing for a beginning actor/actress to succeed: acting ability, connections, publicity, determination, looks, taste and personality?

5. Write a synopsis of the play.

You can use this outline:

- 1) Who are Randy and Carole?
- 2) What problem is troubling them? Why is it a big problem for

them?

- 3) How do they try to solve the problem? How is it finally solved? How do they feel about the solution?

Vocabulary Exercises

1. Complete the following sentences with words formed in the same way as in the examples, paying attention to the verb form.

Examples:

forearm 前臂 forefather 祖先 foreword 前言
foretell 预言 foresee 预见 forefoot 前足
(fore- + 名词 / 动词 → 名词 / 动词)

noun: head finger sight verb: shadow warn

- 1) The dark heavy clouds _____ a storm.
- 2) They have been _____ of the dangers of mountain-climbing.
- 3) The family had the _____ to build a shelter.
- 4) It is generally believed that people with a big _____ are clever.
- 5) He dipped his _____ into a glass of wine to feel it.

2. Translate the following into English.

- 1) Use the verb + noun or adj. + noun collocation.

面对事实	收到请柬	接受邀请	举办聚会
找出办法	食物中毒	穿上衣服	抚养孩子
发酸的牛奶	变质的鸡蛋	名人	腐肉

2) Use the “useful expressions”.

- (1) 电脑问世以来,世界发生了巨大变化。
- (2) 为了本国儿童的利益,她愿做任何事情。
- (3) 我的事业对我来说十分宝贵。
- (4) 玛丽 16 岁就开始当护士。
- (5) 清洁工努力同在他工作区居住的人们搞好关系。
- (6) 年轻姑娘不化妆时才显得最美。
- (7) 这个电视节目风格活泼,很受年轻人的欢迎。
- (8) 部队一接到命令,立即开始行动。
- (9) 巴德先生找到了一个好办法,能让警察轻易识别出那个通缉犯——把他的头发染成绿色。
- (10) 我要是能不去参加那个乏味的晚宴就好了。

3) Use *face*, *call* and *lie*.

- (1) 那所学校面对着一个美丽的公园。
- (2) 我们发现他坐在椅子上打盹,他大腿上有一本书敞开着。
- (3) 那个国家的政府面临着高失业率要应付。
- (4) 我正在看一封家信,突然听到有人从外面叫我。
- (5) 我决不会把那种事称为英雄行为。
- (6) 我们的国家男子足球队必须面对再次被挤出奥运会的现实。
- (7) 不管在何处,他每周都至少要给父母亲打一次电话。
- (8) 我觉得把一位值得尊敬的教授称为“老科布尔”不太好。
- (9) 他们不幸的婚姻的症结在于互相缺乏信任。
- (10) 他们的武器工厂坐落在群山峻岭之中。

3. Complete the following sentences.

1) Put suitable prepositions or adverbs in the blanks.

- (1) _____ its first stage, the reform of SOEs

- (state-owned enterprises) could be called successful.
- (2) Tell me what has happened to Joe as soon as you find _____.
 - (3) Two students didn't come to class yesterday because they had both come _____ the flu.
 - (4) Some writer could write a novel about what the old man has gone _____ all these years.
 - (5) They called the police immediately, but they didn't come _____ the scene _____ 40 minutes later.
 - (6) You could have done better _____ a little pull.
 - (7) _____ various occasions, Chinese leaders have made it clear _____ the world that she is a developing country, and that she should enter the World Trade Organization as such.
 - (8) His friends are wondering why he can never get _____ with his colleagues.
 - (9) Students generally hate exams, but they can't get _____ them.
 - (10) Her boss told her to take a week _____ before the big job.
 - (11) Here I was, face _____ face with a situation that could very well become an incident of prejudice and chauvinism caused by the unjust policy of our society today.
 - (12) On account of the worsening situation at home, the president had to call _____ his visit to France.
 - (13) The strength of a nation lies _____ its people.
 - (14) The UN Security Council called _____ peace in

Kashmir.

- (15) China will be faced _____ intense competition from the big multinationals when she enters WTO.

2) Choose the correct word from the brackets.

- (1) She seemed _____ satisfied with the result.
(rather, pretty)
- (2) I'm not _____ to eat any milk products.
(allowed, let)
- (3) Mr. Dodd _____ to say he was ill. (dialed, telephoned)
- (4) We were _____ to hear that she had been murdered. (horrified, frightened)
- (5) We _____ their team by ten points. (beat, defeated)

4. Choose the best word for each blank.

How many of you drink cola? Nearly everybody does. Did you know that cola started (1) _____ (off, on, out, up) not as a soft drink but as a cure for headaches (2) _____ (away, back, before, far) in the late 1800s? John S. Pamberton, a druggist from Atlanta, had experimented for many months trying to find a cure for the (3) _____ (average, common, general, usual) headache. He worked in his backyard, mixing and heating different (4) _____ (combinations, groups, mixing, piles) of oils and flavours until he found one that seemed (5) _____ (hopeful, promising, likely, prospective). Pamberton bottled the mixture and began selling it in drugstores as a concentrated syrup (浓缩糖浆) that the customer had to mix with water before drinking. Cola's transformation from a medicinal syrup to a carbonated soft drink (碳酸软饮料) (6) _____

(appeared, arrived, came, happened) about quite by (7) _____ (accident, fortune, incident, luck). One day, a customer came into a drugstore (8) _____ (complaining, crying, speaking, telling) of a headache and asked for a bottle of cola syrup. He wanted to take it right (9) _____ (away, now, soon, then). So he asked the clerk to mix the medicine while he waited. The clerk, instead of walking to the other end of the counter to get (10) _____ (clean, clear, plain, pure) water, suggested mixing the syrup with soda water. The customer agreed, and after drinking it, remarked how good it tasted. The clerk continued offering the mix, and carbonated cola (11) _____ (advanced, became, grew, progressed) in popularity. Today carbonated colas are sold in most countries around the world. And although they no longer contain the ingredients used to kill headaches, they are still very (12) _____ (curing, refreshing, relaxing, treating).

Grammar & Usage

Revision

1. Complete the following sentences with the correct choice.

- 1) A number of students _____ (are, is) taking a walk in the playground.
- 2) The number of students taking business courses _____ (are, is) increasing.
- 3) Thirty dollars _____ (are, is) not a lot of money.
- 4) A basket of flowers _____ (cost, costs) a big sum of money.
- 5) Three weeks _____ (are, is) far from enough for this job.
- 6) Waiting for a bus for two hours _____ (are, is) more than I

can bear.

- 7) The rich _____ (are, is) not necessarily happy.
- 8) One-fourth of the students _____ (have, has) got this year's scholarship.
- 9) All but one child _____ (have, has) signed up for the outing.
- 10) The old man, with his three sons, _____ (live, lives) in this small room.
- 11) Not only clothes but also food _____ (have, has) been given to the people who lost their homes in the flood.
- 12) Bread and cheese _____ (do, does) not appeal to me.
- 13) Raising dogs and other big animals _____ (are, is) not allowed in some cities.
- 14) Most of the orange juice produced in this factory _____ (is, are) contaminated (受到污染).
- 15) Early to bed and early to rise _____ (make, makes) a person healthy, wealthy and wise.

2. Complete the following sentences using tag questions.

- 1) It isn't as hot today as it was yesterday, _____?
- 2) David should take the medicine just as the doctor's suggested, _____?
- 3) You'd like to see the film tonight, _____?
- 4) We'd better not go in now, _____?
- 5) You'd rather not go to the meeting, _____?
- 6) It looks as if it's going to rain, _____?
- 7) Someone has turned on the TV, _____?
- 8) Everything goes well with him, _____?
- 9) Let's have a game of tennis, _____?
- 10) Nothing's wrong with the car, _____?

3. Complete these sentence with the best choice.

- 1) If he had been able to live 5 years longer, he _____ more in his field.
A. achieved B. would achieve
C. must have achieved D. would have achieved
- 2) I would _____ alone to think about these problems.
A. like to be left B. have liked to be left
C. like to leave D. have liked to leave
- 3) "Why didn't you tell me this before?" "I _____ but I didn't have the chance."
A. would B. would have
C. would rather D. could
- 4) You _____ live for ten days without food; without water you _____ die in less than a week.
A. may, might B. would, should
C. might, would D. should, might
- 5) Without trees our world _____ a much drier place.
A. is B. will be
C. would be D. must be
- 6) I didn't know your telephone number; otherwise I _____.
A. would have called B. would call
C. called D. should call
- 7) I would have gone with you, but I _____ too tired.
A. was B. had been
C. must be D. must have been
- 8) It was unkind of you to say that; you really _____ so.
A. mustn't do B. needn't do
C. mustn't have done D. shouldn't have done
- 9) We _____ better under more favourable conditions.

- A. could do B. should do
 C. must have done D. could have done
- 10) But for the storm we _____ earlier.
 A. arrived B. had arrived
 C. would have arrived D. should arrive

4. Complete these sentences with the best choice.

- 1) I didn't buy any of the books there because I found _____ of them really interesting.
 A. none B. no one
 C. either D. neither
- 2) The old couple have three sons: _____ works here.
 A. none of whom B. neither of them
 C. none of them D. either of whom
- 3) There are two computers in the office, but _____ is working.
 A. either of them B. neither of them
 C. none of them D. neither of which
- 4) I don't think _____ of them is in the classroom.
 A. all B. both
 C. either D. neither
- 5) I've heard both sides of the story, and I don't believe _____.
 A. any B. either
 C. neither D. any one
- 6) If you run after two hares, you will catch _____.
 A. either B. none
 C. both D. neither
- 7) On _____ side of the street, we can see palm trees.
 A. neither B. every

- C. either D. both
- 8) Tom, Jack and Fred _____ reported having seen UFOs.
A. each B. all of them
C. either D. neither
- 9) _____ of the three tourists is familiar with the city.
A. Some B. None
C. Neither D. Either
- 10) My sister and I have seen the film, but _____ of us remember what it's all about.
A. neither B. either
C. none D. both

5. Translate the following sentences into English.

- 1) 浪费时间就等于浪费生命。
- 2) 保护与我们同在地球上的生灵在某种程度上就是保持生态平衡(keep the balance of nature)。
- 3) 所有家长都希望自己的孩子成为对社会有用的成员。
- 4) 那些年他所做的一切就是找出治愈那个怪病的办法。
- 5) 你尽快把你的坏牙拔掉,越快对你的健康越有利。
- 6) 他觉得什么东西落到了他头上,后来发生了什么事就不知道了。
- 7) 只要你在,请随时向我们报告那个国家所发生的一切。
- 8) 你怎么能要求(expect)一个6岁的孩子一上午坐在计算机旁学习也不休息一下?
- 9) 我警告过你别卷入这种事情,对吗?
- 10) 我的梦想就是有朝一日去西藏看看。

6. Put the correct form of the verbs in the blanks.

- 1) We are living in the age of chemicals. Sometimes it _____
(seem) that everything — from the frames of our glasses to

the fillings in our teeth — _____ (make) of synthetics.
This _____ (be) the word _____ (use) to describe
man-made or artificial products.

- 2) The desire _____ (improve) on nature brings us to the
laboratory. If nature _____ (not provide) something we
want, let us _____ (make) it ourselves.
- 3) Every hospital provides beds for those _____ (need) to
stay in for treatment. Those people _____ (know) as in-
patients.
- 4) The tide was noticed for centuries, but no one _____
(know) what _____ (cause) it. Then Isaac Newton
_____ (discover) the reason for it. He _____ (ex-
plain) that it _____ (cause) by the force of attraction
between bodies in the universe.
- 5) Looking back into history, we can find two main reasons for
the development of multinationals. Firstly, when companies
_____ (find) that their home markets _____ (be-
come) saturated (饱和), they _____ (realize) they
_____ (can increase) profits by _____ (set up) sub-
sidiaries (子公司) abroad.

7. Translate the following sentences into English using *more* or *most*.

- 1) 你别在意他的话,那不过是一个玩笑罢了。
- 2) 校长的这次欧洲之行不光是观光度假。
- 3) 他不是银行家,也不是商人,他是一位经济学家。
- 4) 上海最近几年完全变了样,这座城市给我的印象好极了。
- 5) 看到他现在这个样子,与其说我难过,还不如说我生气。
- 6) 看到自己的国家强盛起来是最让人高兴的。

Vocabulary List

A

- abandon (L1) *v.* 放弃;抛弃
abolish (L11) *vt.* 废除;消除
abrupt (L3) *adj.* 突然的
abruptly (L13) *adv.* 突然地
absent-minded (L6) *adj.* 心不在焉的
abundant (L16) *adj.* 很多的,丰富的
academic (L12) *adj.* 学术的
accelerate (L2) *v.* 加速
accompany (L6) *vt.* 伴随
accomplishment (L2) *n.* 成就
account (L3) *vi.* 解释,说明(常与 for 连用)
(L11) *n.* 账目,账
accumulate (L10) *v.* 积累
accuse (L15) *vt.* 控告,告发
accustom (L6) *vt.* 使习惯于
achievement (L2) *n.* 成就,成绩
achiever (L2) *n.* 成功者
acute (L3) *adj.* 敏感的
adapt (L6) *vt.* 使适应
additional (L15) *adj.* 额外的,另外的
adjust (L6) *vt.* 调整
adjustment (L3) *n.* 调整
administer (L15) *vt.* 执行,实施
adopt (L14) *vt.* 收养

adrift (L4) *adv.* (船等)失去控制而随风浪漂流
 adviser (L15) *n.* 顾问,建议者
 affect (L6) *vt.* 影响
 afterthought (L16) *n.* 后来添加的东西;后来想到的事物
 aged (L10) *adj.* 年老的
 agency (L12) *n.* 机构;代理处
 aha (L1) *int.* 啊哈(表示惊奇或得意)
 airfield (L9) *n.* 机场
 airline (L9) *n.* 航线;航空公司
 alarm (L12) *vt.* 警告
 alert (L13) *n.* 警报
 allegation (L15) *n.* (有待证实的)指控
 allowance (L5) *n.* 津贴
 altar (L10) *n.* 圣坛
 ancestor (L10) *n.* 祖先,先辈
 angel (L11) *n.* 天使
 annoying (L6) *adj.* 讨厌的
 anti-trust (L15) *adj.* 反垄断的,反托拉斯的
 anxiety (L6) *n.* 忧虑,焦虑
 ape (L4) *n.* 猿;(蔑)野人或粗人
 apology (L8) *n.* 道歉
 apparently (L1) *adv.* 表面上地;显然地
 appeal (L6) *n.* 吸引力
 (L16) *vi.* 对……有吸引力
 appendix (L15) *n.* (复 *appendices*)附录
 appreciative (L12) *adj.* 有鉴赏力的
 apprentice (L11) *n.* 学徒;见习生
 apprenticeship (L11) *n.* 见习;学徒(期间)
 approve (L9) *vt.* 批准;认可
 apron (L14) *n.* 围裙

ark (L13) *n.* 方舟
 arms (L15) *n.* 兵器, 武器
 arthritis (L10) *n.* 关节炎
 artifact (L2) *n.* 典型产物
 artistic (L7) *adj.* 艺术的
 ashen (L13) *adj.* 灰色的, 灰白色的
 aspect (L6) *n.* 方面
 assess (L3) *vt.* 评估
 assist (L11) *vt.* 帮助
 astonished (L8) *adj.* 吃惊的
 astonishing (L7) *adj.* 令人惊讶的
 athlete (L2) *n.* 运动员
 Atlantic (L4) *adj.* 大西洋的
 atmosphere (L1) *n.* (包围地球的) 大气层
 attack (L14) *n.* 攻击; 抨击
 attend (L1) *vt.* 上(学)
 (L11) *vt.* 看管, 照顾
 attendant (L6) *n.* 服务员
 attractive (L7) *adj.* 有吸引力的
 automatically (L6) *adv.* 无意识地, 不自觉地
 avid (L12) *adj.* 急切的, 渴望的
 awareness (L6) *n.* 意识
 awfully (L16) *adv.* 非常地

B

babble (L13) *vi.* 唠叨
 badly (L4) *adv.* (口) 很, 非常地
 bait (L12) *vi.* 以饵引诱
 bald (L4) *adj.* 秃顶的
 ban (L15) *vt.* 禁止, 严禁

bar (L13) *vt.* 闩(门、窗等)
bare (L14) *adj.* 光的,空白的
barely (L5) *adv.* 几乎不(能)
baron (L8) *n.* 男爵;巨头,大亨
batter (L13) *vt.* 捶打,击
battered (L7) *adj.* 破的
bear (L10) *vt.* 负担,承担
bearing (L13) *n.* 举止,态度
bedclothes (L10) *n.* (复)被褥,寝具(床单、毯子等)
bedding (L6) *n.* 寝具
beggar (L7) *n.* 乞丐
beggar-man (L7) *n.* 男乞丐
believing (L14) *adj.* 相信他人的;信以为实的
belongings (L9) *n.* (复)财产;所有物
benefit (L2) *n.* 益处,好处
bereft (of) (L2) *adj.* 失去……的;缺少……的
best-seller (L12) *n.* 畅销书
bibliophile (L15) *n.* 藏书家
big (L2) *adj.* 伟大的;名气大的
bind (L11) *vt.* 绑,扎
biting (L14) *adj.* 刺骨的
bitterness (L10) *n.* 痛苦,悲伤
blast (L13) *v.* 炸
bless (L10) *v.* 为……祝福,使幸福
blessing (L10) *n.* 祝福
blindly (L14) *adv.* 盲目地,无目的地
block (L13) *n.* 阻塞,阻碍
bloodshot (L4) *adj.* (眼睛)布满血丝的
blurt (L13) *vi.* 脱口而出
blushing (L7) *adj.* 脸红

bobbin (L11) *n.* 线轴, 线筒
boiler (L11) *n.* 锅炉, 汽锅
bomb (L13) *n.* 炸弹
bos'n (L4) *n.* (boatswain 的缩略式) 水手长
boss-man (L4) *n.* 主管, 主事人
bottom (L4) *n.* 底部
bow (L8) *vi.* 鞠躬
boyhood (L11) *n.* 童年
breadwinner (L11) *n.* 挣钱养家者
bribe (L15) *n.* 贿赂
bribery (L15) *n.* 贿赂行为
bright (L11) *adj.* 高兴的, 愉快的
brilliance (L2) *n.* 卓越, 杰出
broad-minded (L6) *adj.* 心胸开阔的
brush (L7) *n.* 画笔
brutal (L4) *adj.* 残忍的; 野蛮的
budget (L3) *v.* 安排, 计划(时间等)
burden (L10) *n.* 负担
bureaucracy (L15) *n.* 官僚政治, 官僚主义
bureaucratic (L15) *adj.* 官僚的, 繁文缛节的
butterfly (L7) *n.* 蝴蝶; 时髦的人; 见异思迁的人
buzzer (L16) *n.* 蜂音器

C

calculate (L9) *vt.* 估计, 确信
calculating (L4) *adj.* 狡猾的, 诡计多端的
calendar (L3) *n.* 日程表; 日历
cancel (L9) *vt.* 取消
candidate (L15) *n.* 竞选者, 候选人
canteen (L4) *n.* (士兵等用的) 水壶

canyon (L16) *n.* 峡谷
capital (L3) *n.* 资金;资本
cargo (L15) *n.* 货物
category (L15) *n.* 类别
celebrated (L2) *adj.* 著名的,远近驰名的
celebrity (L2) *n.* 名人,名流
cellar (L11) *n.* 地下室,地窖
censor (L9) *n.* (书刊、报纸、电影等的) 审查官
chalk (L9) *vt.* 用粉笔写、画
challenged (L5) *adj.* 受到挑战的
character (L16) *n.* (文学作品等的)人物,角色
charisma (L2) *n.* (能吸引效忠的)领袖气质;神秘的个人魅力
cheerfully (L5) *adv.* 愉快地
cheerfulness (L5) *n.* 愉快,欢乐
Christian (L13) *n.* 基督徒
cipher (L14) *n.* 零(即0);密码;无足轻重的人
civilian (L9) *adj.* 平民的;民用的
claim (L15) *vt.* 声称
clear-cut (L7) *adj.* 轮廓分明的,清晰的
clerking (L11) *n.* 记账工作
clinch (L15) *vt.* 确定;使得到最后解决
closet (L5) *n.* (美)衣橱;壁橱(英 wardrobe)
cocktail (L16) *n.* 鸡尾酒会
code (L15) *n.* 法规;准则
colleague (L3) *n.* 同事
comic (L2) *adj.* 逗笑的;喜剧的
comic book/strip (L2) 连环画
command (L4) *n.* 命令;指挥
commercial (L15) *adj.* 商业的
commission (L8) *n.* 回扣;佣金; *vt.* 委托

(L15) *n.* 委员会
 committee (L14) *n.* 委员会
 commodity (L3) *n.* 商品
 commonplace (L12) *adj.* 平凡的, 老生常谈的
 communication (L3) *n.* 通讯
 community (L15) *n.* 团体
 compassion (L1) *n.* 同情; 怜悯
 compensate (L5) *v.* 补偿(损失、伤害等)
 competence (L3) *n.* 能力
 complimentary (L16) *adj.* 夸奖的, 赞美的
 concentrate (L1) *v.* 集中; 全神贯注
 concentration (L12) *n.* 浓缩; 浓度; 集中物
 conduct (L3) *vt.* 实施; 进行
 (L15) *n.* 经营(方式); 管理(方式)
 confer (L3) *vi.* 商量; 商议
 confine (L1) *v.* 限制, 使局限
 confirm (L12) *vt.* 证实
 conflict (L5) *n.* 冲突, 矛盾
 conglomerate (L15) *n.* 大型联合企业, 集团
 congratulate (L11) *vt.* 庆祝, 庆贺
 connect (L1) *v.* 联系; 连接
 conscious (L6) *adj.* 自觉的; 有意识的
 consciousness (L2) *n.* 意识
 consecutive (L12) *adj.* 连续不断的
 consequently (L2) *adv.* 所以, 因此
 contend (L13) *vt.* 坚决主张; 断言
 continue (L1) *v.* 继续(不断)
 contract (L15) *n.* 合同
 controversy (L12) *n.* 争论, 争议
 conversion (L6) *n.* 转换, 转化

cook (L16) *n.* 厨师
 coordinator (L2) *n.* 策划者
 corporation (L6) *n.* 公司, 社团
 correction (L1) *n.* 改正; 纠正
 corruption (L15) *n.* 腐败
 council (L11) *n.* 会议
 count (L3) *vi.* 有价值; 有用
 countryman (L2) *n.* 同胞
 course (L12) *n.* 路线; 道路
 court (L15) *n.* 法庭, 法院
 crab (L12) *n.* 蟹
 cracked (L4) *adj.* (噪音) 粗哑的
 crash (= gatecrash) (L16) *v.* (未经邀请或无票) 擅自参加, 擅自出席
 crave (L4) *v.* 渴望得到
 creation (L10) *n.* 创作; 创作物
 creative (L5) *adj.* 有创造力的
 crisis (L6) *n.* 危机
 crisp (L13) *adj.* 凉爽的
 cross (L5) *adj.* 坏脾气的, 易怒的
 (L10) *vt.* 用右手在胸前划十字
 crossly (L5) *adv.* 生气地, 发怒地
 cue (L6) *n.* 暗示; 信号
 cultural (L2) *adj.* 文化(上)的; 人文的
 curb (L14) *n.* 马路沿
 currency (L6) *n.* 货币
 current (L2) *adj.* 现任的; 目前的
 curse (L4) *n.* 诅咒, 咒骂
 curtain (L16) *n.* 幕; 落幕
 customs (L9) *n.* (复) 海关

cycle (L12) *n.* 循环

D

dam (L12) *vt.* 筑坝拦……

damn (L16) *int.* 该死

dandy (L16) *adj.* (口) 极好的

deadened (L1) *adj.* 变得死一般的;麻木的,漠不关心的

deal (L15) *n.* 交易

dear (L10) *adj.* 昂贵的

decline (L11) *vi.* 衰落;下降

deep (L1) *adj.* 深奥的

delay (L5) *n.* 迟延

delegate (L15) *n.* 代表,受委托者

delightful (L7) *adj.* 令人愉快的,可爱的

demand (L5) *n.* (常用复数)要求,所要求之物

democratic (L16) *adj.* 大众的;民主的

departure (L9) *n.* 离开,出发

dependence (L6) *n.* 依赖

depressed (L16) *adj.* 抑郁的,沮丧的

desire (L11) *vt.* 渴望

detect (L5) *v.* 发现;查出

device (L3) *n.* 装置

devil (L8) *n.* 魔鬼

devotion (L13) *n.* 热爱,挚爱

dial (L16) *vi.* 拨号

disastrous (L2) *adj.* 灾难性的;极坏的

discomfort (L6) *n.* 不适,不安

discount (L15) *n.* 折扣,打折

dispatch (L9) *n.* 急件;快信

(L13) *vt.* 派遣;发送

distinction (L2) *n.* 荣誉
distinguish (L2) *v.* 有别于;使显著
distressed (L11) *adj.* 苦恼的
dizzy (L4) *adj.* (人)晕眩的,昏乱的
donkey (L10) *n.* 驴子
doze (L4) *v.* 瞌睡
dress (L8) *vt.* 穿衣
drifting (L4) *n.* 漂流
drill (L13) *n.* 军事训练;操练
drop (L4) *n.* 水滴,一滴水
drying (L10) *n.* 凉干
dubious (L15) *adj.* 可疑的
dumb (L14) *adj.* 哑的
dwell (L13) *vi.* 居住;生存

E

eagerly (L7) *adv.* 热切地
earnings (L5) *n.* (复数)赚得的钱
economy (L2) *n.* 经济
edition (L15) *n.* 版本
efficiency (L6) *n.* 效率
efficient (L3) *adj.* 高效率的
elapse (L3) *vi.* (时间)溜走;(光阴)逝去
elbow (L3) *vt.* 以肘推;挤
electronic (L3) *adj.* 电子的
element (L3) *n.* 要素;因素
eloquence (L2) *n.* 口才;雄辩
embarrassment (L1) *n.* 使人为难的事;障碍
eminent (L11) *adj.* 著名的,卓越的
emulation (L11) *n.* 竞争;效法

encouragement (L1) *n.* 鼓励
endanger (L12) *vt.* 威胁
endlessly (L12) *adv.* 不断地;无穷尽地
enforce (L15) *vt.* 执行
engagement (L3) *n.* 约会
 (L5) *n.* 约请,受聘
 (L7) *n.* 订婚
engine (L11) *n.* 引擎,发动机
enjoyment (L1) *n.* 愉快,乐趣
enrich (L1) *v.* 充实;使丰富
ensure (L15) *vt.* 保证
entertaining (L6) *adj.* 令人愉快的,有趣的
enthusiasm (L12) *n.* 热情
entry (L9) *n.* 条目,项目
environment (L6) *n.* 环境
errand (L3) *n.* (短程的)差事;任务
eruption (L6) *n.* 出疹
establish (L6) *vt.* 建立
eternity (L13) *n.* 永恒;不朽
ethics (L15) *n.* 道德规范
evenly (L13) *adv.* 平静地,冷静地
eventually (L5) *adv.* 最终,最后
evident (L2) *adj.* 明显的
evil (L11) *n.* 罪恶
exaggeration (L15) *n.* 夸张
excessive (L6) *adj.* 过多的,过度的
exchange (L7) *n.* 交易;交易所
exclude (L14) *vt.* 排除,不包括
exhilarating (L12) *adj.* 使人愉快的
exit (L9) *n.* 出去,离去

(L16) *vi.* 退出, 出去
experience (L1) *v.* 经历, 体验
explore (L3) *vt.* 探索; 探险
extensive (L12) *adj.* 数量大的; 数目多的
extraordinarily (L1) *adv.* 特别地; 不平常地

F

facial (L6) *adj.* 脸部的
facilitate (L15) *vt.* 使容易; 使便利
facility (L1) *n.* (常用复数) 设备, 设施
faded (L14) *adj.* 褪色的
faithless (L10) *adj.* 背信弃义的, 不忠实的
fall (L13) *n.* (美) 秋天
fashion (L2) *n.* 时装
fatten (L12) *vt.* 养肥
favorite (L14) *adj.* 最喜爱的
favour (L15) *vt.* 支持, 赞成
fee (L15) *n.* 费用
fight (L4) *n.* 战斗; 打架
finance (L15) *vt.* 提供经费
find (L10) *n.* 发现物(尤指有价值 and 贵重之物)
finishing (L7) *adj.* 最后的, 结束的
fire (L12) *vt.* 刺激, 激起
fish (L12) *vi.* 钓鱼
fit (L6) *n.* 突然发作
flush (L9) *vt.* 冲洗
focus (L2) *n.* 焦点
folks (L16) *n.* (复) 人们
formal (L12) *adj.* 正式的
formulate (L15) *vt.* 规划(制度等)

frame (L8) *v.* 给……设框
 freckled (L7) *adj.* 长雀斑的
 frock coat (L8) 19 世纪男子所穿的一种方领角的长外衣
 frustration (L6) *n.* 挫折
 fulfill (L3) *vt.* 完成
 function (L6) *v.* 尽职责,起作用
 fundamental (L1) *n.* (常用复数)基础;基本原理
 fuse (L3) *n.* 导火线;保险丝

G

Gallup poll (L2) (美)盖洛普民意测验
 gamble (L9) *vi.* 孤注一掷;赌
 gateway (L1) *n.* 途径;方法
 gathering (L3) *n.* 聚会
 gee (L16) *int.* 哎呀
 genuine (L11) *adj.* 真正的
 gesture (L6) *n.* 手势
 gigantic (L10) *adj.* 巨大的
 glamour (L2) *n.* 魅力,诱惑力
 glare (L4) *v.* 用愤怒的目光看,怒视
 glorify (L6) *vt.* 美化
 go-between (L15) *n.* 中间人;媒人
 good (L10) *n.* 利益,好处
 good-looking (L7) *adj.* 好看的,漂亮的
 goodwill (L6) *n.* 善意;友好
 governess (L11) *n.* 家庭教师
 grab (L4) *v.* 抓住
 gradual (L5) *adj.* 逐步的;逐渐的
 graduate (L1) *n.* (美)毕业生
 grateful (L1) *adj.* 感激的,表示感激的

gratification (L5) *n.* 喜悦, 满足
grease (L15) *vt.* 使滑润, 使顺利; 贿赂
greedy (L5) *adj.* 贪婪的
Greek (L1) *adj.* 希腊的
grim (L4) *adj.* 严厉的; 冷酷的
grin (L13) *vi.* 露齿而笑
grisly (L12) *adj.* 恐怖的, 可怕的
grocery (L6) *n.* (常用复数) 食品杂货
grow (L1) *v.* 增长
growing (L2) *adj.* 发展的, 扩大的
growl (L4) *v.* 咆哮着说; 吼
grumble (L6) *vi.* 抱怨, 发牢骚
guardian (L11) *n.* 监护人, 保护人
guilt (L5) *n.* 内疚
guinea (L7) *n.* 几尼(等于 1.05 英镑的币值单位); 1663—1812 年
英国发行的一种金币
gull (L12) *n.* 鸥
gulp (L4) *n.* 一大口; 吞饮
gunwale (L4) *n.* 船沿
gut (L4) *n.* (常用复数) 内脏, 肠子

H

half-brother (L14) *n.* 同母异父兄弟, 同父异母兄弟
half-dozen (L9) *adj.* 半打, 六个
half-listen (L13) *vi.* 似听非听
half-naked (L4) *adj.* 半裸的
half-whisper (L14) *vi.* 低语
hand (L14) *n.* 笔迹, 书法
handloom (L11) *n.* 手工织布机
hard-nosed (L9) *adj.* (口) 执拗的, 倔强的; 精明的

harsh (L4) *adj.* 沙哑的;刺耳的
(L10) *adj.* 艰苦的,恶劣的
hastily (L13) *adv.* 匆忙地,急切地
head (L13) *vt.* 朝特定方向行进
headboard (L13) *n.* 床头板
heap (L8) *n.* 堆
heartless (L8) *adj.* 无情的,残酷的
heat (L10) *vt.* 加热
heel (L3) *n.* (足)跟;末尾
heritage (L11) *n.* 遗产
heroine (L2) *n.* 女英雄;被崇拜的女人
heroism (L2) *n.* 英雄行为;英雄品质
hero-worship (L2) *n.* 崇拜英雄
hesitancy (L2) *n.* 犹豫不决,踌躇
hesitation (L5) *n.* 犹豫
Himself (L10) *n.* 上帝
hoarse (L4) *adj.* (声音)沙哑的,嘶哑的
hollow (L14) *adj.* 凹陷的
hollowness (L1) *n.* 空洞;无趣,寂寞
holy (L10) *adj.* 神圣的
homage (L1) *n.* 尊敬,敬意
honey (L16) *n.* 亲爱的
honeymoon (L6) *n.* 蜜月
horrify (L16) *vt.* (口)使惊讶;使惊吓
horror (L9) *n.* 恐怖
host (L2) *n.* 节目主持人
(L6) *n.* 主人,东道主
hourglass (L3) *n.* 滴漏;更漏(一种旧式计时器)
housekeeper (L16) *n.* 管家
humble (L11) *adj.* 简陋的

(L16) *adj.* 谦卑的
humility (L16) *n.* 谦卑, 谦逊
hustle (L13) *vt.* 催促; 猛推

I

icon (L2) *n.* 偶像; 崇拜对象
icy (L10) *adj.* 结冰的
ignorance (L12) *n.* 无知
ill-natured (L7) *adj.* 脾气坏的
imagination (L12) *n.* 想像力
imaginative (L12) *adj.* 有想像力的, 想像力丰富的
immortal (L11) *n.* 不朽的人物
impair (L5) *v.* 损害
impersonality (L3) *n.* 没有人与人的接触
implication (L1) *n.* 含意; 暗示
impose (L15) *vt.* 实施
incoherently (L13) *adv.* 语无伦次地; 不连贯地
incomplete (L1) *adj.* 不完全的, 不完整的
increasingly (L12) *adv.* 逐渐地; 渐增地
indefinable (L2) *adj.* 难以确切表达的; 模糊不清的
indiscriminate (L12) *adj.* 不加选择的, 任意的
individual (L6) *n.* 个人
indomitable (L10) *adj.* 不可征服的, 不屈的
industrious (L11) *adj.* 勤劳的, 刻苦的
infant (L16) *n.* 幼儿, 婴儿
informative (L12) *adj.* 增进知识的; 增长见识的
initial (L6) *adj.* 最初的
inner (L3) *adj.* 内部的, 里面的
(L5) *adj.* 内心的; 精神上的
inquiry (L1) *n.* 问题; 疑问

insect (L12) *n.* 昆虫
insensitive (L5) *adj.* (对他人感情等)感觉迟钝的
insight (L1) *n.* 深刻见解
insignificant (L3) *adj.* 无关紧要的;无意义的
insincere (L2) *adj.* 不真诚的
inspection (L9) *n.* 检查
inspire (L2) *v.* (在……心中)激起
instant (L4) *n.* 刹那,瞬息
instinct (L4) *n.* 本能,直觉
insult (L10) *n.* 侮辱
intent (L5) *n.* 目的;意向
intercourse (L6) *n.* 交际,交往
interest (L1) *v.* 使……感兴趣
(L11) *n.* 利益
interference (L12) *n.* 干涉
internationally (L3) *adv.* 在国际上
interval (L3) *n.* 间隔;停顿
interview (L16) *n.* 面试
inventor (L2) *n.* 发明家
investigation (L15) *n.* 调查
iron (L10) *vt.* 熨烫
irrationally (L6) *adv.* 无理性地

J

jeer (L4) *v.* 嘲笑
jointly (L1) *adv.* 联合地,共同地
junior high school (L1) (美)初级中学

K

key (L1) *adj.* 主要的,极重要的

kit (L5) *n.* (一套)工具、用具等

L

lad (L11) *n.* 小伙子

landmark (L16) *n.* 里程碑

latch (L2) *v.* (口)得到

(L13) *vt.* 用门闩关上

launch (L13) *v.* 发射

laundry (L10) *n.* 待洗的衣服

layman (L12) *n.* 外行人,门外汉

lead (L14) *n.* 铅

leader (L2) *n.* 领导;领袖

learner (L14) *n.* 学习者

legally (L14) *n.* 合法地,在法律上

legendary (L2) *adj.* 传说(中)的;传奇(式)的

leisurely (L3) *adj.* 悠闲的

lessen (L5) *v.* 减弱,削弱

licence, license (L15) *n.* (英/美)许可,特许

life-size (L7) *adj.* 与真人一样大小的

light (L16) *vt.* 点燃

limit (L5) *n.* (最大或最小的)极限;限度

loathing (L13) *n.* 厌恶,憎恶

locate (L6) *v.* 位于

location (L3) *n.* 地方;场所

loneliness (L1) *n.* 孤独;寂寞

longing (L6) *n.* 渴望,热望

looking-glass (L7) *n.* 镜子

M

machinery (L11) *n.* (集)机器;机械装置

maggot (L12) *n.* 蛆
 magic (L12) *n.* 魔力,魔法
 maid (L16) *n.* 女仆
 maintain (L2) *n.* (正式)认为,主张
 mama (L16) *n.* (口)母亲,妈妈
 man-made (L12) *n.* 人为的,人造的
 manual (L7) *adj.* 手工的
 manufacturer (L15) *n.* 制造业者
 marvel (L13) *vi.* 惊讶,惊异
 Marxist (L15) *adj.* 马克思主义的
 mastery (L6) *n.* 熟练,精通
 mate (L4) *n.* 助手
 matter (L1) *v.* 要紧,有关系
 media (L2) *n.* (复)宣传工具,新闻媒介
 memo (L3) *n.* (口)备忘录(= memorandum)
 millionaire (L7) *n.* 百万富翁
 mindless (L9) *adj.* 愚蠢的;没头脑的
 minimum (L16) *n.* 极少量的,最小的
 ministry (L9) *n.* 部
 mirage (L4) *n.* 幻影;海市蜃楼
 misleading (L2) *adj.* 骗人的;使人产生误解的
 missile (L13) *n.* 导弹
 mock (L14) *vt.* 使(努力、力量等)无效,使挫折;嘲笑,愚弄
 monsieur (L8) *n.* 先生(用于法国男士人名前)
 moral (L2) *adj.* 精神上的;道义上的
 moving picture (L2) 电影
 mutter (L14) *vi.* 轻声低语,喃喃而语
 mutual (L1) *adj.* 相互的,彼此的
 mythic (L2) *adj.* (= mythical) 神话的;只存在于神话中的

N

- nagging (L5) *n.* 唠叨, 纠缠
 naive (L1) *adj.* 天真的; 幼稚的
 narrow (L1) *adj.* (程度、范围等) 有局限的
 (L4) *adj.* 小小的; 狭窄的
 near-royalty (L16) *n.* 皇亲
 neatly (L10) *adv.* 整洁地
 negotiation (L15) *n.* 谈判
 newcomer (L13) *n.* 新来者
 nightmare (L2) *n.* 噩梦; (在噩梦中可能看到的) 可怕的事物
 nobody (L14) *n.* 无足轻重的人
 nonverbal (L6) *adj.* 非语言的
 norm (L6) *n.* 标准
 normally (L3) *adv.* 通常
 notable (L2) *adj.* 有名的
 nuclear (L13) *adj.* 原子核的, 核的
 number (L15) *vt.* 编号
 numerous (L12) *adj.* 无数的

O

- oar (L4) *n.* 橹, 桨
 obituary (L14) *n.* 讣告
 observations (L12) *n.* (复) 观察
 occasion (L16) *n.* 场合
 occupational (L6) *adj.* 与职业有关的, 职业的
 offer (L8) *n.* 提供之物
 old-timer (L16) *n.* (口) 老资格的人; 老手
 opposition (L12) *n.* 反对
 organization (L6) *n.* 组织

original (L2) *adj.* 有独到见解的;有独创性的
 (L6) *adj.* 原来的,最早的
 outfit (L16) *n.* (为某一目的所需要的)服装
 outlaw (L15) *vt.* 取缔;宣布……违法
 outweigh (L11) *vt.* 比……更重;比……更有价值
 overabundance (L5) *n.* 过于丰富,过多
 overall (L2) *adj.* 总的
 overhead (L4) *adv.* 在头顶上
 overlook (L16) *vt.* 忽视
 overnight (L5) *adv.* 整夜,通宵
 overseas (L15) *adj.* 海外的
 oversight (L16) *n.* 疏忽,失察
 overthrow (L15) *vt.* 推翻;颠覆

P

pace (L16) *vt. & vi.* 慢慢走;步行测量
 pack (L4) *n.* (蔑)人或事物的群或帮;(猎狗或野兽)群
 pad (L15) *vt.* 添加;增补;扩充,填塞
 palm (L15) *n.* 手掌
 panic-stricken (L13) *adj.* 极度受惊的
 pap (L13) *n.* 无实质内容的东西
 paradise (L10) *n.* 乐园
 paradoxical (L5) *adj.* 看似矛盾的;似是而非的
 paralysis (L4) *n.* 瘫痪症;瘫痪
 parental (L5) *adj.* 父母亲的
 parent-child (L5) *adj.* 父母与子女之间的
 partner (L6) *n.* 伙伴,伴侣
 passage (L3) *n.* (时间等的)消逝,推移
 (L15) *n.* 通过
 passport (L9) *n.* 护照

patched (L7) *adj.* 打补丁的
patience (L1) *n.* 耐心;耐性
penicillin (L15) *n.* 盘尼西林
perceive (L6) *vt.* 感觉;意识到
performance (L3) *n.* 业绩;表现
permanent (L7) *adj.* 永久的;固定的
permission (L9) *n.* 许可,准许
perplexing (L11) *adj.* 使人困惑的;令人费解的
persist (L12) *vi.* 坚持
personality (L2) *n.* 名人
personally (L2) *adv.* 亲自地
perspective (L1) *n.* (观察问题的)视角;观点
pester (L5) *v.* 纠缠;使烦恼
pesticide (L12) *n.* 杀虫剂,农药
petrochemical (L15) *adj.* 石油化学制品的
phase (L6) *n.* 阶段
phial (L15) *n.* 小药瓶
philosopher (L1) *n.* 哲学家
photography (L2) *n.* 摄影
physical (L6) *adj.* 身体的
pick (L1) *v.* 挑选,选择
picturesque (L6) *adj.* 如画的;生动的
pint (L4) *n.* 品脱(容量单位,大体等于半公升)
pity (L7) *vt.* 怜悯,同情
plain (L11) *adj.* 清楚的;明白的
planet (L1) *n.* 行星
plaything (L5) *n.* 玩具
plea (L13) *n.* 恳求,请求
poisonous (L12) *adj.* 有毒的
polished (L10) *adj.* 打磨亮的

pollster (L2) *n.* 民意调查人
postal (L3) *adj.* 邮政的
postpone (L9) *vt.* 推迟, 延搁
potential (L15) *adj.* 潜在的
pounding (L13) *n.* 重击声
poverty (L8) *n.* 贫穷
practically (L16) *adv.* 实际上
preachy (L12) *adj.* 说教的
preceding (L11) *adj.* 在先的, 在前的
preparation (L11) *n.* 准备
present (L5) *adj.* 存在的; 在场的
presidential (L15) *adj.* 总统的
pressing (L16) *n.* 压平
prestige (L9) *n.* 威望, 声望
pretty (L1) *adv.* 相当, 很
previously (L2) *adv.* 以前; 先前
priest (L10) *n.* 教师, 神父
primary (L13) *adj.* 主要的, 首要的
principal (L14) *n.* 校长
priority (L3) *n.* 优先; 优先考虑的事
private (L8) *adj.* 私人的
privilege (L5) *n.* 特权
probe (L3) *vi.* 探求
procedure (L6) *n.* 办事惯例; 常规
profession (L7) *n.* 职业
professional (L2) *n.* 专家, 内行人
professionally (L3) *adv.* 职业上; 专业上
prominent (L16) *adj.* 杰出的, 卓越的
promising (L16) *adj.* 有希望的, 有前途的
prompt (L5) *adj.* 迅速的, 爽快的

proof (L2) *n.* 证据
prop (L6) *n.* 支柱, 支撑物
property (L10) *n.* 财产
propose (L15) *vt.* 提议, 建议
prospect (L1) *n.* 将要发生的事
protest (L13) *vt.* 反驳; 申明; 抗议
publication (L12) *n.* 出版
publicize (L2) *v.* 宣扬; 广为宣传
puff (L10) *n.* (空气、烟雾等的) 一股
pull (L16) *n.* 费力
purchase (L1) *n.* 购买
purchaser (L15) *n.* 买主, 购买者
purify (L13) *vt.* 净化, 使纯净
pushover (L5) *n.* (俚) 易于征服或控制的人

Q

quarters (L4) *n.* 住处; 营房
questionable (L15) *adj.* 不正当的, 可疑的
quick-witted (L15) *adj.* 反应灵敏的
quiet (L14) *vi.* 平静下来
quit (L4) *v.* 放弃; 认输

R

race (L3) *vi.* 赶紧, 加速
rag (L8) *n.* (常用复数) 破旧衣服
ragged (L4) *adj.* 衣衫褴褛的
ram (L13) *n.* 撞击工具, 撞夯
rank (L11) *n.* 阶层
rapidity (L3) *n.* 快速
rapidly (L1) *adv.* 快地, 迅速地

rapport (L3) *n.* 亲善;和谐
rare (L7) *adj.* 罕见的,稀少的
rash (L5) *adj.* 匆忙的;轻率的
rating (L2) *n.* 广播或电视节目收视(听)率
ration (L4) *vt.* 定量分配;限制使用(食物、水等)
reach (L12) *n.* 范围
react (L6) *vi.* 作出反应
reader (L12) *n.* 读者
readjust (L6) *vi.* 再调整
realistically (L6) *adv.* 现实地;实际地
reasonably (L13) *adv.* 合理地
reasoning (L4) *n.* 理智;理性
reassuringly (L13) *adv.* 安慰地
recognition (L2) *n.* 赞誉;认可
recovery (L6) *n.* 恢复
recycle (L12) *vt.* 重新利用
redirect (L12) *vi.* 重新指向
reform (L8) *vt.* 改革,改变
refuge (L13) *n.* 避难所
regard (L6) *n.* 看法
regression (L6) *n.* 回归;倒退
regularly (L1) *adv.* 经常
rehearsal (L13) *n.* 演习,排练
reject (L6) *vt.* 拒绝
relatively (L6) *adv.* 相对地
relativity (L1) *n.* 相关性;相对论
release (L11) *vt.* 放行,释放
relentlessly (L13) *adv.* 持续地
religious (L13) *adj.* 宗教的
remark (L1) *n.* 话语;谈论

remorse (L5) *n.* 懊悔
renounce (L2) *v.* 声明放弃
replace (L3) *vt.* 重置;更换
reproduction (L2) *n.* 再现
resent (L3) *vt.* 怨恨,憎恶
resentment (L5) *n.* 愤恨,怨恨
resident (L6) *n.* 居民
resilience (L14) *n.* 恢复力,回弹
resolution (L14) *n.* 决心
resolve (L11) *vt.* 决定,决心
respect (L5) *n.* 尊敬
respective (L16) *adj.* 各自的
respond (L5) *v.* 反应;作出反应
responsible (L4) *adj.* 对……负责的
rest (L4) *n.* 其余的人;剩余部分
restful (L7) *adj.* 平静的
restlessly (L3) *adv.* 焦躁不安地
restrict (L1) *v.* 限定;限制
retort (L13) *vi.* 反驳,驳斥
revelation (L15) *n.* 泄露,显示
revoltingly (L12) *adv.* 令人作呕地,使人反感地
ridicule (L1) *n.* 嘲笑,嘲弄
rightful (L10) *adj.* 合法的
rinse (L10) *vt.* 以清水冲洗
rise (L2) *n.* 出现
(L11) *vi.* 起床
risky (L9) *adj.* 冒险的
ritual (L3) *adj.* 礼节性的
roar (L8) *n.* 吼叫
rob (L5) *v.* 剥夺(某人有权享有的东西等)

robe (L16) *n.* 睡袍
romance (L7) *n.* 浪漫故事
rudely (L9) *adv.* 粗暴地

S

sacrifice (L10) *n.* 牺牲
sadly (L1) *adv.* 可惜;说来遗憾
safely (L9) *adv.* 安全地
saint (L11) *n.* 圣人
salvo (L12) *n.* (火炮的)齐射
sarcasm (L16) *n.* 讽刺,挖苦,嘲笑
satellite (L3) *n.* 卫星
satisfactory (L5) *adj.* 令人满意的
scared (L14) *adj.* 惊慌的,恐慌的
scarred (L4) *adj.* 有疤痕的
scheduled (L2) *adj.* 预先安排的;定期的
schoolwork (L1) *n.* 学校作业,课堂作业
scoff (L13) *vi.* 嘲弄,嘲笑
scorch (L4) *v.* 烘烤(皮肤)
scrounge (L14) *vi.* 四处搜寻
scrub (L10) *vt.* 用力擦洗
seal (L9) *n.* 印章
secretarial (L3) *adj.* 秘书的;有关秘书事务的
secure (L15) *vt.* 获得,得到
securities (L15) *n.* 股票,有价证券
segment (L3) *n.* 部分
selective (L15) *adj.* 选择的
self-centered (L5) *adj.* 自私的;以自我为中心的
self-denying (L11) *adj.* 忘我的;自我牺牲的
selfish (L1) *adj.* 自私的

self-reliant (L11) *adj.* 依靠自己的;信赖自己的

self-sacrifice (L2) *n.* 自我牺牲

senior high school (L1) (美)高级中学

series (L6) *n.* 连续;系列

severe (L10) *adj.* 严酷的

shadowy (L4) *adj.* 模糊的

shape (L2) *v.* 塑造

share (L4) *n.* 份额,分得的一份

shed (L13) *n.* 棚,小屋

shelter (L13) *n.* 避难所

sherry (L7) *n.* 雪利酒

shilling (L7) *n.* 先令

shine (L6) *n.* (俚)喜爱;迷恋

shipment (L15) *n.* 装载(或交运)的货物

shock (L6) *n.* 冲突;休克

short (L14) *adv.* 突然

shove (L13) *vt.* 推挤

showdown (L13) *n.* 摊牌

shower (L5) *v.* 大量给予

sickly (L10) *adj.* 多病的,不健康的

signal (L5) *v.* 表示,发出信号

sincerely (L5) *adv.* 真诚地

skinny (L14) *adj.* 瘦削的,无肉的

slam (L14) *vt.* 使劲关,砰然关闭

slavery (L11) *n.* 奴隶状态,奴役

sleeve (L16) *n.* 袖子

slide (L13) *vt.* 使滑动

slight (L8) *adj.* 轻微的

(L16) *vt.* 蔑视(某人),轻视,怠慢

slip (L3) *vi.* 悄悄地溜走

(L5) *n.* 失误,小疏忽
 (L7) *vt.* 悄悄放入
 (L15) *vt.* 偷偷塞
 slow-witted (L14) *adj.* 笨的,反应慢的
 slush fund (L15) 用以行贿官员等的钱
 snap (L9) *vi.* 厉声地说
 snowbank (L14) *n.* 雪堆,雪堤
 snowy (L14) *adj.* 下雪的
 soak (L10) *vt.* 浸湿,泡
 soaring (L3) *adj.* 猛增的,剧增的
 socialize (L3) *vi.* 参加社交活动
 socializing (L3) *n.* 交往,交际
 socially (L3) *adv.* 社交上
 soda (L10) *n.* 苏打
 soft-drink (L15) *n.* 软饮料
 solemn (L16) *adj.* 庄严的,严肃的
 solution (L9) *n.* 解决方法
 somebody (L2) *n.* 重要人物
 somewhat (L5) *adv.* 稍稍,有几分
 sophomore (L12) *n.* 大学二年级学生
 sound (L12) *vt.* 发出;使发声
 specific (L5) *adj.* 特定的;具体的;明确的
 spelling (L1) *n.* 拼写
 sphere (L10) *n.* 范围,领域
 sprawl (L4) *vi.* (懒散地)伸开四肢躺(或坐)
 spring (L4) *v.* 跳;跃出
 (L11) *vi.* 涌现
 springtime (L12) *n.* 春天,春天的时候
 square (L15) *vt. & vi.* (口语,与 with 连用)符合
 stammer (L8) *vt.* 结结巴巴地说

stamp (L9) *vt.* 盖章于
startle (L7) *v.* 吃惊;惊愕
steamgauge (L11) 蒸汽压力表
step-father (L14) *n.* 继父
sterile (L15) *adj.* 消毒的;无效的
stern (L4) *n.* 船尾
stock (L7) *n.* 股票;股份
strain (L11) *n.* 紧张,压力
strangely (L10) *adv.* 奇怪地,异常地
stubbornness (L10) *n.* 坚定,坚强
student-body (L14) *n.* 学生机构
studio (L7) *n.* 画室;照相馆;电影制片厂
stumble (L14) *vi.* 跌绊
stun (L13) *vt.* 使震惊
stunning (L16) *adj.* 令人吃惊的
stupid (L1) *adj.* 愚蠢的,笨的
stupidity (L2) *n.* 愚蠢
submissive (L5) *adj.* 降服的,顺从的
subsequent (L11) *adj.* 随后的,后来的
substantial (L15) *adj.* 大的,可观的
suit (L8) *n.* 套装
sum (L11) *n.* 金额;总数
superficial (L6) *adj.* 表面的
superiority (L16) *n.* 优越性,优势
suppress (L1) *v.* 禁止披露;隐瞒
suppression (L9) *n.* 压制;镇压
sure (L4) *adv.* (美)肯定地
sureness (L13) *n.* 千真万确,确实
surge (L13) *vi.* 涌来
survive (L9) *vt.* 经历……后仍然活着,残存

suspect (L9) *adj.* 令人怀疑的
swell (L4) *n.* 长浪; 滚滚浪潮
sword (L7) *n.* 剑
syllabus (L15) *n.* 课程; 教学大纲
symbol (L6) *n.* 象征, 标志
sympathize (L11) *vi.* 同情
symptom (L6) *n.* 症状
system (L6) *n.* 体制, 制度

T

tampering (L12) *adj.* 干预的, 干涉的
tangible (L3) *adj.* 有实体的; 可触摸到的
taste (L16) *n.* 品味
teapot (L10) *n.* 茶盖
teleconference (L3) *n.* (通过电话、电视等的) 电讯会议
telex (L3) *n.* 电传
tempt (L9) *vt.* 冒……风险
(L15) *vt.* 引诱, 吸引
tendency (L5) *n.* 倾向
tender (L15) *n.* 投标
tenderness (L1) *n.* 温情; 慈爱
terms (L3) *n.* (复) 措辞
terribly (L1) *adv.* (口) 非常, 很
tersely (L13) *adv.* 简捷地; 简要地
thereby (L15) *adv.* (正式) 因此
thirst (L4) *n.* 口渴
threat (L4) *n.* 威胁; 危险
threaten (L12) *vt.* 威胁
thrill (L12) *vt.* 使震颤, 使激动
throne (L2) *n.* 王位

throughout (L1) *prep.* 贯穿;遍及
 thrust (L13) *vt.* 猛推,挤
 thy (L13) *adj.* (古)你的
 tick (L3) *vi.* 滴答作响
 timid (L14) *adj.* 胆小的
 title (L12) *n.* 题目,标题
 tongue (L10) *n.* 语言
 touch (L7) *n.* (最后修饰的)一笔,笔画
 trademark (L2) *n.* 商标
 tramp (L4) *n.* 不定期货船
 (L12) *vi.* 步行,徒步穿过
 transcend (L2) *v.* 超出;胜过
 trap (L1) *v.* 使受限制;被圈在
 tray (L16) *n.* 托盘,盘子
 tremendous (L6) *adj.* 极大的,巨大的
 try (L11) *vt.* 试验
 tune (L13) *vt.* 调整收音机至某一频率;收听
 turtle (L12) *n.* 海龟,甲鱼
 tutor (L11) *n.* 导师,老师
 typewriter (L14) *n.* 打字机

U

ultimately (L12) *adv.* 最后
 uncertain (L3) *adj.* 不确定的
 uncertainty (L5) *n.* 不确定,不明确
 unconsciously (L5) *adv.* 无意识地
 uncooperative (L14) *adj.* 不合作的
 uncover (L5) *v.* 揭开
 undermine (L5) *v.* 逐渐损害(或削弱)
 undertake (L10) *vt.* 承揽,接受

undoubtedly (L14) *adv.* 无疑
unemployed (L7) *adj.* 失业的
unfamiliar (L14) *adj.* 陌生的, 不熟悉的
unfortunately (L15) *adv.* 不幸地
ungenerous (L5) *adj.* 不大方的, 吝啬的
ungrateful (L5) *adj.* 不领情的, 忘恩负义的
unheroic (L2) *adj.* 非英雄的; 不英勇的
unique (L6) *adj.* 独特的
universal (L11) *adj.* 普遍的
unlatch (L13) *vt.* 打开(门闩)
unlimited (L5) *adj.* 不受限制的; 无原则的
unload (L10) *vt.* 卸下, 放下
unloved (L5) *adj.* 失宠的
unlucky (L8) *adj.* 倒霉的
unpleasantness (L6) *n.* 不愉快
unreasonable (L5) *adj.* 不合理的
untie (L14) *vt.* 解开
untouched (L1) *adj.* 未被论及的; 未提及的
urgent (L13) *adj.* 紧急的
utter (L10) *vt.* 说, 讲
utterly (L13) *adv.* 完全地; 彻底地

V

vacillate (L5) *v.* (在意见方面) 犹豫
vacillation (L5) *n.* 犹豫; 迟疑
variable (L12) *adj.* 变化的, 可变的
veil (L14) *v.* 以纱遮掩
verified (L13) *adj.* 经证实的
vicious (L12) *adj.* 邪恶的
violation (L15) *n.* 违反

virtue (L11) *n.* 优点,美德

visa (L9) *n.* 签证

volume (L7) *n.* 卷;册

W

wash (L10) *n.* 洗濯物

washing (L10) *adj.* 洗衣服用的,清洗用的

washtub (L10) *n.* 洗衣盆,洗濯盆

washwoman (L10) *n.* (美)洗衣妇(英 washerwoman)

wealthy (L7) *adj.* 富有的

weapon (L13) *n.* 武器

web (L15) *n.* 网络

well-dressed (L7) *adj.* 衣着讲究的

Western (L1) *adj.* 西方国家的;欧美国家的

whale (L12) *n.* 鲸

wheeling-dealing (L15) *adj.* 激烈甚至不择手段的

whet (L12) *vt.* 磨快

whim (L8) *n.* 怪念头,奇想

whisper (L4) *v.* 低语

wink (L16) *n.* 瞬间

wit (L2) *n.* 才智

withdraw (L15) *vt.* 撤回

witness (L15) *n.* 证人;目击者

wizened (L7) *adj.* 干瘪的;干枯的

wonder (L1) *n.* 奇迹;奇物;奇事

wonderfully (L7) *adv.* 令人惊叹地,极其

woods (L12) *n.* (复)树林

workshop (L11) *n.* 车间

worm (L12) *n.* 虫子

worriedly (L16) *adv.* 焦急地,焦虑地

worthy (L3) *adj.* 有价值的
wrecked (L4) *adj.* (船)失事的
wrinkled (L7) *adj.* 布满皱纹的

Y

yah (L16) *int.* 唷(表示嘲笑、轻蔑、不耐烦等)
yearn (for) (L5) *v.* 渴望
yield (L4) *v.* 放弃
you folks 各位,大伙(友好、亲热的称呼)
youngster (L13) *n.* 儿童,少年

Useful Expressions

- account to...for (L3) 向……交代
accused of (L15) 被控犯有……罪
adapt oneself to (L6) 适应
adjust to (L6) 适应
afford to (L4) (有条件)做
all over (L12) 到处
all the more (L4) 更加
all the way (L9) 一路上
appeal to (L16) 对……有吸引力
as far as...know/can tell (L14) 就……所知
as though (L10) 似乎
attach importance to (L3) 重视
be acquainted with (L12) 接触,认识
be at ease with (L12) 轻松
be aware of (L12) 知道
be blessed with (L10) 具有
be bound to (L5) 一定会
be capable of (L1) 有能力
be connected to (L12) 有关联
be harmful to (L5) 对……有害
be known for (L2) 以……著称
be popular with (L7) 受……欢迎
be restricted to (L1) 仅限于
be sought after (L7) 受欢迎
be squared away (L13) 使……就绪
be tempted to do sth. (L15) 受……诱惑

be tired of (L7) 厌倦
beyond the limits (L10) 越出,超出(范围、限度)
blame...for (L7) 归咎于
blow to pieces (L11) 炸毁
break down (L12) 分解
(L13) 推倒;克服(障碍)
break into (L15) 闯进
burst into (L8) 爆发出;突然闯入
can't call oneself... (L13) 不称职
care for (L8) 愿意要;愿意做
carry on (L3) 经营
come on the scene (L16) 到来;问世
come to a stop (L14) 停下;刹车
come to realize (L2) 认识到
comment on/upon (L2) 评论
consist of (L15) 由……组成
count for (L11) 有价值
count out (L10) 数出
distinguished (from...) by (L2) 因……有别于
fall / break to bits (L8) 变得或摔得粉碎
fall behind (L3) 落后
familiar with (L6) 熟悉
far from (L1) 并非,并不是
feel guilty about (L5) 感到愧疚
figure out (L9) 搞清楚,想清楚
fill...with (L2) 使……充满
find a way (for sb.) to do sth. (L16) 想出办法做……
find oneself doing sth. (L11) 发现自己在做……
find out (L12) 发现
free from (L11) 不受……约束

from side to side (L10) 左右(摇摆)
get on with (L16) 相处
get oneself into (L9) 卷入
get out of (L16) 逃避
get trapped (L1) 被困,陷于
give away (L7) 捐献
give in (L5) 让步
give in to (L4) 屈服于
go about doing sth. (L14) 处理某事物
go to sb. (L7) 求助于
go to sb. /sth. (L2) 授予,被……赢得
have contact with (L10) 与……有联系
have the honour of (L8) 有幸做……
hit upon (L15) (偶然)发现,想到
hold down (L5) 保持(职位)
hold off (L4) 使……难接近
hold out (L4) 坚持
hold up (L9) 中断
in... mind's eye (L14) 有……印象;想像
in command (L4) 领导
in high spirits (L8) 兴致勃勃
in person (L14) 亲自
in private (L15) 私下,秘密
in some respects (L1) 在某些方面
in terms of (L3) 就……而言
in the common interest of (L11) 为了……的共同利益
in the interests of (L16) 为了……的利益
it never entered one's mind that... (L8) ……从未想到……
jump into action (L16) 立即行动
keep (radio) tuned for (L13) 收听(广播)

keep at (L5) 坚持
know of (L12) 听说
lay out (L9) 摊开
lead to (L1) 导致
leave... untouched (L1) 没有动过
limit... to (L9) 仅限于
live on (L7) 靠……充饥
live to be (L10) 活至
look forward to (L4) 盼望
look like (L2) 看似
look one's best (L16) 显现最佳状态
look ... in the eye (L13) 直视, 正视
make a fool of (L8) 出洋相
make it plain (L13) 明确说明
make out (L11) 开(支票、账单等)
make room for (L3) 腾出地方
(not) matter what / how, etc. (L1) ……(没)有关系
mean to do... (L8) 有意做……
mean... to (L16) 对……重要
measure... against... (L2) 对照……评价……
move ahead (L3) 进行, 进展
move in (L14) 搬进
not... for anything (L8) 绝不
on account of (L7) 因为
on instinct (L4) 本能
on the increase (L15) 增加
pass through (L2) 经过
persist in (L12) 坚持
point out (L14) 指出
provide... for... (L1) 为……提供……

put up with (L9) 忍受
regardless of (L10) 不顾
relieve sb. of (L11) 减轻
remind of (L12) 令……回忆,想起
resolve that... (L11) 决定
run for (L4) 赶往,跑向
say nothing about (L14) 一字不提
see about sth. (L7) 考虑
see no need for (L13) 认为没有必要
seek out (L3) 找到
send for (L10) 请来
shift from... to (L2) 从……转为
show up (L2) 出现
shower with (L5) 大量给予
sit up (and take notice) (L9) (口)吃惊,吓一跳;警觉
smell out (L9) 察觉
sound a warning (L12) 发出警告
speak of (L10) 表达
speed up (L15) 加快
spread out (L14) 摊开
stand by (L15) 遵守
stand up to (L5) 顶住
start out (L16) 开始
stick with (L6) 遵守
stir up (L12) 引起
stop short (L14) 中途停下,停止
suffer from (L6) 患有,苦于
sympathize with (L11) 同情
take delight in (L1) 乐于,嗜好
take on (L6) 获得;呈现

take over (L4) 接管; 兼并
take sth. seriously/personally (L3) 认真对待/认为是针对自己的
take... for granted (L5) 认为……理所当然
to begin with (L8) 首先
try out (L6) 试用; 试行
turn... into (L2) 把……变成
turn... out (L13) 轰出; 开除
typical of (L13) ……是……的特征
use up (L10) 用完
warn sb. of (L13) 警告(某人)
wear off (L6) 逐渐消失
work out (L9) 结果
worthy of (L3) 值得
wouldn't hear of (L7) 反对
yearn for (L5) 渴望

Word Study

ask (L1)	look (L4)
allow (L3)	make (L2)
bear (L11)	notice (L6)
begin (L5)	offer (L15)
break (L12)	pass (L10)
call (L16)	pay (L15)
concern (L6)	pick (L9)
cover (L10)	put (L9)
define(L2)	reach (L12)
drive (L14)	recognize (L2)
drop (L14)	save (L3)
expect (L5)	see (L8)
face (L16)	send (L13)
fall (L10)	serve (L11)
favour (L15)	show (L8)
feel (L5)	start (L12)
find (L7)	stop (L4)
forget (L14)	take (L6)
get (L7)	talk (L7)
give (L5)	teach (L1)
hold (L9)	tell (L8)
keep (L4)	try (L3)
learn (L1)	turn (L13)
leave (L13)	work (L11)
lie (L16)	